



RussianPod101.com

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

ULTIMATE GETTING STARTED WITH
RUSSIAN

RussianPod101.com



innovative LANGUAGE.COM

BONUS
3-MINUTE
RUSSIAN
SERIES



LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #1

Self Introductions/Basic Greetings

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vowelled
- 3 Informal Romanization
- 3 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar

1

RUSSIAN

1. ОКСАНА: Здравствуйте. Меня зовут Оксана.
2. ЭРИК: Здравствуйте, а меня - Эрик.
3. ОКСАНА: Очень приятно.
4. ЭРИК: Взаимно.

ROMANIZATION

1. OKSANA: Zdravstvuite. Menya zovut Oksana.
2. ERIK: Zdravstvuite, a menya - Erik.
3. OKSANA: Ochen' priyatno.
4. ERIK: Vzaimno.

ENGLISH

1. OKSANA: Hello. My name is Oksana.
2. ERIK: Hello, and I'm Erik.
3. OKSANA: Nice to meet you.
4. ERIK: Likewise.

VOWELLED

CONT'D OVER

1. ОКСАНА: Привет, я - Оксана.
2. ЭРИК: Привет, Оксана, а я - Эрик.
3. ОКСАНА: Очень приятно.
4. ЭРИК: Мне тоже.

INFORMAL ROMANIZATION

1. OKSANA: Privet, ya - Oksana.
2. ERIK: Privet, Oksana, a ya - Erik.
3. OKSANA: Ochen' priyatno.
4. ERIK: Mne tozhe.

ROMANIZATION

1. OKSANA: Hi, I'm Oksana.
2. ERIK: Hi Oksana, I'm Erik.
3. OKSANA: Nice to meet you.
4. ERIK: Nice to meet you, too.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
Здравствуйте	Zdrastvuite	hello	exclamation
Меня зовут	menya zovut	my name (is)	phrase
а	a	and	conjunction
очень	ochen'	very	adverb
приятно	priyatno	nice; nicely, pleasantly	adverb
взаимно	vzaimno	likewise, mutually	adverb
Привет	privet	hi, hello	interjection
я	ya	I (I'm)	pronoun
мне тоже	mne tozhe	me too	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Здравствуйте, давно не виделись! <i>Zdravstvuyte, davno nye videlis'!</i> "Hello, long time no see!"	Здравствуйте, Вы откуда? <i>Zdravstvuyte, Vy otkuda?</i> "Hello, where are you from?"
Здравствуйте, вы - Павел Иванович? <i>Zdravstvuyte, vy - Pavel Ivanovich?</i> "Hello, are you Pavel Ivanovich?"	Меня зовут Оксана, а Вас? <i>Menya zovut Oksana, a vas?</i> "My name is Oksana, and yours?"
Как его зовут? <i>Kak ego zovut?</i> "What is his name?"	Вас зовут Марина? <i>Vas zovut Marina?</i> "Is your name Marina?"
Как Вас зовут? <i>Kak vas zovut?</i> "What is your name?"	Я люблю кофе, а Вы? <i>Ya lyublyu kofe, a vy?</i> "I like coffee, and you?"

<p>Это Эрик, а это - Оксана. <i>Eto Erik, a eto - Oksana.</i> "This is Erik, and this is Oksana."</p>	<p>Меня зовут Оксана, а Вас? <i>Menya zovut Oksana, a vas?</i> "My name is Oksana, and yours?"</p>
<p>Я очень устал. <i>Ya ochen' ustal.</i> "I'm very tired."</p>	<p>Сегодня очень холодно. <i>Segodnya ochen' holodno.</i> "It's very cold today."</p>
<p>Я очень люблю кофе. <i>Ya ochen' lyublyu kofe.</i> "I like coffee very much."</p>	<p>Желаю приятного полёта! <i>Zhelayu priyatnogo polyota!</i> "Wish you a nice flight!"</p>
<p>Очень приятно познакомиться! <i>Ochen' priyatno poznakomit'sya!</i> "Very nice to meet you (get to know you)!"</p>	<p>Как приятно! <i>Kak priyatno!</i> "How nice!"/"What a pleasure!"</p>
<p>Приятно слышать. <i>Priyatno slyshat'.</i> "Nice to hear." (e.g., a compliment)</p>	<p>Приятно познакомиться. <i>Priyatno poznakomit'sya.</i> "Nice to meet you."</p>
<p>Приятно познакомиться. - Взаимно. <i>Priyatno poznakomit'sya. - Vzaimno.</i> -"Nice to meet you." -"Likewise."</p>	<p>Привет всем! <i>Privet vsem!</i> "Hi, everyone!"</p>
<p>Привет, Эрик. <i>Privet, Erik.</i> "Hi, Erik."</p>	<p>Привет, как дела? <i>Privet, kak dela?</i> "Hi, how are you?"</p>
<p>Я - Оксана. <i>Ya - Oksana.</i> "I'm Oksana."</p>	<p>Я русская. <i>Ya russkaya.</i> "I'm Russian."</p>

Я люблю лето. <i>Ya lyublyu leto.</i> "I like summer."	Он тоже русский. <i>On tozhe russkij.</i> "He's Russian, too."
Мне тоже нравится Москва. <i>Mne tozhe nравitsya Moskva.</i> "I like Moscow, too."	Мне тоже. <i>Mne tozhe.</i> "Nice to meet you, too."

Приятно познакомиться.

Priyatno poznakomit'sya.

"Nice to meet you."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Basic Bootcamp Lesson Is to Learn Some Common Russian Phrases for Introducing Yourself.

Let's take a look at the first formal dialogue:

Оксана: Здравствуйте. Меня зовут Оксана.

Эрик: Здравствуйте, а меня - Эрик.

Оксана: Очень приятно.

Эрик: Взаимно.

Здравствуйте literally means, "be healthy" or "wish you health." This word lost its original meaning a long time ago, so now you can translate it simply as "hello."

Меня зовут is the equivalent of "my name is" in English. Literally, it means, "I'm called" or "they call me." For now, don't worry about the grammar; instead, focus on remembering the phrases.

"A" is a conjunctional word used to join two clauses which are usually opposite in meaning. In English it can be translated as "and" or "but."

For Example:

1. Это чай, а это сок.
Eto chai, a eto sok.
"This is tea, and this is juice."

2. Он дома, а она - нет.
On doma, a ona - net.
"He's at home, but she's not."

Очень means "very" and we can use it with either adjectives or adverbs.

For Example:

1. очень хорошо
ochen' horosho
"very good"

2. очень красивый
ochen' krasivyi
"very beautiful"

We can also use it on its own as an interjection.

For Example:

1. Вам холодно?
Vam holodno?
"Are you cold?"

2. Очень!
Ochen'!"Very!

Приятно is an adverb that means "nice" and "pleasurable." Очень приятно and Приятно познакомиться are commonly used in introductions and we translate them as "nice to meet you."

Взаимно literally means "likewise" and we use it the same as we do in English.

If you would like to ask someone's name in a formal way, you can say:

Как вас зовут?

Kak vas zovut?

"What is your name?"

This literally means, "How are you called?"

Now, let's take a look at the informal dialogue:

Оксана: Привет, я - Оксана.

Эрик: Привет, Оксана, а я - Эрик.

Оксана: Очень приятно.

Эрик: Мне тоже.

Привет means "hi." It's much more informal than Здравствуйте, and it's better to avoid this word at first meeting, with elders, or in formal situations. However, it's common to greet each other with Привет! in the nightclubs, at parties, or at other informal gatherings even if you see each other for the first time.

Я means "I" or "I am" in Russian.

For Example:

1. Я Эрик

Ya Erik

"I'm Erik."

2. Я американец

Ya amerikanets

"I'm American."

3. Я голодный

Ya golodnyi

"I'm hungry."

Мне тоже can be translated as "me too," where Мне is just a modification of the pronoun Я, meaning "I." We won't go into the grammar at this point, so just remember that this is an informal response to "Nice to meet you."

However, when you want to use **тоже** ("too") in the meaning of "I do, too" or "I am, too," you should use the pronoun **Я**:

For Example:

1. Я устал
Ya ustal
"I'm tired."

2. Я тоже
Ya tozhe
"Me too." ("I am, too.")

The point worth attention here is that if the other person introduces himself/herself first, saying **Меня зовут...**, you can omit the word **зовут** in your answer:

For Example:

1. Меня зовут *Маша*.
Menya zovut Masha.
"My name is Masha."

2. А меня - *Саша*.
A menya - Sasha.
"And my (name is) Sasha."



LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #2

Talking Nationality

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar

2

RUSSIAN

1. ОКСАНА: Здравствуйте. Меня зовут Оксана. Я русская.
2. ЭРИК: Здравствуйте, я - Эрик. Я американец.

ROMANIZATION

1. OKSANA: Zdravstvuite. Menya zovut Oksana. Ya russkaya.
2. ERIK: Zdravstvuite, ya - Erik. Ya amerikanets.

ENGLISH

1. OKSANA: Hello. My name is Oksana. I'm Russian.
2. ERIK: Hello, I'm Erik. I'm American.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
здравствуйте	zdravstvuite	hello	interjection
меня зовут	menya zovut	my name (is)	phrase
русская	russkaya	Russian (nationality)	noun
я	ya	I (I'm)	pronoun
американец	amerikanets	American (nationality)	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Здравствуйте, Вы откуда? <i>Zdravstvuyte, Vy otkuda?</i> "Hello, where are you from?"</p>	<p>Здравствуйте, Эрик! <i>Zdravstvuite, Erik!</i> "Hello, Erik!"</p>
<p>Его зовут Эрик. <i>Ego zovut Erik.</i> "His name is Erik."</p>	<p>Вас зовут Эрик? <i>Vas zovut Erik?</i> "Is your name Erik?"</p>
<p>Как Вас зовут? <i>Kak vas zovut?</i> "What is your name?"</p>	<p>Вы русский? <i>Vy russkij?</i> "Are you Russian?"</p>
<p>Моя мама - русская, а папа - украинец. <i>Moya mama - russkaya, a papa - ukrainets.</i> "My mom is Russian, and my dad is Ukrainian."</p>	<p>Я не заболел, я просто устал. <i>Ya nye zabolyel, ya prosto ustal.</i> "I'm not sick, I'm just tired."</p>
<p>Я учу русский. <i>Ya uchu russkiy.</i> "I study Russian."</p>	<p>Я Оксана. <i>Ya Oksana.</i> "I'm Oksana."</p>
<p>Нет, я американец. <i>Net, ya amerikanets.</i> "No, I'm American."</p>	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Bootcamp Lesson Is to Teach You How to Talk About Your Ethnicity

Let's take a look at the dialogue again:

Оксана: Здравствуйте. Меня зовут Оксана. Я русская.

Эрик : Здравствуйте, я - Эрик. Я американец.

We start with a self-introduction ("Hello, my name is Oksana"), and then we say our nationality:

Я русская.

The point that needs special attention here is gender. The phrase "I'm Russian" sounds different for women and men. Let's take a look at the examples with both genders, feminine and masculine:

Feminine

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Я русская.	<i>Ya russkaya.</i>	"I'm Russian."
Я украинка.	<i>Ya ukrainka.</i>	"I'm Ukrainian."
Она американка.	<i>Ona amerikanka.</i>	"She's American."
Она англичанка.	<i>Ona anglichanka.</i>	"She is British."
Вы японка?	<i>Vy yaponka?</i>	"Are you Japanese?"
Вы китаянка?	<i>Vy kitayanka?</i>	"Are you Chinese?"
Моя девушка - француженка.	<i>Moya devushka - frantsuzhenka.</i>	"My girlfriend is French."
Моя девушка - итальянка.	<i>Moya devushka - italiyanka.</i>	"My girlfriend is Italian."

Masculine

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Я русский	<i>Ya russkij</i>	"I'm Russian."
Я украинец	<i>Ya ukrainets.</i>	"I'm Ukrainian."
Он американец	<i>On amerikanets</i>	"He's American."

Он англичанин	<i>On anglichanin</i>	"He's British."
Вы японец?	<i>Vy yaponets?</i>	"Are you Japanese?"
Вы китаец?	<i>Vy kitaets?</i>	"Are you Chinese?"
Мой парень - француз.	<i>Moi paren' - frantsuz.</i>	"My boyfriend is French."
Мой парень - итальянец.	<i>Moj paren' - italianets.</i>	"My boyfriend is Italian."

Another important point is that unlike English, we cannot use **Русский** ("Russian") as an adverb; therefore, we can never use it in a phrase such as "I speak Russian." It can either be a noun indicating a nationality (**Я русский**), or serve as an adjective with other nouns:

For Example:

1. **Русский язык**
Russkij yazyk
"Russian language"
2. **Русская кухня**
Russian kuhnya
"Russian cuisine"



LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #3

Useful Phrases for Learning Russian

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar

3

RUSSIAN

1. Извините, как сказать по-русски _____?
2. Извините, я не понял. Повторите, пожалуйста.
3. Пожалуйста, говорите медленнее.
4. Напишите мне это по-русски, пожалуйста.

ROMANIZATION

1. Izvinite, kak skazat' po-russki _____?
2. Izvinite, ya ne ponyal. Povtorite, pozhaluista.
3. Pozhaluista, govorite medlenneye.
4. Napishite mne eto po-russki, pozhaluista.

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me, how do you say _____ in Russian?
2. I'm sorry, I didn't understand. Say it once again, please.
3. Please, speak slower.
4. Write this down in Russian for me, please.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
извините	izvinite	excuse me, I am sorry, pardon	interjection
мне	mnye	to me, for me	pronoun
напишите	Napishite	write down	verb (imperative)
медленнее	medlenneye	slower	adverb
говорите	govorite	speak	verb (imperative)
пожалуйста	pozhaluysta	please; you are welcome	interjection
повторите	povtorite	repeat	verb (imperative)
понял	ponyal	understood	verb
не	ne	not, don't	conjunction
по-русски	pa-russki	(in) Russian	adverb
я	ya	I (I'm)	pronoun
сказать	skazat'	to say	verb
как	kak	how	pronoun
это	Eto	this, this is, it	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ой, извините! <i>Oy, izvinite!</i> "Oh, I'm sorry!" Извините, который час? <i>Izvinite, kotoryy chas?</i> "Excuse me, what time is it?"	Извините, я опоздал. <i>Izvinite, ya opozdal.</i> "I'm sorry, I'm late." Мне тоже холодно. <i>Mnye tozhye holodno.</i> "I'm cold, too." ("I'm also cold.")
--	---

<p>Мне тоже очень понравился этот фильм! <i>Mne tozhe ochen' ponravilsya etot fil'm!</i> "I liked this movie very much, too!" ("I also liked this movie!")</p>	<p>Напишите мне это слово, пожалуйста. <i>Napishite mne eto slovo, pozhaluista.</i> "Write down this word for me, please."</p>
<p>Напишите мне письмо, пожалуйста. <i>Napishite mne pis'mo, pozhaluista.</i> "Write me a letter, please."</p>	<p>Напишите мне свой адрес, пожалуйста. <i>Napishishe mne svoi adres, pozhaluista.</i> "Write down your address for me, please."</p>
<p>Повторите медленнее, пожалуйста. <i>Povtorite medlenneye, pozhaluista.</i> "Repeat slower, please."</p>	<p>Давайте пойдем медленнее. <i>Davaite poidyom medlenneye.</i> "Let's go slower."</p>
<p>Не говорите ему, что я приходил. <i>Ne gorovite emu, chto ya prihodil.</i> "Don't tell him that I've come."</p>	<p>Посмотрите в камеру, пожалуйста. <i>Posmotrite v kameru, pozhaluysta.</i> "Look at the camera, please."</p>
<p>Быстрее, пожалуйста. <i>Bystreye, pozhaluysta.</i> "Faster (hurry up), please."</p>	<p>- Спасибо. - Пожалуйста. <i>- Spasibo. - Pozhaluysta.</i> "-Thank you." -"You are welcome."</p>
<p>Ваш билет, пожалуйста. <i>Vash bilet, pozhaluysta.</i> "Your ticket, please." (formal)</p>	<p>Повторите, пожалуйста. <i>Povtoritye, pozhaluysta.</i> "Repeat please."</p>
<p>Повторите это слово, пожалуйста. <i>Povtoritye eto slovo, pozhaluysta.</i> "Repeat this word, please."</p>	<p>Повторите, пожалуйста, ваше имя. <i>Povtoritye, pozhaluysta, vashye imya.</i> "Repeat your name, please."</p>
<p>Ты меня понял? <i>Tu menya ponyal?</i> "Did you understand me?"</p>	<p>Я понял, спасибо. <i>Ya ponyal, spasibo.</i> "I understood, thank you."</p>

<p>Москве сейчас не жарко? <i>Moskve syeychas nye zharko?</i> "Isn't it hot in Moscow now?"</p>	<p>Я сейчас не работаю. <i>Ya syeychas nye rabotayu.</i> "I don't work at the moment."</p>
<p>Как Ваш чай, не холодный? <i>Kak Vash chay, nye holodnyy?</i> "How's your tea, not cold?" ("warm enough?")</p>	<p>Вам не холодно? <i>Vam nye holodno?</i> "Aren't you cold?"</p>
<p>Он не голодный. <i>On nye golodnyi.</i> "He's not hungry."</p>	<p>Я не русский. <i>Ya nye russkiy.</i> "I'm not Russian."</p>
<p>Я плохо говорю по-русски. <i>Ya ploho govoryu po-russki.</i> "My Russian is not good."</p>	<p>Ты говоришь по-русски? <i>Ty govorish' po-russki?</i> "Do you speak Russian?" (informal)</p>
<p>Я не понимаю по-русски. <i>Ya nye ponimayu po-russki.</i> "I don't understand Russian."</p>	<p>Они много читают по-русски. <i>Oni mnogo chitayut po-russki.</i> "They read in Russian a lot."</p>
<p>Я - Оксана. <i>Ya - Oksana.</i> "I'm Oksana."</p>	<p>Я русская. <i>Ya russkaya.</i> "I'm Russian."</p>
<p>Я люблю лето. <i>Ya lyublyu leto.</i> "I like summer."</p>	<p>Я не могу Вам этого сказать. <i>Ya nye mogu Vam etogo skazat'.</i> "I can't tell you this."</p>
<p>Как Вам сказать... <i>Kak Vam skazat'...</i> "How should I put it..."</p>	<p>Как вы себя чувствуете? <i>Kak vy sebya chuvstvuyete?</i> "How do you feel?" (asking condition)</p>

Как у тебя дела?

Kak u tebya dela?

"How are you?"

Как это читается?

Kak eto chitayetsya?

"How do you read this?"

Алло? Кто это?

Allo? Kto eto?

"Hello? Who is this?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Bootcamp Lesson is Using Russian Phrases to Learn More Russian

Извините, как сказать по-русски _____ ?

The first word in this sentence means "excuse me" and has the same usage as in English when used in questions. However, if we use it in an interrogative sentence, the meaning of Извините will change to "I'm sorry":

For Example:

1. Извините, который час?
Izvinite, kotoryi chas?
"Excuse me, what time is it now?"
2. Извините, я вас не заметил.
Izvinite, ya vas ne заметил.
"I'm sorry, I didn't notice you."

Как сказать literally means "how to say." We can translate по-русски as "in Russian," and it refers to the language in our case, although the function word по- doesn't mean the English "in." По indicates the way in which something is done. So literally, we can translate По-русски as "in a Russian way."

You can use по to build other expressions, such as:

1. **по-моему**
po-moymu
"in my way"/"in my opinion"
2. **по-деревенски**
po-derevenski "countryside-like"
3. **по-дружески**
po-druzheski
"in a friendly way"

Look at the second sentence:

Извините, я не понял. Повторите, пожалуйста.

Pay special attention to the verb Понял. We use this word in the past tense in masculine gender. If the speaker is a woman, she should say *ponyala* (поняла), and the whole sentence will sound as:

Извините, я не поняла.

Izvinite, ya ne ponyala.

"I'm sorry, I didn't understand."

We use the verb Повторите ("repeat") in an imperative mood, and without "please" in the end, your request might sound rather rude.

Пожалуйста has the same usage as the English "please," and we use it with both requests and offers:

1. **Один кофе, пожалуйста.**
Odin kofe, pozhaluista.
"One coffee, please."
2. **Ваш кофе, пожалуйста.**
Vash kofe, pozhaluista.
"Your coffee, please."

We write the third sentence, **Пожалуйста, говорите медленнее**, in the imperative mood.

Говорите means, "speak" and is said as a command. It will be very useful to remember this word together with the sentence:

Вы говорите по-английски?

Vy govorite po-anglijski?

"Do you speak English?"

Медленнее means "slower." If you have difficulty understanding your companion, you can simply say:

Медленнее, пожалуйста.

Medlenneye, pozhaluista.

"Slower, please."

We say the last sentence **Напишите мне это по-русски, пожалуйста** in the imperative mood also. Напишите means "write" or "write down." Мне is the modification of the pronoun Я ("I"), and literally means "to me" or "for me." You can use it with other verbs.

For Example:

1. Скажите мне.

Skazhite mne.

"Tell me."

2. Покажите мне.

Pokazhite mne.

"Show me."

3. Позвоните мне.

Pozvonite mne.

"Call me."

Это means "this," and in our case it indicates the thing that you want your companion to write down. We can also translate it as "this is" and use it in different sentences.

For Example:

1. **Это книга.**

Eto kniga.

"This is a book."

2. **Это мой друг - Иван.**

Eto moi drug-Ivan.

"This is my friend Ivan."

3. **Кто это?**

Kto Eto?

"Who is this?"

You can omit **По-русски** ("in Russian") if you and your companion both know that the thing you need should be written in Russian.



LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #4

Numbers 1 to 100 in Russian

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar

4

RUSSIAN

1. один, два, три, четыре, пять, шесть, семь, восемь, девять, десять
2. одиннадцать, двенадцать, тринадцать, четырнадцать, пятнадцать, шестнадцать, семнадцать, восемнадцать, девятнадцать, двадцать
3. тридцать, сорок, пятьдесят, шестьдесят, семьдесят, восемьдесят, девяносто, сто

ROMANIZATION

1. odin, dva, tree, chetyre, pyat', shest', sem', vosem', devyat', desyat'.
2. odinatsat', dvenatsat', treenatsat', chetynatsat', pyatnatsat', shestnatsat', semnatsat', vosemnatsat', devyatnatsat', dvadtsat'
3. treedtsat', sorok, pyat'desyat', shest'desyat', sem'desyat, vosem'desyat, devyanosto, sto

ENGLISH

1. one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten
2. eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, nineteen, twenty
3. thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty, ninety, one hundred

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
---------	--------------	---------	-------	--------

ноль	nol'	zero (0)	number
шестнадцать	shestnatsat'	sixteen (16)	number
семнадцать	semnatsat'	seventeen (17)	number
восемнадцать	vosemnatsat'	eighteen (18)	number
девятнадцать	devyatnatsat'	nineteen (19)	number
двадцать	dvatsat'	twenty (20)	numeral
тридцать	tridtsat'	thirty	numeral
сорок	sorok	forty	numeral
пятьдесят	pyat'desyat	fifty	numeral
шестьдесят	shest'desyat	sixty (60)	number
семьдесят	sem'desyat	seventy (70)	number
восемьдесят	vosyem'desyat	eighty (80)	number
девяносто	devyanosto	ninety (90)	number
пятнадцать	pyatnatsat'	fifteen (15)	number
четырнадцать	chetyrnatsat'	fourteen (14)	number
тринадцать	treenatsat'	thirteen (13)	number
один	odin	one (1) (masculine)	numeral
два	dva	two (2) (masculine, neuter)	numeral
три	tree	three (3)	numeral

четыре	chetyre	four (4)	numeral
пять	pyat'	five	numeral
шесть	shest'	six (6)	numeral
семь	sem'	seven (7)	numeral
восемь	vosem'	eight (8)	numeral
девять	devyat'	nine (9)	numeral
десять	desyat'	ten (10)	numeral
одиннадцать	odinnadtsat'	eleven	numeral
двенадцать	dvenatsat'	twelve (12)	number
сто	sto	one hundred	numeral

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Поезд отправляется в шестнадцать ноль ноль.

Poezd otpravlyaetsya v shestnatsat' nol' nol'.

"The train departs at sixteen hundred hours."

Двадцать долларов: сколько это в рублях?

Dvadtsat' dollarov: skol'ko eto v rublyah?

"Twenty dollars: how much is it in rubles?"

Сегодня плюс тридцать градусов.

Sevodnya plus tritsat' gradusov.

"It's thirty degrees Celsius above zero today."

Билет в театр стоит сорок долларов.

Bilet v teatr stoit sorok dollarov.

"The ticket to the theater costs forty dollars."

Они женаты пятьдесят лет.

Oni zhenaty pyat'desyat let.

"They've been married for fifty years."

Он ехал шестьдесят километров в час.

On ehal shest'desyat kilometrov v chas.

"He was driving sixty kilometers per hour."

<p>Он проехал семьдесят километров на велосипеде. <i>On proyehal sem'desyat kilometrov na velosipede.</i> "He rode seventy kilometers by bike."</p>	<p>Моей бабушке восемьдесят лет. <i>Moei babushke vosem'desyat let.</i> "My grandmother is eighty years old."</p>
<p>Он умер в девяносто лет. <i>On umer v devyanosto let.</i> "He died at the age of ninety."</p>	<p>Я была в Америке в пятнадцать лет. <i>Ya byla v Amerike v pyatnadtsat' let.</i> "I went to America when I was fifteen."</p>
<p>В этом доме четырнадцать этажей. <i>V etom dome chetyrnadtsat' etazhey.</i> "There are fourteen stories in this building."</p>	<p>Он не любит число тринадцать. <i>On ne lyubit chislo trinadtsat'.</i> "He doesn't like the number thirteen."</p>
<p>Один кофе, пожалуйста. <i>Odin kofe, pozhaluista.</i> "One coffee, please."</p>	<p>Два билета до Москвы, пожалуйста. <i>Dva biletta do Moskvy, pozhaluista.</i> "Two tickets to Moscow, please."</p>
<p>Я хочу купить эти три сувенира. <i>Ya hochu kupit' eti tri suvenira.</i> "I want to buy these three souvenirs."</p>	<p>Я буду в Москве четыре дня. <i>Ya budu v Moskve chetyre dnya.</i> "I'll stay in Moscow for four days."</p>
<p>Пять плюс пять равно десять. <i>Pyat' plus pyat' ravno desyat'.</i> "Five plus five equals ten."</p>	<p>Он провёл в аэропорту пять часов. <i>On provyol v aeroportu pyat' chasov.</i> "He spent five hours in the airport."</p>
<p>Осталось шесть минут до начала концерта. <i>Ostalos' shest' minut do nachala kontserta.</i> "There are six minutes left 'til the beginning of the concert."</p>	<p>Он прожил в Москве семь лет. <i>On prozhil v Moskve sem' let.</i> "He lived in Moscow for seven years."</p>
<p>Билет в кино стоит восемь долларов. <i>Bilet v kino stoit vosem' dollarov.</i> "The ticket to a movie theater costs eight dollars."</p>	<p>Он был в России девять раз. <i>On byl v Rossii devyat' raz.</i> "He's been to Russia nine times."</p>

Десять рублей. <i>Desyat' rubley.</i> "It's ten rubles."	Зачем ей десять ручек? <i>Zachem yey desyat' ruchek?</i> "Why does she need ten pens?"
Давай встретимся в одиннадцать часов. <i>Davay vstretimsya v odinnadtsat' chasov.</i> "Let's meet at eleven o'clock."	Ресторан закрывается в двенадцать часов. <i>Restoran zakryvaetsya v dvenadtsat' chasov.</i> "The restaurant is closing at twelve o'clock."
Он прожил сто лет. <i>On prozhil sto let.</i> "He has lived one hundred years."	Я обязательно приду, сто процентов! <i>Ya obyazatel'no pridu, sto protsentov!</i> "I will definitely come, one hundred percent."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Russian Numerals

From the point of view of the word order, Russian numerals have the same usage as in English: the number comes first followed by a noun (the thing you are counting).

For Example:

1. **один билет**

odin bilet

"one ticket"

2. **три человека**

tree cheloveka

"three people"

3. **сорок лет**

sorok let

"forty years"

Numbers from One to Ten

The things that need special consideration when using Russian numerals are:

1. number (singular or plural)
2. gender (masculine, feminine, or neutral)
3. case (nominative, genitive, dative accusative, instrumental, or prepositional)

BUT the good news is that except for **один** and **два** ("one" and "two"), Russian cardinal numbers only change by *cases* and do not have gender. Also, **Один** ("one") doesn't have number for the obvious reason.

So, let's take a look at the numeral **один** ("one"):

Construction	Russian	Romanization	"English"
Feminine Singular Nominative	одна девушка	<i>odna devushka</i>	"one girl"
Masculine Singular Nominative	один билет	<i>odin bilet</i>	"one ticket"
Neuter Singular Nominative	одно пиво	<i>odno pivo</i>	"one beer"

As we can see, it agrees with the related noun by gender, number, and case.

Now, number "two," or **два**:

Construction	Russian	Romanization	"English"
Feminine Plural Nominative	две девушки	<i>dve devushki</i>	"two girls"

Masculine Plural

Nominative	два билета	<i>dva biletta</i>	"two tickets"
------------	-------------------	--------------------	---------------

Neuter Plural

Nominative	два пива	<i>dva piva</i>	"two beers"
------------	-----------------	-----------------	-------------

After the numeral **два**, each numeral has only a single form.

For Example:

1. **три девушки/мальчика**
tree devushki/mal'chika
"three girls/boys"
2. **четыре девушки/мальчика**
chetyre devushki/mal'chika
"four girls/boys"

The numbers **пять** ("five") through **двадцать** ("twenty") require their related nouns in the genitive plural forms.

For Example:

1. **пять девушек/мальчиков**
pyat' devushek/mal'chikov
"five girls/boys"
2. **восемь девушек/мальчиков**
vosem' devushek/mal'chikov
"eight girls/boys"
3. **десять девушек/мальчиков**
desyat' devushek/mal'chikov
"ten girls/boys"

Numbers from Eleven to Twenty

As you might have already noticed, we form the numbers eleven to nineteen simply by dropping the soft sign and adding **надцать** to the numbers one to nine. The only small exceptions will be:

*changing "а" to "е" in the number **два** to form **двенадцать**

*dropping the "е" in **четыре** to form **четырнадцать**

As we mentioned before, the numbers **пять** ("five") through **двадцать** ("twenty") require their related nouns in the genitive plural forms.

Here are some more examples:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
двенадцать лет	<i>dvenatsat' let</i>	"twelve years"
четырнадцать километров	<i>chetyrnatsat' kilometrov</i>	"fourteen kilometers"
семнадцать раз	<i>semnatsat' raz</i>	"seventeen times"
двадцать человек	<i>dvatsat' chelovek</i>	"twenty people"

The Multiples of Ten

We form the numbers "twenty" and "thirty" by putting together **два** ("two") and **дцать** (tsat'), **три** ("three"), and **дцать**.

For Example

1. **Двадцать**
dvatsat' "twenty"

2. Тридцать
treetsat' "thirty"

We form the numbers "fifty," "sixty," "seventy," and "eighty" by adding *desyat* to "five," "six," "seven," and "eight."

Russian	<i>Romanization</i>	"English"
пятьдесят	<i>pyat'desyat</i>	"fifty"
шестьдесят	<i>shest'desyat</i>	"sixty"
семьдесят	<i>sem'desyat</i>	"seventy"
восемьдесят	<i>vosem'desyat</i>	"eighty"

It will be easy for you to remember, because *десят* is "ten" (*десять*) without a soft sign. So basically, you take numbers five to eight and add "ten" (*desyat*).

Some exceptions just need blind memorizing:

1. **сорок**
sorok "forty"
2. **Девяносто**
devyanosto "ninety"
3. **Сто**
sto
"one hundred"

Other Compound Numbers

We form these numbers in the same way we form the English numerals:

Placing numbers from one to nine after twenty, thirty, forty, fifty...ninety.

For Example:

1. Двадцать четыре этажа
dvadsat' chetyre etazha
"twenty-four stories"
2. Сорок пять минут
sorok pyat' minut
"forty-five minutes"
3. Восемьдесят шесть процентов
vosem'desyat shest' protsentov
"eighty-six percent"

Grammar Wrap-up

In short, for nominative (and inanimate accusative) nouns, use the following rule to select the proper form of the noun:

"one" --- nominative

"two," "three," "four" --- genitive singular

"five" and more --- genitive plural



LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #5

Numbers Larger Than 100 in Russian

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar

5

RUSSIAN

1. сто, двести, триста, четыреста, пятьсот, шестьсот, семьсот, восемьсот, девятьсот
2. тысяча, две тысячи, три тысячи, четыре тысячи, пять тысяч, шесть тысяч, семь тысяч, восемь тысяч, девять тысяч
3. десять тысяч, двадцать тысяч, тридцать тысяч, сорок тысяч, пятьдесят тысяч, шестьдесят тысяч, семьдесят тысяч, восемьдесят тысяч, девяносто тысяч, сто тысяч
4. МИЛЛИОН

ROMANIZATION

1. sto, dvesti, treesta, chetyresta, pyat'sot, shest'sot, sem'sot, vosem'sot, devyat'sot
2. tysyacha, dve tysyachi, tri tysyachi, chetyre tysyachi, pyat' tysyach, shest' tysyach, sem' tysyach, vosem' tysyach, devyat' tysyach
3. desyach tysyach, dvadsat' tysyach, treetsat' tysyach, sorok tysyach, pyat'desyat tysyach, shest'desyat tysyach, sem'desyat tysyach, vosem'desyat tysyach, devyanosto tysyach, sto tysyach
4. million

ENGLISH

1. 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800, 900
2. 1,000, 2,000, 3,000, 4,000, 5,000, 6,000, 7,000, 8,000, 9,000

CONT'D OVER

3. 10,000, 20,000, 30,000, 40,000, 50,000, 60,000, 70,000, 80,000, 90,000, 100,000
4. 1,000,000

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
сто	sto	one hundred (100)	number
восемь тысяч	vosem' tysyach	eight thousand (8,000)	numeral
девять тысяч	devyat' tysyach	nine thousand (9,000)	numeral
десять тысяч	desyat' tysyach	ten thousand (10,000)	numeral
двадцать тысяч	dvatsat' tysyach	twenty thousand (20,000)	number
тридцать тысяч	treetsat' tysyach	thirty thousand (30,000)	number
сорок тысяч	sorok tysyach	forty thousand (40,000)	number
пятьдесят тысяч	pyat'desyat tysyach	fifty thousand (50,000)	number
шестьдесят тысяч	shest'desyat tysyach	sixty thousand (60,000)	number
семьдесят тысяч	sem'desyat tysyach	seventy thousand (70,000)	number
восемьдесят тысяч	vosem'desyat tysyach	eighty thousand (80,000)	number

девяносто тысяч	devyanosto tysyach	ninety thousand (90,000)	number
сто тысяч	sto tysyach	one hundred thousand (100,000)	numeral
семь тысяч	sem' tysyach	seven thousand (7,000)	numeral
шесть тысяч	shest' tysyach	six thousand (6,000)	numeral
пять тысяч	pyat' tysyach	five thousand (5,000)	numeral
двести	dvesti	two hundred (200)	number
триста	treesta	three hundred (300)	numeral
четыреста	chetystra	four hundred (400)	numeral
пятьсот	pyat'sot	five hundred (500)	numeral
шестьсот	shest'sot	six hundred (600)	numeral
семьсот	sem'sot	seven hundred (700)	numeral
восемьсот	vosem'sot	eight hundred (800)	numeral
девятьсот	devyat'sot	nine hundred (900)	numeral
тысяча	tysyacha	thousand (1,000)	number
две тысячи	dve tysyachi	two thousand (2,000)	numeral
три тысячи	tree tysyachi	three thousand (3,000)	numeral
четыре тысячи	chetyre tysyachi	four thousand (4,000)	numeral
миллион	million	million (1,000,000)	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Он прожил сто лет. <i>On prozhil sto let.</i> "He has lived one hundred years."</p>	<p>Я обязательно приду, сто процентов! <i>Ya obyazatel'no pridu, sto protsentov!</i> "I will definitely come, one hundred percent."</p>
<p>В этом городе десять тысяч жителей. <i>V etom gorode desyat' tysyach zhitelei.</i> "There are ten thousand citizens in this city."</p>	<p>За НН проголосовали двадцать тысяч человек. <i>Za NN progolosovali dvatsat' tysyach chelovek.</i> "Twenty thousand people voted for NN."</p>
<p>Эту программу смотрят тридцать тысяч человек. <i>Etu programmu smotryat treetsat' tysyach chelovek.</i> "Thirty thousand people watch this program."</p>	<p>Он купил квартиру за сорок тысяч долларов. <i>On kupil kvartriu za sorok tysyach dollarov.</i> "He bought an apartment for forty thousand dollars."</p>
<p>На стадионе собралось пятьдесят тысяч человек. <i>Na stadione sobralos' pyat'desyat tysyach chelovek.</i> "Fifty thousand people gathered in the stadium."</p>	<p>Он продал дом за триста тысяч долларов. <i>On prodal dom za trista tysyach dollarov.</i> "He sold the house for three hundred thousand dollars."</p>
<p>У него на счету - сто тысяч евро. <i>U nyego na schyetu - sto tysyach yevro.</i> "He's got one hundred thousand euros in his account."</p>	<p>Двести рублей: это много? <i>Dvesti rublei: eto mnogo?</i> "Two hundred rubles, is it a lot?"</p>
<p>Этому городу триста лет. <i>Etomu gorodu treesta let.</i> "This city is three hundred years old."</p>	<p>Он одолжил мне четыреста рублей. <i>On odolzhil mne chetyresta rublei.</i> "He lent four hundred rubles to me."</p>
<p>Пятьсот рублей. <i>Pyat'sot rubley.</i> "It's five hundred rubles."</p>	<p>В нашей компании работают пятьсот человек. <i>V nashey kompanii rabotayut pyat'sot chelovek.</i> "There are five hundred employees working in our company."</p>

<p>Поменяйте мне шестьсот долларов, пожалуйста.</p> <p><i>Pomenyaite mne shest'sot dollarov, pozhaluista.</i></p> <p>"Please change six hundred dollars (into rubles) for me."</p>	<p>Расстояние между Москвой и Санкт-Петербургом - семьсот километров.</p> <p><i>Rasstoyanie mezhdu Moskvoi i Sankt-Peterburgom – sem'sot kilometrov.</i></p> <p>"The distance between Moscow and St. Petersburg is seven hundred kilometers."</p>
<p>Я потратил восемьсот долларов за один день.</p> <p><i>Ya potratil vosem'sot dollarov za odin den'.</i></p> <p>"I spent eight hundred dollars in one day."</p>	<p>Москве почти девятьсот лет.</p> <p><i>Moskve pochti dyevyat'sot lyet.</i></p> <p>"Moscow is almost nine hundred years old."</p>
<p>Я нашёл тысячу рублей!</p> <p><i>Ya nashol tysyachu rublei!</i></p> <p>"I found one thousand rubles!"</p>	<p>Он выиграл миллион рублей.</p> <p><i>On vyigral million rublei.</i></p> <p>"He won one million dollars."</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is How to Learn Numbers Larger than 100 in Russian

The easiest way to remember large Russian numbers is to understand their structure first. In the previous Bootcamp lesson, we covered the numbers from one to one hundred. As you can remember, the most important thing was to memorize the numerals from one to ten, and then build larger numbers by modifying endings, adding or dropping some parts, etc. There are exceptions among the common rules, but in general, Russian numerals have a strong logical system according to which the numerals are built.

100

Let's take a look at the number "one hundred," (сто). It will be our main tool in building numbers from two hundred to nine hundred. Сто will be the new ending to the numbers we've already learned (one to nine), although you will have to learn its modifications:

сто

две-сти

три-ста

четыре-ста

пять-сот

шесть-сот

семь-сот

восемь-сот

девять-сот

Yes, the endings **-сти**, **-ста**, and **-сот** all mean one hundred, but they differ according to the first number. But the good thing is, the first part doesn't change except for **два**, which changes into **две**.

1,000

Here things are even easier than with hundreds. The only thing worth paying attention to is that **тысяча** ("1,000") is of feminine gender; therefore, the numbers "one" and "two" (один, два), plus the **тысяча** itself, changes according to the rules of this gender.

For Example:

1. **одна тысяча**
odna tysyacha
"one thousand" (you can omit *odna* meaning "one")

2. **две тысячи**
dve tysyachi
"two thousand"

The other numbers don't change, but **тысяча** still has to be changed according to its gender:

три тысячи

четыре тысячи

пять тысяч

шесть тысяч

семь тысяч

восемь тысяч

девять тысяч

10,000+

Can't be any easier. Just take the multiples of ten and one hundred that we've already learned (ten, twenty..., one hundred, two hundred..., nine hundred) and add **тысяч**, which is the same as **тысяча** (just used in an accusative case, feminine gender, and plural number).

The dessert for this lesson: "**a million.**"

Sounds the same as in English, just put the stress on the last syllable instead of the first!



LESSON NOTES

All About #1

Five Reasons Why You Should Learn Russian

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

1

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the History of the Russian Language and the Top Five Reasons to Learn Russian

Background of the Russian Language

Russian belongs to the family of Indo-European languages and is one of three living members of the East Slavic languages, the others being Belarusian and Ukrainian, which were formed by the tenth century.

Up to the fourteenth century, in the period known as Kievan Rus, ancestors of the modern Russians spoke dialects of the Old Slavic language, that were related to those of other East Slavs.

What followed was the Moscow period, which lasted until about the seventeenth century. During this time, the main dialect was based in Moscow. Words from Western European languages such as Polish and German began to be used commonly and became part of the language.

Interestingly, in addition to 'outside' words becoming embroiled in the Muscovite dialect, it was also a time when native words and phrases began to appear, replacing the Western European borrowings despite them being firmly rooted in the spoken language.

The eighteenth and nineteenth centuries saw great changes to the language with the aim of modernizing it, and at the same time giving it more of its own identity. Words from the Old Slavonic were almost redesigned with different pronunciations to reflect the post-Renaissance European period.

A lot of academic and intellectual vocabulary was used from languages such as Dutch, French, German, and even Latin. So by learning Russian, you get a sense of history, and the better you know it, the more familiarities you'll pick up from other languages too.

During this time (eighteenth-nineteenth centuries), French particularly became an increasingly prominent influence on Russian, with many French words entering the Russian language. The nobles spoke French fluently and even wrote their letters in French. Perhaps surprisingly, some people even spoke it better than Russian. You can see this today in Tolstoy's books. In the famous book "War and Peace," Tolstoy wrote most of the letters in French. It was even common to have French nannies who taught French to children.

After the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991, and the end of the Iron Curtain era, the language went through further changes. Many foreign words entered the language, especially from English. These were words linked with technology that most of us are accustomed to today such as "chat" (чат), "notebook" (ноутбук), and "driver" (драйвер). It didn't stop just with technology though. Vocabulary from leisure activities also became popular, such as "pub" (паб), "fitness centre" (фитнес центр), and "night club" (найт клуб). Words also came into the work environment and business, for example, "reception" (рекепшн), "presentation" (презентация), "manager" (менеджер), and "holding" (холдинг).

The way of life changed significantly as Russia became more Western-like, and as an inevitable consequence, the language changed too. These changes were not gradual or progressive as in history, but almost instantaneous. Many people (especially the elderly) were annoyed by these changes because within a very short space of time, they couldn't understand some vocabulary used on TV and in newspapers.

Many complained that people were not speaking Russian correctly anymore. Those working in the media, such as television and radio, were not obliged to speak what was once considered 'correctly' any longer. If they had spoken like that during the Soviet time, they would have lost their jobs. Also, rules have become much more flexible and some things that were considered incorrect before have become acceptable. A good example of this is the word кофе ("coffee"). Usually words that end in -e are neuter in Russian (for example, моё полотенце - "my towel"). However, кофе has always been considered as an exception and is masculine: мой кофе ("my coffee"). Nowadays, моё кофе has become acceptable, along with мой кофе, even though many people still think it's wrong and "bad Russian."

About Russia

Russia is the largest country in the world with a population of over 140 million people. It spans eleven time zones and contains the largest forest reserves in the world as well as a quarter of the earth's fresh water within its lakes.

Why is it Important?

So why should you learn Russian? The Top Five Reasons are...

1. Romance: Lots of people learn Russian because they either have or want a Russian partner.

2. Business: Since the former Soviet Union opened its borders to foreigners, many businesspeople have been traveling to Russia and particularly the Ukraine.
3. Travel and tourism: Russia has always attracted tourists with its history and culture. Russian theater, and in particular, ballet, are famous all over the world.
4. Its "Exotic" nature: Even though it's considered challenging because it has a different alphabet, the Russian writing system makes it perhaps easier to learn than some other languages such as Arabic and Japanese.
5. It is very popular: According to estimates, between 144 and 160 million people speak Russian as their first language. It's the eighth most spoken language in the world, before Japanese, German, French, and Italian. Native speakers of Russian can be found in all former Soviet republics, some of which are part of the EU now, such as Latvia. In Eastern Ukraine, for example, people speak Russian rather than Ukrainian.



LESSON NOTES

All About #2 Russian Grammar Is Easy!

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

2

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Basic Russian Grammar

Welcome to our explanation of Basic Russian Grammar! Here we are going to look at just a few examples concerning Russian grammar. It's obviously a vast subject with volumes written about it. The objective is to illustrate that some aspects of it are easier than English and some are more difficult.

Okay, we know what you're probably thinking. Nightmares of being at school with grammar rules that you're being taught while trying to learn a foreign language, when they didn't even teach you these rules in English, right? Grammar is boring, right?

Well, we'll begin by looking at some easy examples and move forward from there. Something we will definitely be avoiding is lengthy and complicated explanations that are never ending and let's face it-boring. No, we never venture down this path. In fact, those kinds of paths are permanently fenced off, as they should be! This will be fun and most importantly, you'll learn and remember.

Let's begin with examining **tenses**.

Tenses

A grammatical tense is a temporal linguistic quality expressing the time at, during, or over which a state or action occurs. The times expressed are mainly past, present, and future though each can have its own sub-divisions such as recent past or distant past. If you speak English natively, you may not be aware how many tenses are used. Let's quickly look at the future tense to see variations. You have the sentence "I eat" in the present tense. For the future tense, you can use "I will eat," or depending on the situation, "I am going to eat." This illustrates the subtleties of future tense differences.

Interestingly, we cannot always translate tenses from one language to another. In fact, some languages have no tenses at all!

So let's take a quick look at the present and past tenses and how we can apply them to Russian.

The Present

In English, you use a different tense in the present depending on whether it's an action that happens regularly or is happening now.

For Example:

1. "She writes letters every day."
2. "She's writing a letter now."

In Russian, you use just one tense in the present, no matter whether the action happens regularly or is happening now.

For Example:

1. Она пишет письма каждый день.
"She writes letters every day."
2. Она пишет письмо.
"She's writing a letter."

The Past

The past forms of regular verbs in English end in -ed. You have to learn irregular verbs individually. In English, there are many irregular verbs. Here are a just a few examples:

1. break - broke
2. buy - bought
3. cut - cut
4. have - had
5. fly - flew
6. speak - spoke

That really is only a few, but you can see how the past tense words do not comply with any rules; they are all individual, which makes them irregular.

Guess what? In Russian, there are hardly any irregular verbs in the past tense!

1. If the subject is masculine, the ending is -л:
Он видел фильм.
"He saw the film."

2. If the subject is feminine, the ending is -ла:

Она **ви**дѣла **ф**ильм.

"She saw the film."

3. If the subject is neuter, the ending is -ло:

Письмо **бы**ло **на** столе.

"The letter was on the table."

4. If the subject is plural, the ending is -ли:

Они **ви**дѣли **ф**ильм.

"They saw the film."

This works for almost ALL Russian verbs! Now, let's discuss **articles** in English.

Articles

An article is a word that combines with a noun to indicate the type of reference being made by the noun. A noun is a word used to identify any of a class of people, places, or things (known as a common noun), or to name a particular one of these (known as a proper noun). The articles in the English language are "the," "a," and "an." In short, it is what you're referring to (e.g., "the cat").

In Russian, **there are no articles!**

Now let's look at an important verb in any language, and that is the verb "to be." In English, you have three forms of this verb.

Present tense: "am," "is," and "are."

1. "I am tall."

2. "He is a doctor."

3. "They are hungry."

In Russian, you should not use the verb "to be" in the present tense, so you don't have to worry about it at all.

1. Я высокий.
"I am tall."
2. Он врач.
"He is a doctor."
3. Они голодные.
"They are hungry."

Making Questions

In English, you need a different auxiliary depending on the tense, and you change the word order.

For Example:

1. I often go there. - "Do you often go there?"
2. I went to school yesterday. - "Did you go to school yesterday?"

In Russian, you just change your intonation. Nothing else changes.

For Example:

1. Он часто ходит туда. - Он часто ходит туда?
"He often goes there." - "Does he often go there?"

Making Negatives

In English, again, you need an auxiliary and "not."

For Example:

1. "I like apples." - "I don't like apples."
2. "He's asleep." - "He isn't asleep."

In Russian, you just put **не** ("not") in front of the verb in any tense.

For Example:

1. 1. Я люблю яблоки.

"I like apples."

Я не люблю яблоки.

"I don't like apples."

2. 2. Он спит.

"He's asleep."

Он не спит.

"He isn't asleep."

Gender

Nouns don't have genders in English. You may be familiar with the fact that with other languages, like French and Italian, they do. In French, you don't know the gender of a noun unless you memorize it, and even advanced French speakers often make mistakes.

In Russian, this issue doesn't exist! You can tell the gender just by looking at the ending of the word.

Masculine nouns usually end in a consonant.

For Example:

1. Стол ("table")

2. дом (house)

Feminine nouns usually end in -а or -я.

For Example:

1. ручка ("a pen")

2. Мария ("Mary")

Neuter nouns usually end in -о or -е.

For Example:

1. Письмо ("a letter")
2. солнце ("the Sun")

Word Order

We don't often think about how important the order of words is. English is rather strict in that. To make sense, we have to structure sentences in a particular way. Word order in Russian is much more flexible than in English and often many combinations are acceptable. For example, to say "I love you," you can say Я тебя люблю or Я люблю тебя. However, changing the word order slightly changes the emphasis in the sentence and makes it sound more formal, informal, or poetic.

The Cases

We generally consider cases one of the most difficult aspects of Russian grammar. There are no cases in English but you can meet them in Latin or German. So, what is a case? It's a grammatical term we use to indicate a change in the ending of a noun, adjective, or pronoun. The choice of the case depends on the grammatical function of the words in the sentence. As all nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have different endings in different cases, you have to memorize lots of endings as well as to learn when to use each case! This certainly sounds scary, but if you learn the cases progressively (as we do in our RussianPod101 Beginner lessons), it makes it so much easier because you're dealing with manageable chunks. Here's some advice to help you learn the cases.

1. Don't try to learn all the six cases at the same time. You'll immediately get confused and it'll take a long time before you manage to use them correctly, so ultimately it will be counterproductive.
2. Don't learn the endings of the adjectives at the same time as the endings of the nouns. Try to get used to the nouns first.
3. Don't learn the plural form for each case at the same time as the singular form. Wait to be at ease with the singular form first.

There. This was a brief helicopter view of how we apply some grammar to Russian. As you can see, it wasn't so bad at all and some of it is simpler than it is in English. Of course, some is

more difficult too, but with RussianPod101, we understand this and design your learning accordingly so you won't even notice. We really hope this quick glimpse has helped and has given you the tools and motivation to learn more and more Russian.



LESSON NOTES

All About #3

Five Tips To Avoid Common Russian Mistakes

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

3

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Tips to Help Russian Students Overcome Common Errors

Tip 1: Learn Your Cases

There are no cases in English. That means that nouns and adjectives always stay the same no matter what their function and position in the sentence is. It's different in Russian. The endings of nouns and adjectives change depending on their function.

Certainly, that complicates things a lot. Often, beginner students, especially the ones learning "by ear," choose to speak without using any cases, and they just don't change noun and adjective endings when they speak. Of course, it's possible for a native speaker to understand someone who speaks like this but...

1. It can be irritating because you are slaughtering their language
2. It can be totally confusing!

When you listen to someone speak, you tend to pay attention to key words rather than the whole sentence. That's a natural habit because we need to start somewhere, and hooking onto familiar words is easier than trying to decipher an entire sentence. Especially during a live conversation, you need to try to communicate immediately. It isn't like in a classroom where you can write everything down and look things up in a dictionary.

Correct case endings give speakers clues about what we are saying. For example, in Russian you say **У меня есть кошка** ("I have a cat"). In this sentence, **кошка** doesn't change. However, if you want to say "I don't have a cat," the sentence will sound like **У меня нет кошки**: the noun changes after **нет**.

If you say **У меня нет кошка**, a native speaker will certainly be confused as it isn't clear whether you HAVE a cat or DON'T have a cat. The first part of the sentence tells them you don't, and the second part tells them you do! Or maybe you didn't mean "a cat" at all, but some strange masculine noun (**кошк**) or neuter noun (**кошко**)?

Кошко sounds very much like **окошко** ("a window"), so maybe you actually don't have a window? As you can see, there's a lot of room for confusion.

Once you've learned to speak incorrectly, it's extremely difficult to change your habits! So take our advice, try to use the cases from the very beginning, it will avoid you many problems later!

Tip 2: Watch Your Word Stress!

Like in English, word stress is extremely important. In Russian, you don't say all the syllables of the word with the same strength, but accentuate one syllable. You pronounce this syllable much louder than you do the others. If you don't stress the right syllable, it can lead to confusion, and native speakers will have difficulty understanding you. Unfortunately, unlike in Italian or French, there are no rules to help you stress a word correctly. It's just something you have to learn for each word. Sometimes even native speakers are not sure how to stress a word correctly.

This doesn't make things easy for learners but don't let this put you off; it's very common to stress the wrong syllable. Practice makes perfect! Anyway, it doesn't so much affect understanding, but the issue is that sometimes changing the stress changes the meaning of the word! The word **писать** is a good example. With the stress on the last syllable, it means, "to write," but when the first syllable is stressed, it means "to pee!" So you can see how potentially embarrassing changing the stress can be!

Tip 3: Don't Repeat the Verb in the Question

In English, you say:

1. "I work as a doctor."
2. "You work as a doctor."

In the present tense, the verb doesn't change regardless of whether the subject is the first person ("I") or the second person ("you").

In Russian, you use a different verb ending for "I" and "you" in the present.

For Example:

1. "I work." (Я работаю)
2. "You work." (Ты работаешь)

It is very common for English speakers to forget about it, as in English the verb doesn't

change. Also, they hear the ending **-ешь** in the question and tend to reply using **ешь**.

For Example:

1. Где ты работаешь?

Я работаешь в банке, when it should be, Я работаю в банке.

Again, start out getting used to this and it'll save you a lot of confusion later on.

Tip 4: Watch Your Gender

In English, the past tense is the same, no matter if the subject is a man, a woman, or a number of people.

For Example:

1. He finished writing the letter.
2. She finished writing the letter.
3. They finished writing the letter.

In Russian, the ending of the verb in the past tense changes depending on the gender and the plurality.

For Example:

1. Он закончил писать письмо.
"He finished writing the letter."
2. Она закончила писать письмо.
"She finished writing the letter."
3. Они закончили писать письмо.
"They finished writing the letter."

If the subject is **я** or **ты**, use the ending **-л** if the pronoun refers to a man, and **-ла** if it refers to a woman.

For Example:

1. Я была в Москве в прошлом году.
"I was in Moscow last year." ("I" is a woman)

2. Ты уже был в Италии?
"Have you been to Italy yet?" ("You" is a man)

This can be confusing for non-native speakers. If they are male and their teacher or the person they speak most often to is female, or vice versa, they can start using the wrong form in the past. For example, a man can say Я ходила в магазин just because he has heard it a lot and gets accustomed to it, whereas he actually should say Я ходил в магазин.

Oddly enough, even little Russian boys sometimes make this mistake if they stay most of the time with females.

Tip 5: Don't Try to Translate "It"

In English, you use the pronoun "it" to replace a noun referring to a thing rather than a person.

For Example:

1. "This is my favorite book. It's very interesting."

In Russian, the pronoun "it" doesn't exist. We replace "it" with "he" or "she," depending on their gender. That means, for example, that when you speak, you have to remember that книга ("a book") is feminine, and that you should refer to it as она ("she").

For Example:

1. Это моя любимая книга. Она очень интересная.
"This is my favorite book. It's very interesting."

English speakers sometimes tend to forget this and look for the Russian word for "it." "It is" is sometimes translated as это in Russian.

For Example:

1. "It's a dog."
(Это собака.)

However, это means "this is" rather than "it." So, as you can see, it's wrong to use это to replace a noun. For example, when you are asked:

1. Тебе нравится этот фильм?
"Do you like this movie?"

you should reply Да, он мне нравится and NOT Да, это мне нравится.

Make a note of these RussianPod101 tips and it'll really save you a lot of time and effort as you learn Russian. Because we understand learning, we do all the hard work and provide you with the most useful and effective information to help you achieve success.



LESSON NOTES

All About #4 Confusing Pairs in Russian

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

4

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Five Russian Pairs of Words That May Be Confusing

Imagine that for each English word there was a direct and perfect translation into Russian. How much easier would that make it to learn Russian?

Unfortunately, not only is it not like that, but quite often an English word can be translated by a dozen Russian words and vice versa. When we translate two (or more) Russian words by the same word in English, it creates confusion. We tend to remember just one translation and stick to it, or we don't understand the difference in meaning because in English it's just one word!

In this RussianPod101 lesson, we'll give you five pairs of words that non-native speakers most often confuse and give you some tips how to use them correctly.

1. **В** versus **на**

When you are a beginner, we teach you that, **в** means "in" or "at," and that **на** means "on." What could be easier right? However, later you will realize that it doesn't really work this way. You'll hear someone say, **Я был на почте** ("I was at the post office"), and you'll start wondering why they are saying "on the post office." The person didn't climb on top of the post office, did they?

The thing is that **на** does mean "on top of," but it's just one of its meanings. It can also mean "in," "at," "to"...exactly like **в**! Even those who speak Russian fluently often make mistakes when it comes to the choice between **в** and **на**. Unfortunately, the only way to use the prepositions correctly is to learn which nouns we use with **в** and which ones we use with **на**.

The choice of the preposition depends on the noun that goes after it. Most nouns take **в**, so it's probably safer to use **в** when in doubt. Here's a non-exhaustive list of the nouns that take **на**:

Russian Preposition	"English"
На работе	"at work"

На улице	"in the street"
На заводе (на фабрике)	"at the factory"
На почте	"at the post office"
На пляже	"on the beach"
На встрече (на собрании)	"at the meeting"
На уроке	"at the lesson"/ "in class"
На юге / севере / востоке / западе	"in the south" / "north" / "east" / "west"
На самолёте / на поезде / на машине и т. д.	"by plane" / "train" / "car," etc.
На море	"by the sea"
На острове	"on an island"
На каникулах	"on (school) holidays" / "on vacation"
На чердаке	"at the attic" [but, в подвале means "in the cellar"]
На (банковском) счету	"on a bank account"
На (первом) курсе	"in (one's first) year" [of university, college]
На факультете	"in a faculty"
На (этой, прошлой) неделе	"this"/ "last week"
На выходных	"at the weekend"
На балконе	"on the balcony"

2. Ходить versus идти

If you already know some Russian, you might have noticed how confusing words of motion can be! There are at least twenty different verbs that are all translated as "to go" in English! Of course, we won't discuss all of them here, but instead just concentrate on a pair that beginners find particularly confusing, as we use it a lot in the present tense: **ходить** and **идти**.

They both mean "to go," but if your friend asks you **Ты ходишь в бассейн?** he doesn't mean the same thing as if he were to ask **Ты идёшь в бассейн?**

We use **Ходить** when the action is **repeated** (you go somewhere regularly).

For Example:

1. Я часто хожу в кино.
"I often go to the movies."

We use **Идти**, on the other hand, for a **singular action** (you go somewhere once).

For Example:

1. Сегодня я иду в кино.
"Today I'm going to the movies."

So if we go back to our example, when your friend asks you **Ты ходишь в бассейн?** he means "Do you go to the swimming pool?" (regularly). And when he asks **Ты идёшь в бассейн?** he means "Are you going to the swimming pool?" (now or in the near future).

3. Направо versus справа

In English, we translate these two words as "right," which often leads to Russian students not knowing which they should use.

For Example:

1. Поверни направо!

"Turn right!"

2. Магазин справа.

"The store is on your right."

We use **направо** to talk about the **direction of movement**. We often use it after the verbs **поворачивать** ("to turn"), **идти** ("to go"), and other verbs of motion.

For Example:

1. На перекрёстке поверните направо.

"Turn right at the crossroads."

2. Иди направо.

"Go to the right."

We use **справа** to talk about **motionless objects**. After **справа**, we often use **от** + the genitive case.

For Example:

1. Гостиница находится справа от почты.

"The hotel is to the right of the post office."

These rules also work for **налево** and **слева** ("left").

4. Остановиться versus перестать

Russian learners often confuse these two verbs because they both mean "to stop" in English. However, they are not interchangeable.

Остановиться means to **"stop while you're walking, riding a bicycle, driving a car, etc."**

For Example:

1. Сергей остановился перед домом.
"Sergey stopped in front of the house."

2. Поезд остановился на маленькой станции.
"The train stopped at a little station."

Перестать means to "**stop doing something**" (other than walking, riding etc.).

For Example:

1. Перестаньте шуметь!
"Stop making noise!"

2. Снег перестал.
"The snow has stopped."

3. Дети перестали разговаривать и посмотрели на него.
"The children stopped talking and looked at him."

5. Положить versus поставить

As both verbs mean "to put," it's quite difficult for a learner to distinguish between them.

Положить means "to put something **horizontally**."

For Example:

1. Положи книгу на стол.
"Put the book on the table."

2. Куда ты положил хлеб?
"Where did you put bread?"

Поставить means "to put something **vertically**," usually on a hard surface.

For Example:

1. Куда ты поставил бутылку?
"Where did you put the bottle?"

2. Поставь книгу на полку.
"Put the book on the shelf."



LESSON NOTES

All About #5

Five Russian Phrases That Will Take You A Long Way

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

5

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Five Russian Phrases That Will Take You a Long Way

When you start learning Russian, there are words that you just can't miss and will hear all the time, words such as здравствуйте ("hello"), до свидания ("good-bye"), or спасибо ("thank you"). However, native speakers commonly use many Russian words and phrases in everyday situations, but they are not necessarily the first thing you learn as they mainly belong to 'spoken Russian.' In this lesson, we'll introduce five phrases that will take you a long way and help you sound natural when you speak Russian.

1. Счастливо

shchastliva

"Good-bye"

You probably know до свидания, which is a formal way to say "good-bye," as well as пока, which is informal. However, до свидания might sometimes sound a bit too formal, and пока a bit too informal in certain situations. That's why счастливо is often a good option.

It comes from the word "happy" (счастливый) and literally means, "a wish of happiness" to the person you are saying goodbye to. You usually use it with people you know rather than strangers, however, it sounds more polite than пока. For example, if you address someone as вы rather than ты, you wouldn't normally say пока, but it's perfectly fine to say счастливо.

Please note that we pronounce the first sound in счастливо like the sound [щ] and not [ч].

2. Вы не подскажете...

Vy ne patskazhete...

"Could you tell me..."

The first word for "Excuse me" that students usually learn is извините, and of course there is nothing wrong with using it if you ask for directions or any other information. However, using вы не подскажете will certainly make you sound more natural and polite at the same time. We use it with извините.

For Example:

1. Извините, вы не подскажете, где улица Маяковского?
"Excuse me, could you tell me where Mayakovsky street is?"

Or with Russian equivalents of sir, madam, etc., you say:

1. Девушка, вы не подскажете, автобус уже ушёл?
"Excuse me (addressing a young girl), could you tell me if the bus has already left?"

3. Ничего страшного

Nichevo strashnova

"No worries"/"No problem"

We rarely teach this expression to beginners despite it being extremely useful. Think how often you say "no problem" in English and you'll understand why. Often, Russian learners tend to use their own literal translation of "no problem" (нет проблем), which isn't usually used in the same context as in English.

Ничего страшного literally means "nothing scary," and we can use it in a variety of situations, such as to accept an apology or to reassure someone.

For Example:

1. Someone pushes you in the metro and then apologizes. You can reply Ничего страшного.
2. A friend calls you and says he can't meet you today. You can reply Ничего страшного.
3. A child failed an exam. You can reply Ничего страшного, сдашь в следующий раз!
"No worries, you'll pass next time!"

4. Будьте здоровы!

But'ye zdarovy

"Bless you!"

When someone sneezes, some Russian people might consider it impolite if you don't say anything, so **будь здоров** is a good phrase to know. You will certainly impress your Russian friends if you use this phrase in front of them, especially if you get the gender right! I know what you're thinking - "Gender?! Not again?! Can't these Russians just keep it simple? You can't even say 'Bless you' without thinking of genders and other grammar stuff?"

Well, to use this phrase correctly, you need to keep the following in mind:

1. Whether you address the person who sneezed formally or informally (use **вы** or **ты** with them)
2. If you address them formally (use **вы**), you should say **будьте здоровы**
3. If you address them informally (use **ты**), you should say **будь здоров** when speaking to a man, and **будь здорова** when speaking to a woman

Summary of **Будьте здоровы**

1. Formal: **Будьте здоровы** (*but'ye zdarovy*)
2. Informal (addressing a man): **Будь здоров** (*but' zdarof*)
3. Informal (addressing a woman): **Будь здорова** (*but' zdarova*)

And finally, the Russian word you just can't do without:

5. Хорошо

harasho

"Good," "Okay," "Well"

This is probably the most common word in spoken Russian! Native speakers use it all the time, which makes it difficult for learners to grasp its exact meaning.

Even though it comes from *хороший* ("good"), it most often means "okay," "fine" rather than "great." If your teacher says *хорошо* after you've finished an exercise, don't rush to thank them! Usually they just mean "Okay, we can move on now," rather than to praise you. However, *очень хорошо* ("very good") is usually a compliment.

You often use *хорошо* when you agree to do something.

For Example:

1. Купи молока, пожалуйста. - Хорошо.
"Buy some milk, please. - Okay."

As you can see, we use these common phrases in English, and indeed any language. It keeps the language 'oiled' as it's focused on what people say to each other every day, rather than some dry academic writing that nobody actually speaks. This really summarizes learning with RussianPod101. We know that any language needs to be learned correctly, but we also know that languages are 'alive' and spoken by everyday people in everyday situations and this is just as important to learn.



LESSON NOTES

All About #6

Five Words Your Teacher Will Never Teach You

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

6

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Five Words Your Teacher Will Never Teach You

Just like any other language, Russian has different registers: formal, neutral, informal, and slang. Your textbook will normally teach you formal or neutral Russian. We consider Russian slang (called **мат**) unprintable and many people, even among the young, would find it extremely offensive if you used it in front of them. We consider **Мат** generally more offensive than most swear words you commonly use in English, and you should bear this in mind if you decide to show off your knowledge of colloquial Russian! Of course, we are not going to teach you any **мат**, but if you learn some from well, or rather ill-meaning friends, or from a slang dictionary, we would not advise you to use it unless you are absolutely sure your Russian friends find it acceptable!

Even though you probably won't need any Russian slang during your trip to Russia, you'll probably still want to sound informal rather than formal in some situations. Using informal language usually, perhaps surprisingly, asks for much more skill and practice than using formal language, and is often a dangerous activity for a non-native speaker. It is subject to lots of rules that you won't find in any textbook and can only learn by hearing people speak. If you don't know when and how to use informal language, at best you'll make native speakers laugh and at worst, you'll offend them.

In this lesson, we're going to cover five words that you are unlikely ever to see in a textbook. They are not considered rude; however, you only should use them with people you know well, as they belong to informal, "spoken" Russian.

Before we start, here's a little tip: you may remember that the word order in Russian is more flexible than in English. However, you may not know that the more unusual and flexible you make the word order, the less formal you sound. So, to sound informal in Russian, you can just use "unusual" word order. For example, to ask, "What's your name?" you would normally say **Как тебя зовут?** However, saying **Тебя как зовут?** sounds less "rigid" and therefore, informal. Putting the object in front of the sentence will often do the trick.

For Example:

1. Яблоки купил?

"Have you bought the apples?" (instead of Ты купил яблоки?)

When it comes to questions, you can put the question word after the subject to make it sound less formal.

For Example:

1. Он где работает?
"Where does he work?" (instead of Где он работает?)

So here are the five words you will probably never see in a Russian language textbook:

1. Жрать (*zhrat'*)

"to eat" (informal, e.g., "to wolf"/" to gorge"/" to stuff")

You may already know the words есть and кушать, which both mean "to eat" (кушать might sound more formal than есть for some people). Жрать also means "to eat," but this word conveys the idea of eating too much, or slovenly, untidy and even greedily. For some Russians this word is associated with a pig. This word is rude, therefore it can be used in a jovial way but only with people you know very well and who you are sure will not feel offended. Though bear in mind that some people might not like it if you use this word in front of them, even if they are your friends.

For Example:

1. Он жрёт всё, что находит.
"He wolfs down everything he finds."
2. Хватит жрать!
"Stop stuffing yourself!"

2. Тю-тю (*tyu-tyu*)

"gone," "lost"

This funny word, which is very easy to remember and use, will certainly impress your Russian friends! Technically speaking, it isn't a verb, but we can translate it into English as "gone" or

"lost." You just put it directly after the thing that is supposed to be lost.

For Example:

1. Он вернулся, а кошелёк тю-тю.
"He came back but the wallet was already gone."
2. Все его денежки тю-тю!
"He lost all his money!"

3. Однокашник (*adnokashnik*)

"a classmate," "a schoolmate"

This word is the informal version of одноклассник. Одноклассник comes from the words один ("one," "the same"), and класс ("grade"), and literally means "a person from the same grade." The word однокашник also comes from один, but contains the word каша, which means "porridge!" In Old Russian, каша used to mean a meal that is eaten with others, so однокашник was a person you shared meals with. However, now it's just an informal word for "classmate."

For Example:

1. Это Славка, мой однокашник.
"This is Slavka, my classmate."

4. Тормозить (*tarmozit'*)

"to react too slowly"

Тормозить usually means "to brake."

For Example:

1. Машина тормозит.
"The car is braking."

However, in spoken Russian, we use this word in a lighthearted way to tell someone that they are reacting or acting too slowly.

For Example:

1. Отвечай, не тормози!
"Wake up and answer!"
2. Я сегодня торможу, потому что очень устал.
"I'm slow today because I'm very tired."

5. Прикалываться (*prikalyvat'sya*)

"to joke," "to play"

You might know the word **шутить** ("to joke"). **Прикалываться** is its informal version, and we use it much more commonly, especially among young people.

For Example:

1. Я просто прикалываюсь.
"I'm just playing."
2. Хватит прикалываться, скажи серьёзно!
"Stop joking, speak seriously!"

The adjective, **прикольный** that has the same root as **прикалываться**, which means "funny" or "cool."

For Example:

1. Прикольный чувак
"a cool dude"

These five phrases are just part of the RussianPod101 jigsaw of learning; you'll not find this information in any textbook yet it's arguably just as important as formal terms. Learning any language isn't just about knowing what to say and when to say it, or how certain terms

translate into your language. It's also about knowing how native speakers use their own language in their everyday lives.



LESSON NOTES

All About #7

How Much Russian Can You Remember?

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

7

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is a Russian Language Quiz: How Much Can You Remember?

1. Which language did many Russian nobles speak in the 18th and 19th centuries?

Answer: French

Some French words in Russian are пляж ("beach"), этаж ("floor"), and бюро ("office").

During this time, French became an increasingly prominent influence to Russian with many French words entering the Russian language. The nobles not only spoke French fluently, but even wrote their letters in French. Perhaps surprisingly, some people even spoke it better than Russian. You can see this today in Tolstoy's books. Most of the letters in the famous book "War and Peace," are written in French. It was even common to have French nannies who taught French to children from their early childhood.

2. Cases in Russian affect which parts of speech?

1. **Only verbs**
2. **Only nouns**
3. **Nouns, adjectives, and pronouns**

Answer: 3

A case is a grammatical term used to indicate a change in the ending of a noun, adjective, or pronoun. The choice of the case depends on the grammatical function of the words in the sentence. As all nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have different endings in different cases, you have to memorize lots of endings as well as to learn when to use each case! However, if you learn the cases progressively (like we do in our Russianpod101 beginner lessons), it makes it so much easier as you're dealing with manageable chunks.

3. To make a question in Russian, what do you change in the sentence?

1. **The word order**
2. **The intonation**

3. **The case**

Answer: 2

In English, to make a question you need a different auxiliary depending on the tense, and you change the word order. In Russian, you just change your intonation-nothing else changes.

4. In Russian, what parts of speech are there none of?

1. **articles**

2. **prepositions**

3. **adverbs**

Answer: 1

An article is a word that combines with a noun to indicate the type of reference being made by the noun. The articles in the English language are, "the," "a," and "an." In short, it is what you're referring to (e.g., the cat). In Russian, there are no articles!

5. Счастливо means...

1. **"Hello"**

2. **"Goodbye"**

3. **"Sorry"**

Answer: 2

До свидания, is a formal way to say "goodbye," as well as пока, which is informal. However, до свидания might sometimes sound a bit too formal, and пока a bit too informal in certain situations. That's why счастливо is often a good option. It comes from the word happy (счастливый), and literally means "a wish of happiness" to the person you are saying goodbye to. You usually use it with people you know rather than strangers; however, it sounds more polite than пока. For example, if you address someone as вы rather than ты, you wouldn't normally say пока, but it's perfectly fine to say счастливо. Please note that we

pronounce the first sound in **счастливо** like the sound [ш] and not [сч].

6. When you say **Мой сын ходит в школу**, you mean that your son...

1. **goes to school regularly**
2. **is going to school now**

Answer: 1

You use **Ходить** when the action is repeated (you go somewhere regularly).

For Example:

1. **Я часто хожу в кино.**
"I often go to the movies."

You use **Идти**, on the other hand, for a singular action (you go somewhere once).

For Example:

1. **Сегодня я иду в кино.**
"Today I'm going to the movies."

7. Which of the following verbs is the most informal?

1. **Есть**
2. **кушать**
3. **жрать**

Answer: 3

The words **есть** and **кушать** both mean "to eat." (**кушать** might sound more formal than **есть** for some people). **Жрать** also means "to eat," but this word conveys the idea of eating too quickly, too much, or eating unsuitable things!

For Example:

1. **Он жрёт всё, что находит**
"He wolfs down everything he finds."
2. **Хватит жрать!**
"Stop stuffing yourself!"

You can use this word in a jovial way with people you know well, though bear in mind that some people might not like it if you use this word in front of them.



LESSON NOTES

All About #8

Russian History In A Nutshell

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

8

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Russian History

The ancestors of the Russians were the **Slavic tribes**. In the mid ninth century, the Vikings founded the first East Slavic dynasty. The first East Slavic state, Kievan Rus' (Киевская русь), adopted Christianity from the Byzantine Empire in 988.

Kievan Rus' consisted of a number of small states, each of which a "prince" (князь) ruled. The princes were all involved in a power struggle, and civil wars were very common. As a result, Kievan Rus' succumbed to Mongol invaders in the 1230s and didn't manage to overthrow the Mongol control until the late fifteenth century.

In the fifteenth century, the grand princes of Moscow went on gathering Russian lands to increase the population and wealth under their rule. The most successful of these was **Ivan III**, who laid the foundations for a Russian national state.

The development of the Tsar's autocratic powers reached a peak during the reign of **Ivan IV** ("**Ivan the Terrible**"). He strengthened the position of the monarch to unprecedented levels as he ruthlessly subordinated the nobles to his will, exiling or even executing many at the slightest provocation. Built on his orders was the famous St. Basil's Cathedral that adorns Red Square in Moscow. Legend says that after the cathedral had been constructed, Ivan the Terrible ordered to have the project's author to be made blind so that he could never build anything as beautiful as St. Basil's Cathedral again.

Another important figure in Russian history was **Peter the Great** who ruled at the beginning of the eighteenth century. Peter played a major role in bringing his country into the European State System. He reorganized his government on the latest Western models. He also insisted that noble people should wear European-style clothes and shave off their beards, or reform, which most nobles disapproved of. In 1703, Peter the Great founded Sankt-Petersburg, which was to become Russia's new capital.

Nearly forty years were to pass before a comparably ambitious ruler appeared on the Russian throne. **Catherine II (the Great)** was a German princess who married the German heir to the Russian crown. Finding him incompetent, Catherine tacitly consented to his murder and thus ascended to the throne. After a number of successful wars, Catherine managed to expand Russian borders. Mainly directed at oppressing lord's serfs, her internal politics triggered a major rebellion (ruthlessly suppressed). We also knew Catherine for her countless love affairs.

The beginning of the nineteenth century was marked by Napoleon's campaign who invaded Russia in 1812. The campaign turned out to be a catastrophe for Napoleon. Forced to retreat, French troops were unprepared for fighting in the cold Russian weather.

In 1861, Russia abolished serfdom, but the terms of abolition were so unfavorable to peasants that its revolutionary tensions actually increased.

The last Russian tsar, **Nicholas II**, came to power at the very end of the nineteenth century. His reign saw Imperial Russia go from being one of the foremost great powers of the world to an economic and military disaster. Under his reign, Russia entered the First World War, which contributed to general discontent and resulted in his abdication in 1917. Shortly after that, the Bolsheviks executed Nicholas II and all his family, including his thirteen-year-old son Aleksey.

A provisional government formed after Nicholas II abdicated, but it was unable to solve the deepening economic crisis, which led to the events that we know as the October Revolution. The Bolsheviks, led by **Vladimir Lenin** (real name: Ulyanov), seized the power and civil war broke out.

Lenin's death in 1924 resulted in a power struggle. Eventually, **Joseph Stalin** (real name: Djougachvili) managed to get rid of all his political rivals and came to power. Incidentally, his assumed name (Stalin) comes from the Russian word *сталь* ("steel"): strong as steel. Stalin's time saw tens of thousands of Soviet citizens face arrest, deportation, and execution. Denunciation was very common, and because they would be arrested for no reason at all, people lived in constant fear. At the same time, Stalin managed to create a personality similar to a cult leader both for himself and Lenin, and so people who grieved his death likened it to the death of a family member.

In many ways, even though this period of Russian history can be considered as tragic, Stalin's economic policy based on heavy industrialization had remarkable results that revived the Soviet economy.

In June 1941, German troops swept across the Soviet border. The German army seized Ukraine, laid a siege of Leningrad (now Sankt Petersburg), and threatened to capture Moscow but were thrown off in a successful counterattack. In 1942-1943, the Soviet Union managed to reverse the situation by defeating Germany in Stalingrad and Kursk. By the end of 1944, the front had moved beyond the Soviet frontiers into Eastern Europe, and Soviet forces drove into eastern Germany capturing Berlin in May 1945.

After Stalin's death in 1953, **Nikita Khrushchev** came to power. At a speech to the closed session of the Twentieth Communist Party Congress, Khrushchev shocked his listeners by denouncing Stalin's dictatorial rule and attacked the crimes committed by Stalin's closest associates and thus initiated "The Thaw" (Оттепель): a complex shift in political, cultural, and

economic life in the Soviet Union. That included some openness and contact with other nations and more tolerance towards criticism.

Throughout his years of leadership, Khrushchev attempted to carry out a number of reforms, not many of which were successful. For example, after a visit to the USA, Khrushchev insisted on creating massive plantations of corn in the USSR without taking into account the climatic differences between Russia and the southern states of the USA.

Eventually, accused of "hasty decisions and actions divorced with reality," people voted Khrushchev out of office. He's the only Soviet leader who didn't stay in office until his death, except for Gorbachev whose leadership ended with the collapse of the Soviet Union.

After Khrushchev retired, **Leonid Brezhnev** came to power. This period was commonly known as *Застой* ("the period of stagnation"). Surprisingly, many Russians recall this time with nostalgia, as it was a time of great political and economic stability.

In the years following Breznev's death, several leaders succeeded at the head of the Communist Party, but none of them stayed long because of poor health, and eventually, **Mikhail Gorbachev** came to power and proposed a vast program of reform. He initiated his new policy of *перестройка* ("reconstruction") and *гласность* ("freedom of speech"). Largely hailed abroad, he sought to improve relationships with the West. However, the Russian people appreciated him less in his own country where his economic policy brought the country close to disaster. There were severe shortages of basic food supplies (sugar, meat, dairy products), so people queued for food outside shops for days, and "food rations cards" (*талоны*) were introduced.

The unstable economic situation coupled with the freedom of expression resulted in the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991. **Boris Yeltsin** was elected the first President of Russia and his government started wide-ranging reforms. They abolished price controls and privatization began. Liberalization of prices resulted in hyperinflation. For example, a loaf of bread that cost twenty kopecks (0.2 rubles) in 1989 cost two thousand rubles in 1996! Of course, the salaries and pensions didn't follow and consequently, a large part of the Russian population plunged into poverty.

As part of the privatization process, many enterprises were sold at incredibly low prices to groups of individuals with inside connections in the government and the mafia. Many others were simply closed and people working there lost their jobs. The early and mid 1990s saw extreme lawlessness, rise of criminal gangs, and violent crime.

On December 31, 1999, President Yeltsin resigned, handing the post to the recently appointed Prime Minister, **Vladimir Putin**. Western nations have criticized many reforms made during the Putin presidency as un-democratic; however, Putin's leadership resulted in a return of order and stability, and this progress won him widespread popularity in Russia, which resulted in his re-election in 2004.

In 2008, the Russian people elected **Dmitry Medvedev** President of Russia, while Putin became Prime Minister. People often joke that Putin is still the "real" president of Russia and controls everything, but of course, no one knows if there is any truth in it.



LESSON NOTES

All About #9

Five Russian Movies You Must Watch

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

9

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Five Russian Movies You Must Watch

Watching movies is an amazing tool to help you learn a language. Obviously, it's best to try to get authentic Russian movies rather than, for example, Hollywood versions dubbed in Russian. This will help gain an insight into the culture (of the time the movie was set) and history, and in covering all of this, you get "real" language. Of course, you can also switch subtitles on and off too! Above all, movies can be fun and relaxing and you can watch them again, and again.

These films are in chronological order (not of the date when they were made but the period they cover).

1. "Cruel Romance" (Жестокий Романс) (1984)

This movie was adapted from a theatre play written by a famous Russian playwright, Alexander Ostrovsky, and is a work of one of the best Soviet film directors, Eldar Ryazanov. It takes us back to the nineteenth century to a provincial town at the banks of the Volga.

The main character, Larissa, seems to have everything: youth, beauty, intelligence, and talent. The only thing she doesn't have is a dowry, which is common among noble young girls at that time; the time when the merchant-class are quickly building fortunes while many nobles are ruined. As a result, she's surrounded by admiring men but no one wants to marry her. Staying unmarried is an unthinkable prospect at that time so she accepts a marriage proposal from Karandyshev, an ambitious post office clerk, even though she despises him. The man Larissa had always loved, Paratov, had been away, hence her agreeing to marry Karandyshev. Paratov eventually returns home to the same town and he explains how he is totally devoted to her. This changes everything. She believes Paratov's promises that he loves her and will give up everything for her. Larissa leaves her fiancé at a party where their engagement was supposed to be celebrated and joins Paratov's party on his boat. They spend the night together and the following morning he confesses that he's engaged to a wealthy heiress and cannot marry Larissa! Paratov's friends, rich merchants invited to the party on the boat, understand how difficult Larissa's situation is and are trying to take advantage of it. One of them asks her to be his mistress and offers to "keep" her. Larissa realizes that no one really cares about her and she's considered as an object rather than a

person. When Karandyshev arrives at the boat and threatens to kill her, she provokes him and hurts his pride even further by saying that "if she's just an object, she's too expensive for him." Karandyshev shoots Larissa and she thanks him before she dies for releasing her from her predicament.

This film gives a good portrait of the merchant-class in Russia when it was at its peak, and denounces their cynicism, lack of morals, and greed. It's also interesting for its beautiful, Russian tsygan-style songs accompanied by guitar. In short, it's a very "Russian" movie that you absolutely must see!

2. "Twelve Chairs" (Двенадцать Стульев) (1971)

This brilliant comedy, adapted from a novel with the same name, takes us back to the turbulent time just after the Russian Revolution. There are several screen versions of the novel, but the best one was probably the one by Leonid Gayday, a Soviet film director specializing in comedies.

A former nobleman and now a modest clerk in a Soviet organization, Ippolit Vorobyaninov, finds out that his mother-in-law had hidden all their family treasures in a chair to conceal them from the Bolsheviks. The problem is that the chair was part of a set of twelve other identical chairs and he has no idea what happened to the furniture! At the very beginning, treasure-hunting Vorobyaninov meets an adventurous young man, Ostap Bender, who takes total control of the operation. As the search for chairs proves more and more difficult, Bender and Vorobyaninov meet a number of strange characters and get into hilarious situations. Getting every new chair is an adventure; Bender even has to get married to get hold of one of them, but of course, the treasure is in the last one...or maybe there's no treasure at all? You'll need to watch the film to find out. Many phrases from the film, most of which belong to unforgettable Ostap Bender, achieved cult status.

3. "Tomorrow was the War" (Завтра Была Война) (1987)

This drama was adapted from a book by Boris Vasilyev and takes us to the tragic time just before the Second World War crossed the Soviet borders. A group of teenagers from a provincial Russian town has normal teenage worries: their changing bodies, first love, school...however, soon they are faced with a tragedy that will totally change their vision of the

world. It's the time of repressions when anyone could be arrested, exiled, or executed for no reason at all, and that's what happens to the father of one of them. Immediately, a schoolteacher starts persecuting the girl, insisting that she publicly condemns her father and eventually, she is driven to commit suicide. At her funeral, the school headmaster delivers a speech that will cost him his job and his membership in the communist party: "It isn't only a bullet or a knife that kills. A word can kill too..."

In spite of reflecting a particularly dark page of Russian history, the movie carries a very positive message showing that courage, honesty, and friendship can help people survive even at the most difficult of times.

4. "The Irony of Fate, or Enjoy Your Bath!" (Ирония судьбы, или с лёгким паром!) (1975)

Traditionally broadcasted in Russia on New Year's Eve, this comedy is fondly viewed by Russians every year. The key to the plot is the uniformity of the Brezhnev era, public architecture, and unimaginative multistory apartment buildings that can, in fact, be found in every city and town across the former Soviet Union.

Following their annual tradition, a group of friends meets at a *banya* ("traditional public bath") in Moscow to celebrate New Year's Eve and all of them get very drunk. After the bath, one of the friends, Pavlik, has to catch a plane to Leningrad while another of the group, Zhenya, is supposed to go home to celebrate New Year's Eve with his fiancée. Both Zhenya and Pavlik pass out, and the others cannot remember which of their unconscious friends is supposed to catch the plane to Leningrad; eventually, they mistakenly decide that it is Zhenya and put him on the flight instead of Pavlik!

Zhenya wakes up in Leningrad airport, believing he is still in Moscow. It turns out that in Leningrad there is a street with the same name (3rd Builders' street), with a building at his address which looks exactly like Zhenya's! The key fits in the door of the apartment with the same number. Inside, even the furniture and layout of the apartment is nearly identical to that of Zhenya's apartment. Zhenya is too drunk to notice the differences, and goes to sleep.

Later, the real tenant, Nadya, arrives home to find the strange man sleeping in her bed. To make matters worse, Nadya's fiancé, Ippolit, arrives before Nadya can convince Zhenya to get up and leave. Ippolit becomes furious, refuses to believe Zhenya's and Nadya's explanations, and so leaves. Zhenya desperately tries to get back to Moscow and Nadya herself wants to

get rid of him as soon as possible anyway, but there are no flights to Moscow until the next morning. Thus, the two are forced to spend New Year's Eve together. At first, they continue to treat each other with animosity, but gradually they fall in love.

The movie is filled with comedic moments, lots of interruptions such as unexpected guests, and ringing of the phone, while at the same time there is a love story continuing to develop. In the morning, Zhenya and Nadya feel that everything that has happened to them was an illusion, it couldn't have been real-life, real love. And so they make a difficult decision to part. With a heavy heart, Zhenya returns to Moscow. Meanwhile, Nadya reconsiders everything and deciding that she might have let her chance at happiness slip away, takes a plane to Moscow following Zhenya, easily finding him in Moscow, since their addresses are the same.

The film, funny and sad at the same time as many Soviet comedies are, will give you a good insight of what life was like in the Soviet Union during the Brezhnev Era and especially the way Russians celebrated (and still celebrate) holidays. The comedy is also worth seeing for its beautiful soundtrack.

5. "Brother" (Брат) (1997)

Many critics considered *Брат* as the first Post-soviet film to accurately portray Russian life after the fall of Communism, life where violence and crime have become an everyday occurrence.

The film begins when Danila Bagrov travels to St. Petersburg to seek out his older brother Viktor, who his mother is confident will help him make a living. His brother Viktor, who is actually an accomplished hit man, offers him one of his jobs. Danila completes the job successfully, but a gang who was supposed to eliminate his brother follows him. He manages to escape with the help of Svetlana, a married woman who is being abused by her husband, and begins an affair with her. At the same time, he befriends several people and gets into more trouble with mafia. Eventually, a gang leader, Krugly, manages to get hold of Viktor and gets him to call his brother and tell him to come home immediately. However, Danila ends up killing most of Krugly's men along with Krugly himself. Danila realizes that his own brother has turned him in, yet forgives him and tells him to move back to his hometown. In an attempt to rescue Sveta, he stumbles upon her husband whom he shoots and injures. Yet Sveta refuses to leave with Danila and stays with her husband. After saying good-bye to his friends, Danila leaves the city.

These five movies are very varied and each portray Russian life in different eras. As well as having a glimpse of what living in these times was like, they are entertaining, and definitely very Russian. Not only will this help your Russian, but knowing these movies themselves will certainly create a great impression as you meet Russians! You'll only learn like this from RussianPod101.com!



LESSON NOTES

All About #10

Modern Russian Society

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

10

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Modern Russian Society

In this lesson, we are going to look at Russian society, how it got to where it is today, and how culture reflects it.

Since the collapse of the Soviet Union, life has changed for everybody. The changes happened extremely quickly given that they were essentially life changing. For the older generation very much set in what they had been used to all their life, these changes were particularly difficult to cope with. On one hand, suddenly Western values flooded deep into every aspect of Russian life, yet the result is that certain elements of what it is to be Russian have remained.

Religion

The dominant religion in Russia is Orthodox Christianity. Over seventy percent of the population consider themselves as Russian Orthodox Christians, which is about one hundred million people. Despite this, only a minority of these attend church regularly. For most, they reduce their religious activities to baptizing their children at the nearest church and other than that, for a funeral.

In an Orthodox church, the service is always in Old Russian. Russians can understand the gist of it, although it can be very difficult to comprehend totally. A significant difference between a Russian church and a regular Western church is that there are no seats. One must stay standing, often for many hours. Some people do however, kneel during a service and others bow. In the congregation, men must remove any headgear as their heads must be uncovered at all times. Women must cover their hair and wear long skirts, certainly not trousers. It's recommended to respect this dress code even if you are just a visitor.

Interestingly, when Russian Orthodox Christians cross themselves, they do so from right to left, whereas other Christians usually cross from left to right.

Education

For many Russians, education is highly important and always taken extremely seriously. Many, even those on the poverty line, will save on food and clothes and use the little money they have to pay for private tuition for their children.

They enroll the majority of children aged from three years old in kindergarten. After the end of Communism, the number of kindergartens fell drastically so now there are far more children than places available. The result is extremely long waiting lists and many register their children the moment they are born!

Education for primary and secondary schools is free in Russia, together lasting eleven years. In the Soviet Union, it used to be ten years. Children attend primary school from the age of six and most of them are already able to read at this point. During primary school, children have the same teacher for all subjects. From the age of ten, they then go to secondary school where they have different teachers for every subject.

School hours and breaks differ to what one may be used to in the West. Primary school hours usually start in the morning and end in the afternoon. Children have quick snacks in between classes and do so until the end of school. There is no meal-break whatsoever as it is expected that the child's meal is given at home after school. Also, the school week is five or even six days a week.

Many Western children, at some point in their school years, have a choice as to what subjects they may wish to study, whereas in Russia there is no choice; everybody follows the same curriculum. Russian schools use a five-point system for grading. It ranges from "2," which is considered as "unacceptable," up to "5," which is "excellent." The lowest score, "1," representing a total fail, is very rarely used.

After completing nine years of schooling, children do eventually have a choice. Either they can end their education, completing the final two years at the school where they have been studying, or they can transfer to a training-type school that specializes in an area of choice. Traditionally, these specialist centers were divided into two categories: the less regarded "PTUs" and the superior "Technicums." During the last decade, such establishments have been renamed as a "college."

Universities traditionally had their own admission exams and take little or no account of a student's school record. Then in 2003, the Ministry of Education launched the "Unified State Examination" (USE). Many Universities fought this state proposal arguing that their institutions needed their own entrance exams in order to survive. Despite this opposition, the USE was

introduced in 2007 and is now used in all Russian Universities. A small number of the most prestigious Universities are still allowed to conduct their own exams alongside the USE system.

Medical Care

Healthcare in the Soviet Union used to be free and even since its collapse is still available from the state for all those that need it. However, lack of funding for many years has led to the emergence of many private medical establishments, particularly since the late 90s. The result is that these private practices have inevitably been able to attract the best and most qualified doctors and staff.

Family

Property in Russia is very expensive regardless of whether it's to buy or rent. Therefore, it's very common for children to live with their parents until they marry and even afterwards. There is an expectation that one looks after your parents as they become older and need help if they cannot care for themselves. However, the advantage of this is that grandparents can and do spend a lot of time bringing up their grandchildren while the children's parents go to work.

Traditionally, couples in Russia did not live together before marriage. Part of the reason, as well as culture, was that divorce was (and still is) easy and inexpensive. However, more recently, as part of adopting Western values, many Russian couples do now live together without being married.

Clothes

Clothes and fashion are extremely important in Russia, especially for women. It's most unusual for them not to wear any make up at all, even first thing in the morning! Compared to the West, Russian women and girls dress in sexier clothes. I know an American who was really shocked as he thought there were prostitutes everywhere he looked, until he realized this was not the case and it was just the normal dress code for Russian females!

Wearing fur is very common and accepted during Russian winters, the given excuse is attributed to the extreme cold.

These five aspects of Russian life illustrate the changing culture since the collapse of the Soviet Union. Some parts of life remain firmly rooted in Russian history although Western values clearly influence life today. As usual with RussianPod101.com, you don't only learn the Russian language you also learn everything about the country, its history, and culture, because that is embedded in every language so it's just as important.



LESSON NOTES

All About #11

Eating Habits in Russia

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

11

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Eating Habits in Russia.

In this RussianPod101 lesson, we are going to look at eating habits in Russia and describe how things have changed since the collapse of the Soviet Union. Naturally, we're going to give you a sample recipe too so you can eat like a Russian!

Eating habits in Russia have drastically changed in the last twenty years. In the Soviet time, most food was produced within the Soviet Union itself and very little food was imported from elsewhere. It can be difficult to imagine for someone who has never experienced it. In addition, there was also quite little contact with foreign countries, and as a result, Russian cuisine (and cuisine of former Soviet Republics) was the only thing people knew. Even pizza, that had become an "international" dish long ago, only became well-known in Russia in the nineties, not to mention Chinese or Japanese food that was completely unfamiliar to most people in the former Soviet Union.

After the fall of the Soviet Union in the nineties, they opened the borders. A lot of foreign food was imported (Boris Yeltsin's government even encouraged foreign food import rather than local produce). At the same time, many people started going abroad and discovered foreign food. The first McDonald's restaurant opened in Moscow in 1990 and people were traveling from all over the Moscow region to visit it, as it was something totally new and exciting. Asian, French, and Italian restaurants started appearing everywhere. Consequently, modern Russian cuisine is an interesting mixture of traditional Russian cuisine with a strong foreign influence.

Russian traditional cuisine is very rich. You should put off your trip to Russia if you are trying to lose weight! Butter, meat, dairy products, eggs, and cereal are commonly used. As for vegetables, potatoes, cabbage, beetroots, and cucumbers are very common and are an integral part of many typical Russian dishes.

Most people have three meals: breakfast, an afternoon meal, and an evening meal. Usually, people take the afternoon meal later than in most western countries, at two or three PM. The evening meal is also quite late as most people don't finish work until seven or eight PM (sometimes later) and they often face a long journey home before they can eat. In the Soviet Union, a typical breakfast used to consist of porridge (boiled cereal: oats, barley, rice, wheat, or other cereal). Cereal and the way it's eaten in the West have also become popular recently. They consider porridge itself an ideal food for children and it's still quite common today even

though many kids hate it! Now people usually have a coffee (or more common, tea) and a small sandwich (бутерброд, from the German word "bread and butter"). However, this name is misleading, as a typical Russian sandwich usually consists of bread and a sliced cheese or sausage. There are two types of bread commonly eaten in Russia, wheat bread (белый хлеб, literally "white bread") and rye bread (чёрный хлеб, literally "black bread").

A typical afternoon meal used to consist of three dishes: a "soup" (первое, the first dish), a "main dish" (второе, the second dish), and a "dessert" (третье, the third dish). Nowadays, not many people have soup for each meal, though soups are still a very important part of Russian cuisine. Most common Russian soups include *borshch* (борщ - "beetroot soup"), *shchi* (щи - "cabbage soup"), *okroshka* (окрошка - "cold vegetable soup"), "mushroom soup" (грибной суп), and "chicken soup" (куриный суп). Many people commonly add sour cream to their soup.

Examples of typical main dishes are *pel'meni* (пельмени - type of "meat ravioli," a typical Tatar dish that became extremely popular in the Soviet Union), *kotlety* (котлеты - "balls made of minced meat mixed with bread that had been soaked in milk"), or *kholodets* (холодец - "jellied chopped pieces of pork or veal with some spices"). The most typical accompaniment for meat dishes is potatoes, either boiled or fried. Some non-meat dishes include *blini* (блинчики - "pancakes"), *olad'i* (оладьи - "thick, small pancakes"), and *vareniki* (вареники - "Ukrainian dumplings with different fillings"). It's very common to have tea with some cake, cookies, or chocolates as a dessert.

An evening meal usually includes a main dish or soup, but not both. Russian salads are very different from Western salads. If you order a salad in a Russian restaurant and expect to see some lettuce and vegetables on your plate, then you'd better think again! Most typical Russian salads include boiled vegetables (potatoes, beetroots), meat, pickles, boiled eggs..., and no lettuce. Most common dressings are mayonnaise, sour cream, and oil, and most common spices are dill and parsley. Some examples of typical salads are *Olivye salad* (салат Оливье - "boiled potatoes and carrots, meat, pickled cucumbers, boiled eggs, green peas, and mayonnaise." Most people don't put olives in it despite what its name seems to suggest); *vinegret* (винегрет - "boiled beetroots, potatoes, pickled cucumbers, and oil"); *seld' pod shuboy* (сельдь под шубой - "herring under a fur coat"; salted herring under a "coat" of boiled beets and other vegetables). Russian salads are not usually considered part of everyday cuisine as their preparation is extremely time-consuming, but are usually made for parties or festivities.

Of course, there's no "exact" recipe for the typical Russian dishes we mentioned above. Each family uses their own recipe, and often they vary enormously; just few basic ingredients stay

the same.

Let's take *shchi* ("cabbage soup") as an example. Russians have been eating this dish for many centuries and you can see it mentioned in many Russian sayings and proverbs. Some recipes use fresh cabbage, and some use pickled cabbage. Some contain meat while others don't. We'll share a recipe of *shchi* with mushrooms with you, which is just one of the many ways to cook *shchi*.

Shchi

Ingredients:

3 or 4 average potatoes

300 g fresh cabbage

250 g mushrooms (you can use any mushrooms)

1 average onion

1 carrot

2 tablespoons of tomato paste

1 large bay leaf (or more to taste)

Seasoning

Cooking Method:

Wash the vegetables. Peel the potatoes, and then cut them into cubes. Chop the cabbage, peel and chop the onion, grate the carrot, and chop the mushrooms.

Put two and a half to three liters of water into a stewpot, salt it, and bring to a boil. Add the potatoes, bring to a boil again, then lower the heat and simmer for ten to fifteen minutes. At the same time, fry the chopped onion in a frying pan with a little oil until it's golden brown. Add the carrots and fry until soft, add salt to taste, and then set aside in a separate dish. In that same frying pan, fry the mushrooms, add a little seasoning to taste, and then add the mushrooms to the onions and carrots previously set aside. Now put the cabbage in the frying pan and gently fry with a little pepper, add the bay leaf and some water from the stewpot until

the cabbage becomes soft. At this point, add the onions, carrots, and the mushrooms to the cabbage as well as the tomato paste. Mix everything and cook for two-three minutes.

Add the mixture to the stewpot with the potatoes and cook for about five minutes. Add more seasoning according to taste and remove from the heat and cover. Leave covered for at least an hour before serving. If you want to feel "Russian," you can add some sour cream onto your plate.

As previously mentioned, there are many variations of this recipe according to region as well as family traditions so feel free to experiment!

Here we have briefly looked at food in Russia, how it has changed since the end of the Soviet Union and yet in many ways, how it hasn't. The *shchi* recipe is a great example of a simple, versatile, and typically Russian dish. Learn Russian with RussianPod101 and you'll learn all things Russian!



LESSON NOTES

All About #12 Important Dates in Russia

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

12

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Important Dates in Russia.

In this lesson, we're going to look at significant dates in the Russian calendar, what they are, how they compare to a calendar you may be used to, and why these dates are important for Russians. Apart from being interesting, it's great to know as it'll be useful for when traveling to Russia, and also it'll really impress your Russian friends if you can give them good wishes on days that are important for them.

Holidays are an important part of any culture. While some of them are the same in many countries, others are totally different or are celebrated in a different way. Did you know for example that March 8 is a very special day for your Russian girlfriend or wife, and she can be really upset if you ignore it? That December 25 is just an ordinary day in Russia and people go to work like any other day? In today's podcast, we'll tell you everything you need to know about Russian holidays and why it'll be good for you to know about them.

Новый год ("New Year's")

Новый год ("New Year's") is the first on the calendar and by far the most popular holiday in Russia. As religion was frowned upon in the Soviet Union, Russians did not officially celebrate holidays that had a religious connotation, like Christmas. So many Christmas traditions, like decorating the Christmas tree and gifts from Santa Claus for children, have been "transferred" to the New Year celebration. We call the Russian Santa "Father Frost" (Дед Мороз). He's always accompanied by a young girl called *Snegurochka* (from Russian снег meaning "snow"), his granddaughter.

It's unimaginable for Russians to go to bed early on New Year's Eve! People usually celebrate New Year's with their friends and family. Traditionally they cook an abundant meal with lots of different kinds of salads, small sandwiches, and a main dish (most often a roasted chicken). Of course, they also drink a lot of alcohol, especially champagne and vodka. It's common to drink a toast for the passing year several minutes before midnight to "say good-bye" to it. At midnight, everyone drinks their first glass of champagne and finally starts eating. They usually celebrate until three or four AM and sometimes later. It's usually very quiet on the New Year's Day as everyone's asleep!

Рождество ("Christmas")

Рождество ("Christmas") became an official public holiday again in 1992. You might not know that Russian Christmas is not celebrated on December 25, but two weeks later, on January 7. This difference is due to the fact that the Russian Orthodox Church still follows the Julian calendar while the Russian state had switched to the Gregorian calendar. Now Christmas in Russia is not as widely celebrated as New Year's. Many believers go to church on that day to attend the night service.

Международный Женский День ("International Women's Day")

The next important Russian holiday is the "International Women's Day" (Международный Женский День). It's celebrated on March 8. Even though it's called "international," it isn't celebrated much outside Russia and other former Soviet Republics. Men need to remember to buy some flowers or a gift for their partner on this day, but it's also very common to buy flowers or chocolates for female friends, colleagues, or teachers. If you send an e-card to your Russian female friends on that day, it'll be highly appreciated! Children usually make little gifts at school to offer their mothers on that day.

День Защитника Отечества ("Defender of the Fatherland Day")

There also exists the equivalent of the International Women's Day for men. It's celebrated on the February 23 and is called "Defender of the Fatherland Day" (День Защитника Отечества). Officially, it honors people who are serving or have served in the armed forces, but it's common to give a gift to your partner or father on that day regardless whether they have any connection with the Army.

Пасха ("Easter")

"Easter" (Пасха) ends a long period of fasting for believers. On that day, Russians traditionally eat eggs that have been painted by hand or dyed by boiling them with

onionskins. Other traditional dishes include **кулич** (*kulich* - "a tall round cake with raisins and sugar glazing"), and **пасха** (*paskha* - "a dish made of sweet cottage cheese and raisins").

День Весны и Труда ("Spring and Labor Day")

The first of May is a public holiday in Russia, like in many other countries. It's called "Spring and Labor Day" (День Весны и Труда). In the Soviet time, a military parade would usually take place on that day, but now many people just use this extra free day for gardening.

День Победы ("Victory Day")

Another important holiday is "Victory Day" (День Победы), the day that commemorates the victory over Nazi Germany. Contrary to most European countries where it's celebrated on May 8, it's May 9 in Russia. Russians consider Victory Day as one of its most important dates. It commemorates those who died in the second World War and pays tribute to survivors and veterans. Russians lay flowers and wreaths on wartime graves and memorials. Annually organized, there is a huge military parade in Moscow on Red Square and in all major cities. Orchestras and bands play wartime music in the streets of many cities and towns.

New Holidays in Russia

Several holidays are relatively new in Russia.

Russia Day (June 12) was established in 1994 and **Unity Day (November 4)** was first celebrated in 2005. Many people think that the latter was introduced to replace the October Revolution Day, which was celebrated on November 7 and used to be the only public holiday in fall.

After the fall of Communism in the nineties, Russians adopted some Western holidays like **Valentine's Day and Halloween** and they became quite popular, particularly among the young. In 2009, Russians turned Red Square in Moscow into an enormous ice rink to celebrate Valentine's Day. People who skated on the rink got a badge with a number at the entrance and thus were able to write and receive anonymous love notes. Many famous

Russian singers and bands took part in the show.

So as you can see, some dates are very similar whichever country you're in; for example, most people celebrate the New Year. However, we've also covered why some dates are very specific to Russia, their origins, and why you need to know about them. When your Russian girlfriend or wife are very touched and think even more of you for making them feel extra special on March 8, you can secretly thank RussianPod101.com!



LESSON NOTES

All About #13

Five Tips On How To Behave In Russia

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

13

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Cultural Differences Between Russia and Some Western Countries.

The saying "When in Rome do as the Romans do" has its equivalent in Russian: В чужой монастырь со своим уставом не ходят (literally, "Don't enter another monastery with your own rules"). Things that we consider appropriate in one culture we might perceive as rude in another and vice versa. Table manners in Japan are not exactly the same as in the USA for example! If you go to a foreign country, knowing about these differences is almost as important as speaking the language, so this is what this lesson is going to cover.

Cultural differences between Russia and, for example, the USA are much slighter than, for example, between the USA and some Arabic countries, so people often tend to overlook them. However, these differences do exist and it's good to know about them. In this podcast, we will give you five tips on what is good and bad manners in Russia.

1. Be Gallant

The first advice is for men. Being chivalrous isn't considered "sexist" in Russia! If you are accompanied by a woman and don't open and hold the door for her to let her in, you are being rude. It's also considered polite to get out of the car and open the car door for your female companion. If a woman you know is carrying a heavy bag, you should offer to help her. If you ask a woman out, she'll normally expect you to pay the bill.

2. Be Prepared for Invasion of Your Personal Space

Unfortunately, Russians need less personal space than Westerners do, which is often a source of discomfort for foreigners in Russia. When people stand or sit very close to you on the bus or on the metro, they are not being deliberately offensive; it's just a cultural thing. If you take up more than one seat on the bus, other passengers will probably be annoyed and tell you to move. Russians also consider putting your bag on the seat next to you to be rude unless the bus is virtually empty.

While we are on the subject of public transport, you should know that it's considered polite to give your seat to elderly people, women with small children, and pregnant women. If you fail to give your seat, other passengers might angrily tell you to do so.

If you are standing in a line, you should keep close to the person in front of you. If you leave too much space in between, people will think you are not part of the line, ignore you, and just walk ahead taking what was your position in the line.

3. Give Gifts

Russians probably spend more money on gifts than they spend for themselves! We use gifts to show gratitude, respect, or affection. If you are planning to stay with some friends in Russia, you should buy a small gift for everyone in the family.

It's particularly rude to arrive at a birthday party without a gift. A bottle of wine won't do the trick!

It's common to buy a small present (for example a box of chocolates) for your teacher at the end of the course, or other people you feel grateful to: a doctor who operated on you or a neighbor who had been watering your plants.

4. Don't Expect People to Be Polite on the Phone

Imagine that you met a gorgeous Russian girl and by stroke of luck, she gave you her phone number! You dial it but it's Katya's mother who picks up the phone...you ask politely if Katya is at home, and the reply is **нет**. Naturally, you are expecting her to ask if you'd like to leave a message, but all you get is an unpleasant silence that seems to last for ages...

You need to know that it isn't common in Russia to ask if you want to leave a message. You could come across a very polite person who would, but such people are rare. Conclusion: if you want to leave a message, you should say so.

Generally, Russians on the phone sound abrupt and even rude. Don't take it personally, it isn't because you are a foreigner, it's just the way they are!

5. Keep Your Feet on the Floor

It's considered very rude to put your feet on the table or generally up. This posture, which we perceive as relaxed in the USA, you should avoid when you are in Russia. You shouldn't rock on your chair either.

These five points will put you in good stead not only when you visit Russia but also with Russian friends, not to mention when you call your Katya and want to leave a message! These are very important, and not just as casual points; they are a very significant part of Russian culture reflected in people's behavior in public and when interacting with each other. Yet again, RussiaPod101.com is delivering a total and complete Russian experience for you.



LESSON NOTES

All About #14

Russian Superstitions

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

14

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Superstitions in Russia.

Probably every culture has its superstitions. These range from widely known sayings that have lasted through generations, to lesser-known folklore known within smaller communities and families. In this lesson, we're going to look at well-known Russian superstitions that will be very useful for you to know as part of your Russian learning.

Do you get worried if a black cat crosses your path or if your hotel room number is thirteen? The answer is probably not. Well, many Russians do! If you haven't visited Russia yet, you might be surprised to learn that superstition in Russia plays a much greater role than in the West. Even young, highly educated Russian people sometimes believe most weird things, and even if they don't believe them, they still pay lip service to them. Superstitions are so deeply imbedded in Russian culture that ignoring them can be considered bad manners, so if you don't want to commit a social blunder, you should be at the very least, aware of them. In this podcast, we'll give you some insight into this dark woolly part of Russian culture.

Here are well some well-known superstitions:

1. If a Russian friend invites you to their house, one of the worst things you can do is start whistling! It's believed that if someone whistles in a house, the host will lose all his money!
2. If you buy a knife as a gift for your Russian friend, ask them to give you a coin in exchange. A knife, which is associated with violence, shouldn't be "offered" but only "sold."
3. If you give a wallet as a gift, you should put a coin inside, this will attract other coins and so the new owner of the wallet will be financially lucky!
4. Russians take black cats very seriously. If a black cat crosses the road in front of your car, it isn't uncommon to turn around and take another route to your destination, or if it's impossible, stop and wait for another car to pass. In this case, of course, it's the driver of the other car that will have bad luck! However, cats can bring good luck too. If you move to a new house, bring a cat with you (if you don't have one, borrow one). It's believed lucky if a cat crosses the threshold of a new house before everyone else does.
5. If you go out and realize you forgot something at home, it's better not to go back there. However, if you have no choice, you should look in the mirror before leaving again, which will

stop you from having bad luck.

6. There are quite a few superstitions about mirrors. We consider breaking a mirror very bad, it means there will be a death in the household (others say seven years of bad luck). When someone dies in a family, all mirrors in the house are covered with sheets or curtains until after the funeral. There are several explanations of this custom, but the most common is that the soul of the deceased can get lost in the mirror and will stay in the house forever instead of departing.

7. There are a number of superstitions about dropping things. Like in some Western countries, they consider spilling salt bad luck, and you should throw some over your shoulder if it happens. If you drop a knife, you'll have a male guest, if you drop a spoon, a female guest. Surprisingly, if you break a dish or a glass, they believe it will bring happiness, and sometimes people break glasses deliberately at weddings!

8. Naturally, many superstitions have something to do with weddings. If you have a Russian fiancée, don't suggest getting married in May! It's believed that if you get married in May, you'll be unhappy for the rest of your life (all because both words, *май* ("May") and the Russian verb *маяться* ("to suffer," "to have problems") sound quite similar.

9. Like in some Western countries, the groom shouldn't see the bride's dress before the wedding.

10. It's also considered bad to get married in a leap year...and not only get married! All bad things that happen during a leap year Russians explain away by the fact that leap years are generally unlucky.

11. Students have their own superstitions, most of them about exams. For example, when a student is leaving for an exam, you should wish them *Ни пуха, ни пера* (literally, "neither fluff, nor feather"), and they must reply *К чёрту!* ("go to the devil!"). It's very important not to reply "thank you" instead of "go to the devil," or you are bound to fail. Students also sometimes ask their parents or friends to say bad things about them (*ругать*) while they are taking the exam. They believe it will bring luck in exams!

12. Generally, you should think twice before saying that something good will happen. Russians believe that being too optimistic about the future can make the luck go away. If you were thoughtless enough to utter something optimistic, you should at least make up for it by knocking on wood or pretending to spit three times over your left shoulder (you can say *тыфу-тыфу не сглазить* at the same time, this is bound to impress your Russian friends!).

13. And finally, my favorite superstition (some foreigners I know actually adopted it after their visit to Russia): if someone is going on a trip, just before they leave, everyone in the house should sit down for a while. Putting aside the belief that it's supposed to bring luck, all the preparations for a trip can be quite stressful. Sitting down for a moment helps everyone relax and it's a way to say good-bye to each other in a calmer, stress free environment.

Some of the superstitions here will be familiar to you and some perhaps new. Make a note of them, especially ones that may affect an upcoming visit to Russia where you'll be visiting people. They will not only appreciate your adherence to their way of thinking, but it's good to respect other people's customs and traditions. You'll learn all about Russia with RussianPod101.com.



LESSON NOTES

All About #15

All About Russia Quiz

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

15

GRAMMAR

The Focus of this Lesson is Testing Your Knowledge about Russia.

Russian Culture Quiz (based on All About lessons 8 - 14)

1. What did Peter the Great want Russian nobles to do?

- a. To have a shower every day
- b. To shave their beards off
- c. To speak French fluently

Answer: B

Peter the Great ruled at the beginning of the eighteenth century. Peter played a major role in bringing his country into the European State System. He reorganized his government on the latest Western models. He also insisted that noble people should wear European-style clothes and ***shave off their beards***, reforms, which most nobles disapproved of.

2. What did Khrushchev want to grow in Russia?

- a. Bananas
- b. Eggplants
- c. Corn

Answer: C

Throughout his years of leadership, Khrushchev attempted to carry out a number of reforms, not many of which were successful. For example, after a visit to the USA, Khrushchev insisted on the creating of massive plantations of ***corn*** in the USSR without taking into account the climatic differences between Russia and the southern states of the USA.

3. What film have Russians been fondly watching at New Year's Eve for more than thirty years?

- a. The Irony of Fate, or Enjoy Your Bath!
- b. Twelve Chairs

c. Brother

Answer: A

"The Irony of Fate, or Enjoy Your Bath!" (Ирония судьбы, или С лёгким паром!) is a comedy where after a group of friends celebrate New Year's Eve, one of them mistakenly ends up in a stranger's apartment in Leningrad, whereas he should have been in his own apartment in Moscow! After many incidents involving a jealous boyfriend, unexpected visitors, and lack of public transport seeing as it's New Year's Eve, he spends the night with a woman, talking and getting to know each other. They fall in love, split up, and get back together again.

The movie is funny and sad at the same time, and like many Soviet comedies, will give you a good insight of what life was like in the Soviet Union during the Brezhnev Era and especially the way Russians celebrated (and still celebrate) holidays. The comedy is also worth seeing for its beautiful soundtrack.

4. In a Russian Orthodox Church, female worshippers must cover...

- a. Their faces
- b. Their hair
- c. Their hands

Answer: B

In an Orthodox church, the service is always in Old Russian. There are no seats in Orthodox churches and one must stay standing. In the congregation, men must remove any headgear as their heads must be uncovered at all times. For women, they must **cover their hair** and wear long skirts, certainly not trousers.

5. In Russian cuisine, one of the most popular ingredients is...

- a. Cabbage
- b. Green beans
- c. Lettuce

Answer: A

Cabbage is part of many traditional Russian soups (like *shchi*, *borshch*) as well as main dishes. Pickled cabbage is also very popular.

6. Okroshka is...

- a. A cold soup
- b. A hot soup
- c. A salad

Answer: A

Okroshka is a ***cold vegetable soup*** made of raw vegetables, boiled potatoes and eggs, meat, and *kvass*. *Kvass* is a traditional Russian bread drink, a mildly alcoholic beverage made from fermented black or rye bread. They dice the ingredients and then mix them with *kvass* just before eating.

7. The eighth of March is...

- a. The day when Russians celebrate the end of the Second World War
- b. A new holiday introduced to replace a Soviet holiday
- c. The day when women receive lots of gifts

Answer: C

International Women's Day (Международный Женский День) is celebrated on ***March 8th***. Even though it's called "international," it isn't celebrated much outside Russia and other former Soviet Republics. It's the day when men need to remember to buy some flowers or a gift for their partner, but it's also very common to buy flowers or chocolates for female friends, colleagues, or teachers. If you send an e-card to your Russian female friends on that day, it'll be highly appreciated! Children usually make little gifts at school to offer their mothers on that day.

8. Russians celebrate Russian Christmas...

- a. In December
- b. In January
- c. In February

Answer: B

Christmas (Рождество) became an official public holiday again in 1992. You might not know that Russian Christmas is not celebrated on December 25, but two weeks later, on ***January 7***. This difference is due to the fact that the Russian Orthodox Church still follows the

Julian calendar while the Russian state had switched to the Gregorian calendar. Now Christmas in Russia is not as widely celebrated as New Year's. Many believers go to church on that day to attend the night service.

9. In Russia, if a man opens and holds the door to let his female companion in, it's considered:

- a. Good manners
- b. Sexist
- c. Stupid

Answer: A

Being chivalrous isn't considered "sexist" in Russia! If you are accompanied by a woman and don't open and hold the door for her to let her in, you are being rude. It's also considered polite to get out of the car and open the car door for your female companion. If a woman you know is carrying a heavy bag, you should offer to help her. If you ask a woman out, she'll normally expect you to pay the bill.

10. If you whistle in someone's house, according to a Russian superstition:

- a. The host will have a lot of luck.
- b. The host will lose all his money.
- c. The host will die.

Answer: B

If a Russian friend invites you to their house, one of the worst things you can do is start whistling! It's believed that if someone whistles in a house, the host ***will lose all his money!***



LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation #1

General Overview

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

1

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is a General Overview of Russian Pronunciation

Russian pronunciation isn't as difficult for an English speaker compared to, for example, French pronunciation. Many French sounds simply don't exist in English, which isn't the case for Russian. The set of Russian sounds is very similar to the set of Italian (and to a lesser degree, Spanish) sounds. That's why Italian speakers often have very good pronunciation in Russian and vice versa.

As far as Russian pronunciation is concerned, the main challenges are:

1. Some sounds don't exist in English, for example, the vowel -ы.
2. Some sounds are similar to English sounds but we pronounce them slightly different, for example, the English "-l" sounds softer than Russian -л.
3. Some sounds change depending on the word stress and the position of a letter in the word, for example, we pronounce -o almost like -a when not stressed.
4. There are clusters of consonants that you don't normally meet in English, for example, the word **встречать** ("to meet") begins with four consonants!
5. Words are generally longer than in English, and therefore, more difficult to pronounce.

Having outlined these points, we'll now put your mind at rest by explaining what makes Russian pronunciation easier than pronunciation in many other languages!

Speaking of Russian pronunciation is impossible without mentioning the Russian writing system. Many people hesitate whether to learn Russian because it uses a different (Cyrillic) alphabet. However, any person who has already started learning Russian will tell you that the alphabet is certainly NOT the most difficult thing as far as Russian is concerned. Each letter corresponds to just one sound, and if you know the thirty-three Russian letters and a few basic pronunciation rules, you'll know how to pronounce any word written in Russian. Not too many languages can boast that! There are hardly any exceptions. If you think about it, English is much more difficult in this aspect because you basically have to "memorize" how to

pronounce each word! For example, think of words "head" and "meat." They have the same vowel combination in them, but we do not pronounce them in the same way. This simply doesn't happen in Russian; everything stays the same.

Let's summarize here why Russian pronunciation is easy:

1. Each letter generally corresponds to only one sound. Look at the English words "cat" and "rice." They have the same letter -c in them, but in the first example, we pronounce it like [k] and in the second case, we pronounce it like [s]. In Russian, we always pronounce -c like [s].
2. There are no vowel combinations, like "-oo" in "book," or "-ea" in "lead." There is one letter for each sound, and this letter always symbolizes the sound.
3. No slight intonation differences change the meaning of the word, as in Mandarin, for example. There are no 'short' and 'long' vowel sounds as in English.

Let's have a closer look at Russian sounds. As we've already mentioned, there are thirty-three letters in the Russian alphabet, but only thirty-one correspond to actual sounds. The others are so-called **мягкий знак** and **твёрдый знак** ("soft sign" and "hard sign"). These two characters don't have a sound of their own but we use them to show how pronunciation of other sounds in the word should be modified.

Here's the Russian alphabet with Latin equivalents of letters and some examples in Russian. Please, note that some English sounds could be similar to Russian sounds, but still are not exactly the same, and some sounds simply don't exist in English, so the Latin equivalents just give you some idea of how to pronounce them, but not the exact pronunciation. Listen to the podcast for exact pronunciation of the sounds.

Russian Alphabet

Russian Letter	Pronunciation	Russian Example	"English"
А а	[a] in "father"	да	"yes"
Б б	[b]	быть	"to be"

В в	[v]	ваш	"your"
Г г	[g] in "good"	год	"a year"
Д д	[d]	дом	"a house"
Е е	[ye]	есть	"to eat"
Ё ё	[yo]	ёлка	"Christmas tree"
Ж ж	[zh] like the last consonant sound in "pleasure"	жить	"to live"
З з	[z]	зима	"winter"
И и	[ee]	или	"or"
Й ий	[y] in "boy"	мой	"my"
К к	[k]	кто	"who"
Л л	[l]	лето	"summer"
М м	[m]	мама	"mom"
Н н	[n]	нет	"no"
О о	[o]	он	"he"
П п	[p]	привет	"hi"
Р р	[r] rolled	ручка	"a pen"
С с	[s]	собака	"a dog"
Т т	[t]	телефон	"a telephone"
У у	[oo]	ухо	"an ear"
Ф ф	[f]	фильм	"a movie"

Х х	[h]	хороший	"good"
Ц ц	[ts]	цена	"a price"
Ч ч	[ch]	чай	"tea"
Ш ш	[sh]	шапка	"a hat"
Щ щ	Soft [sh]	щи	"cabbage soup"
ъ ъ	Hard sign	подъезд	"an entrance"
ы ы	hard -i that sounds a bit like [i] in milk	вы	"you"
ъ ъ	Soft sign	ель	"a fir tree"
Э э	[e] in "met"	это	"this"
Ю ю	[yu]	любить	"to love"
Я я	[ya]	яблоко	"an apple"

Do keep this at hand as you start out with your Russian, then always keep it close by, as it's an excellent reference tool. Using this in conjunction with RussianPod101 tools, you'll be on your way to speaking Russian in no time!



RussianPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation #2

Vowels

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

2

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Russian Vowels

Welcome to the lesson on Russian vowels. You will see that apart from few exceptions, the sounds are always constant. The real trick here is to try to isolate the sound given in the English example. So, when it's mentioned that a sound is like the [a] in the word "father," think of how the -a sounds in *this* word specifically as that's the key to understanding the sound. We pronounce the -a in the word "ball" different from the same letter in "father." Master this and you are well on the road to success!

There are ten vowels in Russian: six "ordinary" vowels and four "diphthongs."

Ordinary Vowels (-а, -у, -и, -о, -ы, and -э)

-а

We pronounce -a much like [a] in "father."

For Example:

1. Мама ("mom")
2. наш ("our")
3. пара ("pair")

-у

We pronounce -у like [oo] in "book" or [u] in "rude."

For Example:

1. Дуб ("oak")

-
- 2. шуба ("a fur coat")

-И

We pronounce -И like [ee] in "green."

For Example:

- 1. Или ("or")
- 2. лиса ("a fox").

-О

-о is special because we pronounce it differently depending whether it's stressed or not. When stressed, we pronounce the -о like the vowel sound in "bought."

For Example:

- 1. Дом ("house")
- 2. пол ("floor")

When not stressed, we pronounce the -о almost like [a], and in the Moscow region, it actually becomes [a].

For Example:

- 1. Молоко ("milk")
- 2. корова ("cow")

-Ы

-Ы is a difficult sound for most learners, as it exists neither in English nor in most European languages. It sounds a bit like [И] in "milk," but not exactly. It's similar to [и] but the sound is produced much deeper inside the throat and the tongue is curled up around its middle with the front down.

For Example:

1. Мы ("we")
2. Ты ("you")
3. рыба ("fish")

Don't give up if you can't produce it immediately! Remember that practice makes perfect! Here's an interesting fact: no words in Russian begin with -ы!

-Э

We pronounce -Э like [ea] in "head."

For Example:

1. Это ("this")
2. эра ("era")

This vowel is probably the least common of all Russian vowels as few words contain it.

Diphthong Vowels (-е, -ё, -ю, and -я)

We call them diphthongs because they actually represent two sounds and not one. For

example, -е is actually [йэ], -ё is [йо], -ю is [йу], and -я is [йа].

It's important to know that we do not pronounce these diphthongs the same at the beginning of the word and after a consonant.

- At the beginning of the word or after another vowel, you can hear the [й] part clearly.

For Example:

1. Ель ("a fir-tree")
2. ёж ("a hedgehog")
3. я ("I")

- After a consonant, they modify the consonant that precedes them (soften it), but you don't hear [й] anymore.

For Example:

1. Нет ("no")
2. мёд ("honey")
3. бюро ("office")

Let's take them one by one.

-е

We pronounce -е like [ye] in "yes" at the beginning of the word or after another vowel.

For Example:

1. Елена ("Elena")
2. его ("his")

3. есть ("to eat")
4. большое (the neuter form of "big")

It's pronounced [e] after a consonant and modifies the consonant.

For Example:

1. Хлеб ("bread") - [l] becomes soft
2. день ("day") - [d] becomes soft

When -e is not stressed, we pronounce it somewhere in between [e] and [и].

For Example:

1. Телефон ("telephone")
2. тетрадь ("notebook")

-Ё

When -Ё is at the beginning of the word, or after another vowel, we pronounce -Ё like [yo] in "yoke."

For Example:

1. Ёлка ("a Christmas tree")
2. ёж ("hedgehog")

After a consonant, it sounds like [o] and softens the consonant.

For Example:

1. Мёд ("honey")
2. лёд ("ice")
3. тётя ("aunt")

In Russian printed text, you will hardly ever see the two points above -e. It's common to use the -e sign for both -e and -ë, which isn't very convenient for learners!

-Я

-Я at the beginning of the word is like [ya] in "yak."

For Example:

1. Яблоко ("apple")
2. яд ("poison")

After a consonant, it sounds like [a] and softens the consonant.

For Example:

1. Мяч ("a ball")
2. пять ("five")

-Ю

-Ю is very much like [u] in "cute" at the beginning of the word.

For Example:

1. Юла ("a top," the revolving toy)

2. юмор ("humor")

After a consonant, it sounds like [y] and modifies the consonant.

For Example:

1. Тюльпан ("a tulip")
2. бюро ("an office")

And this summarizes our lesson of Russian vowels on RussianPod101.com. Do check out the other lessons to give you a complete and thorough understanding of Russian pronunciation.



RussianPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation #3

Russian Consonants

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

3

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Russian Consonants

In this lesson, we will look at the Russian consonants and how wonderfully consistent they are. Each letter has a specific sound regardless of its position in a word and it always sounds the same, with very few exceptions. Learn these and you are a very long way into mastering Russian pronunciation.

There are twenty-one consonants and two signs (the soft sign and the hard sign) in Russian.

Russian Consonants -**М**, -**Н**, -**В**, -**З**, -**Г**, -**С**, -**Ф**, -**Ч**, and -**Ж**

Let's begin with the sounds that have their exact equivalents in English. These are: -**М**, -**Н**, -**В**, -**З**, -**Г**, -**С**, -**Ф**, -**Ч**, and -**Ж**.

I. -**М**

We pronounce -**М** like [m] in "May."

For Example:

1. **Мой** ("my")
2. **мама** ("Mom")

II. -**Н**

We pronounce -**Н** like [n] in "no" (even though it looks like an -h!).

For Example:

1. **Наташа** ("Natasha")
2. **нет** ("no")

III. -**В**

We pronounce -**В** like [v] in "victory" (and unfortunately, it looks like a -b).

For Example:

1. Вера ("faith")
2. ванна ("a bath")

IV. -3

We pronounce -3 (which looks like the number three) like [z] in "zoo."

For Example:

1. Зебра ("a zebra")
2. звать ("to call")

V. -Г

We pronounce -Г like [g] in "go."

For Example:

1. Год ("year")
2. глаз ("eye")

VI. -С

We pronounce -С like [s] in "son."

For Example:

1. Сын ("son")
2. соль ("salt")

Note: It is never pronounced [k]!

VII. -Ф

We pronounce -Ф like [f] in "fun."

For Example:

1. Фонарь ("a street light")
2. фары ("headlights")

VIII. -Ч

-Ч, which looks like the number four on a digital clock, is pronounced like [ch] in "chair."

For Example:

1. Человек ("a person")
2. четыре ("four")

IX. -Ж

-Ж can't really be transcribed by an English letter, but the sound does exist in English. It's the [s] sound in words like "measure" and "pleasure." As there is no English symbol for this sound, we usually represent it as -zh.

For Example:

1. Живот ("a stomach")
2. жарко ("hot")

Russian Consonants -Б, -Д, -Т, -П, -К, -Р, -Л, -Х, -Ш, and -Щ

Let's now have a look at consonants that are similar to English consonants yet are a bit different. These are: -Б, -Д, -Т, -П, -К, -Р, -Л, -Х, -Ш, and -Щ.

-Б, -Д, -Т, -П, and -К are similar to English sounds. However, in English when you pronounce these consonants, you'll feel the air forced out of your mouth if you put your hand in front of your lips as you say them. In Russian, you need to be able to say these letters but hardly feel any breath on your hand so you're altogether saying them much more softly (like in French or Italian). Keeping this in mind, let's have a close look at these five consonants.

I. -Б

Б is very much like the English "-B" (except for the difference we've mentioned above).

For Example:

1. Большой ("big")
2. бар ("a bar")

II. -Д

-Д is like "-D."

For Example:

1. Дом ("a house")
2. вода ("water")

III. -Т

-Т is like "-T."

For Example:

1. Торт ("a cake")
2. тело ("body")

IV. -П

-П is like "-p."

For Example:

1. Папа ("dad")
2. пирог ("a pie")

V. -К

-К is like "-k."

For Example:

1. Кошка ("a cat")
2. компьютер ("a computer")

VI. -Р

-Р looks like English "-p" but sounds similar to English "-r," which can initially be confusing for learners. Russians roll their -r's the way Spanish and Italians do.

For Example:

1. Река ("a river")
2. рот ("a mouth")

VII. -Л

-Л is very similar to English "-L," but is not quite so soft. For example, compare the English word "look" and the Russian word лук ("onions"). You'll probably hear that Russian -л sounds 'harder.'

For Example:

1. Лошадь ("a horse")
2. луна ("the moon")

VIII. -Х

-Х sounds similar to an English "-h" but is a bit stronger (more air is expelled). It's also a little guttural similar to the [ch] spoken by a Scottish person saying the word, "Loch."

For Example:

1. Хлеб ("bread")
2. муха ("a fly")

IX. -Ш and -Щ

It's often difficult to hear the difference between -ш and -щ for a non-native Russian speaker. They both sound like the English [sh] in "she," however, -ш sounds a bit harder than [sh] and -щ is softer.

Listen and compare:

1. Ша - ща
2. Шу - щу
3. Ше - ще

For Example:

1. Шапка ("a hat")
2. шея ("a neck")
3. щи ("cabbage soup")
4. щётка ("a brush")

Russian Consonant Ц

This letter is pronounced [ts] and the sound doesn't really exist in English, except for in "pizza" (another sound that Russian shares with Italian!). So think of "pizza," and practice Russian -Ц.

For Example:

1. Царь ("a tsar")
2. месяц ("a month")
3. цена ("price")

Russian Consonant -Й

In modern Russian, -й is considered to be a consonant, though there has always been some ambiguity about it. It's actually used to create diphthongs in Russian (like -ой and -ай), and it sounds like [y] in "boy" or "clay."

For Example:

1. Мой ("my")
2. чай ("tea")
3. клей ("glue")

-Ь (soft sign) and -Ѣ (hard sign)

Technically speaking, these are neither vowels nor consonants, they are just signs that we use to show when we modify the pronunciation of other letters.

The soft sign (-ь) shows that the consonant that precedes it must be softened. Listen carefully to these pairs of words and try to repeat them.

1. ел - ель
2. мат - мать
3. смешит - смешить
4. ген - тень
5. сер - серь

We use the hard sign (-ъ) to separate a consonant and a vowel that creates a "pause" between them. For example, the word въехать without -ъ we would pronounce [вехать]. Подъезд would become подезд. The hard sign isn't very common in Russian.

That rounds up all of the Russian consonants. As you can see, they aren't that scary after all. The key here is not just trying to memorize it as a long list. Try reading Russian words too. These different methods of learning will help instill recognition and sound familiarity. Stay with RussianPod101.com for all your Russian learning needs.



LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation #4

Basic Russian Pronunciation Rules

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

4

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Basic Pronunciation Rules in Russian.

Now that we have introduced all the Russian sounds to you, we'll go on to give you some basic rules about Russian pronunciation.

1. Word Stress

Word stress is extremely important, exactly like in English. In Russian, we don't say all the syllables of the word with the same strength, but accentuate one syllable. We pronounce this syllable much louder than we do the others. We usually pronounce the stressed vowel clearer and longer than we do the others. If you don't stress the right syllable, it can lead to confusion and native speakers will have difficulty understanding you. Unfortunately, there are no rules to help you stress a word correctly. It's just something you have to learn for each word, but it's something you pick up along the way.

Sometimes, the word stress can totally change the meaning of the word.

For Example:

1. Замок with the stress on the first syllable is "a castle," and замок with the stress on the last syllable is "a lock."

2. Changing Vowels

We pronounce some Russian vowels differently when not stressed. If -o isn't stressed, we pronounce it almost like [a]. The word молоко is a good example. The stress is on the last -o, so we actually say [malako].

For Example:

1. Собака ("a dog") - the first -o is not stressed, so we say [sabaka].

2. Дорога ("a road") - the stress is on the second syllable, so we pronounce the word [daroga].

Another example is -е. When not stressed, we pronounce it somewhere between [e] and [и]. For example, when we hear the word **телефон**, we can't tell if we pronounce the first -е as [e] or [и].

For Example:

1. Деревня ("a village") - the first syllable isn't stressed, so we pronounce it between [e] and [и]. The second syllable we stress, so we pronounce the vowel [e].
2. Зелёный ("green") - the stress is on -ё, so we pronounce the first -е between [e] and [и].

3. Soft Consonants

Some vowels in Russian change the consonant that precedes them. These vowels are -е, -ё, -и, -ю, and -я. The consonants that precede these vowels are "softened." Listen carefully to these syllables to hear how the consonant changes.

1. /бэ/ - /бё/
2. /тօ/ - /тё/
3. /лы/ - /ли/
4. /լу/ - /լю/
5. /մա/ - /մյա/

Now listen to the words and try to pronounce them.

1. Тётя ("aunt")

2. **дядя** ("uncle")
3. **люди** ("people")
4. **мясо** ("meat")
5. **петь** ("to sing")
6. **липа** ("a lime tree")
7. **бюро** ("an office")

4. Voiced and Unvoiced Consonants

We divide Russian consonants into two groups: voiced and unvoiced. As their name shows, for voiced consonants you use your voice, while for the others you don't.

The voiced consonants are: -б, -в, -г, -д, -ж, -з, -р, -л, -м, and -н.

The unvoiced consonants are: -к, -п, -с, -т, -ф, -х, -ц, -ч, -ш, and -щ.

Twelve of voiced and unvoiced consonants form pairs (the position of your lips and your tongue is the same for both sounds; the only difference is that you use voice for voiced consonants). Listen and compare.

1. -б - -п
2. -в - -ф
3. -г - -к
4. -д - -т
5. -ж - -ш
6. -з - -с

We pronounce the voiced consonants from the list (-б, -в, -г, -д, -ж, -з) differently at the end of a word and before unvoiced consonants. Actually, they become their unvoiced pairs! Let's

take the word **снег** ("snow") as an example. It ends in -г, which is voiced. So it isn't pronounced [g], but [k].

Once again, when -б, -в, -г, -д, -ж, and -з are at the end of the word:

1. [б] becomes [п]
2. [в] becomes [ф]
3. [г] becomes [к]
4. [д] becomes [т]
5. [ж] becomes [ш]
6. [з] becomes [ч]

For Example:

1. Готов [gatof]
2. лоб [lop]
3. бег [bek]
4. год [got]
5. падеж [padesh]
6. глаз [glas]

When one of these six voiced consonants precedes an unvoiced consonant, the same thing happens, even if the consonants are not part of the same word! For example, we pronounce **В понедельник** ("on Monday") as [fpanedel'nik] and NOT [vpanedel'nik], because a voiced consonant (-в) precedes an unvoiced consonant (-п).

5. Exceptions

Luckily, there are very few exceptions as far as Russian pronunciation is concerned, and if you know the rules, you'll be able to pronounce almost every word in Russian correctly when you see it in writing! The few exceptions we'll tell you about just confirm the rule.

1. In some words that contain -его or -ого, we pronounce-г as [в].

For Example:

Russian	"English"	Pronunciation
Его	"his"	[yev]
сегодня	"today"	[sevodnya]
какого	"which" in the genitive case	[kakov]

2. Some words contain consonants that are not pronounced. Usually these are words with lots of consonants together.

For Example:

Russian	"English"	Pronunciation
Здравствуйте	"hello"	[zdrastvuyte] the first в isn't pronounced
Солнце	"the sun"	[sontse] the л isn't pronounced

These five tips about Russian pronunciation, along with the previous lessons about Russian sounds, really give you everything you need on the road to perfect Russian pronunciation. At RussianPod101.com we understand what it takes to learn a different language and take a varied approach so not only do you learn, you have fun along the way and pick up those all-important cultural tips.



LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation #5

Russian Pronunciation Quiz

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

5

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Testing How Much You Know about Russian Pronunciation.

This quiz will help you review what you have learned about Russian pronunciation and see how much you can remember!

1. The word stress in Russian is...

- a. Always on the last syllable
- b. Always on the syllable before the last
- c. Changes depending on the word

Answer: C

Unfortunately, there are no rules to help you stress a word correctly. It's just something you have to learn for each word but it's something you pick up along the way. Sometimes, the word stress can totally change the meaning of the word so it's imperative to get it right.

2. How many vowels are there in Russian?

- a. Six
- b. Ten
- c. Twelve

Answer: B

There are ten vowels in Russian: six "ordinary" vowels and four diphthongs.

3. The letter that looks like the English "-P" is pronounced...

- a. Like English "-p" but softer
- b. Like English "-r" but you roll it
- c. Like English "-l" but harder

Answer: B

Russians roll their -r's the way Spanish and Italians do.

4. The letter that looks like a mirror reflection of -R is pronounced...

- a. [r]
- b. [p]
- c. [ya]

Answer: C

-Я at the beginning of the word is like [ya] in "yak."

5. The letter that looks like English "-c" is pronounced...

- a. [s]
- b. [k]
- c. sometimes [s] and sometimes [k]

Answer: A

We pronounce -C like [s] in "son." We never pronounced it as [k]!

6. The vowel -o is always pronounced the same in Russian.

- a. True
- b. False

Answer: False

-О is special because we pronounce it differently depending whether it's stressed or not. When stressed, we pronounce the -О like the vowel sound in "bought."

For Example:

1. Ноль ("zero")

2. **дочь** ("daughter")

When not stressed, we pronounce the -O almost like [a] and in Moscow region it actually becomes -a.

For Example:

1. **Ворона** ("crow")
2. **лосось** ("salmon")

7. In printed texts in Russian, vowels -ë and -e look exactly the same.

- a. True
- b. False

Answer: True

In Russian printed text, you will hardly ever see the two points above -e. It's common to use the -e sign for both -e and -ë..., which isn't very convenient for learners!

8. At the end of the word, Russian consonant -б...

- a. Is pronounced [b]
- b. Is pronounced [p]
- c. Is not pronounced

Answer: B

The voiced consonants from the list (-б, -в, -г, -д, -ж, -з) are pronounced differently at the end of a word. Actually, they become their unvoiced pairs! The unvoiced pair of Russian -б is -п.

For Example:

1. We pronounce **зуб** ("a tooth") as [zup].

9. The soft sign...

- a. Modifies the consonant before it
- b. Modifies the consonant after it
- c. Doesn't make any difference in pronunciation

Answer: A

The soft sign (-b) shows that the consonant that precedes it must be softened.

10. The letter -г...

- a. Is always pronounced [г]
- b. Is sometimes pronounced [в]
- c. Is sometimes pronounced [ж]

Answer: B

In words that contain -его or -ого, we often pronounce -г as [в].

For Example:

Russian	"English"	Pronunciation
Его	"his"	[yev]
сегодня	"today"	[sevodnya]
какого	"which" in the genitive case	[kakov]



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #1

Where Did You Learn to Speak Russian Like That?

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar

1

RUSSIAN

1. DENIS: Алло?
2. JOHN: Привет! Это Джон.
3. DENIS: Привет, Джон!
4. JOHN: Я завтра лечу в Москву.
5. DENIS: Правда? Здорово! Удачного полёта!
6. JOHN: Спасибо.
7. DENIS: Ну, скоро увидимся!
8. JOHN: Пока!

ROMANIZATION

1. DENIS: Alo?
2. JOHN: Privet! Eto Jon.
3. DENIS: Privet, Jon!
4. JOHN: Ya zavtra lechu v Moskvu.
5. DENIS: Pravda? Zdorovo! Udachnogo polyota!
6. JOHN: Spasibo.

CONT'D OVER

7. DENIS: Nu, skoro uvidimsya!

8. JOHN: Poka!

ENGLISH

1. DENIS: Hello?

2. JOHN: Hi! This is John.

3. DENIS: Hi John!

4. JOHN: I'm flying to Russia tomorrow.

5. DENIS: Really? That's great! Have a nice flight!

6. JOHN: Thank you.

7. DENIS: Well, see you soon!

8. JOHN: Bye!

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
удачного	udachnogo	successful, lucky	adjective
Ну	nu	well	interjection
Я	ya	I (I'm)	pronoun
в (Москву)	v (Moskvu)	to (Moscow)	phrase

здраво	zdrovo	great, cool	adverb
полёта	polyota	flight	noun
это	eto	this is, that is, it's	pronoun
завтра	zavtra	tomorrow	adverb
привет	privet	hi	interjection
лечу	lechu	flying (first person)	verb
Алло?	Alo?	Hello? (on the phone)	greeting
правда	pravda	really; truth	interjection
Спасибо	spasibo	thank you	noun/interjection
скоро	skoro	soon	adverb
увидимся	uvidimsya	see you	verb/interjection
Пока	poka	bye	interjection

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Полет прошел удачно? <i>Polyet proshyel udachno?</i> "Did the flight go well?"	Удачного дня! <i>Udachnogo dnya!</i> "Have a good day!"
Ну, куда пойдём? <i>Nu, kuda poydyom?</i> "Well, where should we go?"	Я не заболел, я просто устал. <i>Ya nye zabolyel, ya prosto ustal.</i> "I'm not sick, I'm just tired."
Я учу русский. <i>Ya uchu russkiy.</i> "I study Russian."	Я Оксана. <i>Ya Oksana.</i> "I'm Oksana."

<p>Он летит в Москву или в Киев? <i>On lyetit v Moskву ili v Kiyev?</i> "Is he going to Moscow or Kiev?"</p>	<p>Пойдем в кафе! <i>Paydyem v kafye!</i> "Let's go to a café!"</p>
<p>Здорово, что ты в Москве! <i>Zdorovo, chto ty v Moskvye!</i> "It's great that you are in Moscow!"</p>	<p>Полет прошел удачно? <i>Polyet proshyel udachno?</i> "Did the flight go well?"</p>
<p>Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eto ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"</p>	<p>Это наши друзья. <i>Eto nashi druz'ya.</i> "These are our friends."</p>
<p>Что ты делаешь завтра? <i>Chto ty dyelayesh' zavtra?</i> "What are you doing tomorrow?"</p>	<p>Завтра будет холодно. <i>Zavtra budyet holodno.</i> "Tomorrow will be cold."</p>
<p>Я завтра не работаю. <i>Ya zavtra nye rabotayu.</i> "I'm not working tomorrow."</p>	<p>Передавай привет Наташе. <i>Pere davai privet Natashe.</i> "Say hi to Natasha."</p>
<p>Он летит в Москву или в Киев? <i>On lyetit v Moskву ili v Kiyev?</i> "Is he going to Moscow or Kiev?"</p>	<p>Алло? Кто это? <i>Allo? Kto eto?</i> "Hello? Who is this?"</p>
<p>Это правда ты? <i>Eto pravda ty?</i> "Is it really you?"</p>	<p>Я не виноват, правда! <i>Ya nye vinovat, pravda!</i> "It's not my fault, it's true! (Believe me!)"</p>
<p>Это правда? <i>Eto pravda?</i> "Is this (it) true?"</p>	<p>Спасибо за всё! <i>Spasibo za vsyo!</i> "Thank you for everything!"</p>

<p>Нужно покупать подарки, потому что скоро Рождество. <i>Nuzhno pokupat' podarki, potomu chto skoro Rozhdestvo.</i></p> <p>"We need to buy presents because Christmas is coming soon."</p>	<p>Очень скоро. <i>Ochen' skoro.</i></p> <p>"Very soon."</p>
<p>Он должен скоро прийти. <i>On dolzhen skoro priйти.</i></p> <p>"He should come soon."</p>	<p>Скоро стемнеет. <i>Skoro stemneyet.</i></p> <p>"It will get dark soon."</p>
<p>Мы очень скоро увидимся. <i>My ochyen' skoro uvidimsya.</i></p> <p>"We'll see each other very soon."</p>	<p>Когда мы увидимся? <i>Kogda my uvidimsya?</i></p> <p>"When will we see each other (again)?"</p>

Спасибо, до свидания!

Spasibo, do svidaniya!

"Thank you, good bye!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the conjugation of Russian verbs.

Privet! Eto Jon.

"Hi! This is John."

Notes on the conjugation of Russian verbs:

Conjugation refers to changes that Russian verbs undergo depending on number (singular or plural) and person (first, second, and third).

Pronouns according to person and number

Singular	Plural

First Person	Я Ya	"I"	Мы My	"we"
Second Person	Ты / Вы	"you" -		
Person	Ty / Vy	informal/formal	Вы Vy	"you"
Third Person	Он, Она, Оно On, Ona, Ono	"he," "she," "it"	Они Oni	"they"

Now let's take a look at the verbs and their conjugation according to person and number:

"Fly, flying"

	Singular		Plural	
First Person	лечу	<i>lechu</i>	летим	<i>letim</i>
Second Person	летишь / летите	<i>letish/letite</i>	летите	<i>letite</i>
Third Person	летит	<i>letit</i>	летят	<i>letyat</i>

"Go, going"

	Singular		Plural	
First Person	иду	<i>idu</i>	идём	<i>idyom</i>
Second Person	идёшь / идёте	<i>idyosh/idyote</i>	идёте	<i>idyote</i>
Third Person	идёт	<i>idyot</i>	идут	<i>idut</i>

These charts show the basic changes in Russian verb endings depending on person and number. Later, we will explain the system and the rules according to which the changes are

made, but for now just take it as a general introduction.

The thing worth remembering is that unlike in English, present and present progressive in Russian have no grammatical difference. For example, "go" in English represents present simple, and "going," present progressive. But in Russian, both these tenses are expressed in the same form:

1. "I go"

Я иду

Ya idu

2. "I am going"

Я иду

Ya idu

As in English, present progressive in Russian can indicate future if we add a future tense indicator such as "tomorrow" or "next year:"

1. "I'm flying to Moscow" (now)

Я лечу в Москву

Ya lechu v Moskvu

2. "Tomorrow, I'm flying to Moscow" (future)

Завтра я лечу в Москву

Zavtra ya lechu v Moskvu

In a word, present simple and present progressive in Russian only differ according to person and number and are identical grammatically. They can indicate future if used together with the words that indicate future, such as "tomorrow," "in an hour," "in three years," and so on.

Now let's take a brief look at Russian genders.

Russian makes use of three genders according to which nouns and adjectives undergo changes: masculine, feminine, and neuter. Today, we'll talk only about nouns.

You can usually determine the gender of a noun by its **ending**. Here are some basic rules, though exceptions exist:

Masculine: ending in a **consonant** (телефон, Нью-Йорк)

Feminine: ending in vowels **а** or **я** (**вода**, Австралия)

Neuter: ending in vowels **о** or **е** (**море**, Сан-Франциско)

When you talk about traveling to a place, you put your nouns into accusative case. If you are "going to Moscow," "Moscow" is in the accusative case, one of the six cases the Russian language has (the accusative designates the object of an action).

Look at how the following place names change according to the rules of the accusative case:

Gender	Change	Russian	Romanization	"English"
Masculine	NO CHANGE	Я лечу в Киев	<i>Ya lechu v Kiev</i>	"I'm flying to Kiev."
Feminine	Ending in vowels ю or у (Москву , Австралию)	Я лечу в Канаду	<i>Ya lechu v Kanadu</i>	"I'm flying to Canada."
Neuter	NO CHANGE	Я лечу в Мехико	<i>Ya lechu v Mehico</i>	"I'm flying to Mexico."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #2

How to Make a First Impression So It Lasts a Lifetime!

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar

2

RUSSIAN

1. JOHN: Разрешите...
 2. ELENA: Да, пожалуйста, садитесь.
 3. JOHN: Спасибо. Я – Джон.
 4. ELENA: А я- Елена.
 5. JOHN: Как-как? Повторите, пожалуйста.
 6. ELENA: Елена. Можно просто Лена.
 7. JOHN: Очень приятно, Лена!
 8. ELENA: Взаимно.

ROMANIZATION

1. JOHN: Razreshite...
 2. ELENA: Da, pozhalusta, sadites'.
 3. JOHN: Spasibo. Ya – Jon.
 4. ELENA: A ya- Yelena.
 5. JOHN: Kak-kak? Povtorite, pozhalusta..
 6. ELENA: Yelena. Mozhno prosto Lena.

CONT'D OVER

7. JOHN: Ochen' priyatno, Lena!

8. ELENA: Vzaimno.

ENGLISH

1. JOHN: Excuse me...

2. ELENA: Yes, please, sit down.

3. JOHN: Thank you. I'm John.

4. ELENA: And I'm Elena.

5. JOHN: Excuse me? Could you repeat, please?

6. ELENA: Elena. You can call me Lena.

7. JOHN: Nice to meet you, Lena!

8. ELENA: Likewise.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
можнo	mozhno	possible; can, may, allowed to	adverb; verb
очень	ochen'	very	adverb

садитесь	sadityes'	sit, sit down (command)	verb
Повторите	povtorite	repeat	verb (imperative)
просто	prosto	simply, just	adverb
пожалуйста	pozhaluysta	please; you are welcome	interjection
Спасибо	Spasibo	thank you	phrase
да	da	yes	expression
я	ya	I (I'm)	pronoun
разрешите	razreshite	allow, let	interjection (polite imperative)
как	kak	how	pronoun
приятно	priyatno	nice, pleasant	adverb
взаимно	vzaimno	likewise, mutually	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

В Москве можно купить кимчи? <i>V Moskve mozhno kupit' kimchi?</i> "Is it possible to buy kimchi in Moscow?"	Александр, можно просто Саша. <i>Alyeksandr, mozhno prosto Sasha.</i> "My name's Alexander, you can call me Sasha."
Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i> "Is it okay to smoke here?"	Где можно приобрести эту картину? <i>Gdye mozhno priobryesti etu kartinu?</i> "Where can I (is it possible to) purchase this painting?"
Можно с Вами сфотографироваться? <i>Mozhno s Vami sfotografirovat'sya?</i> "May I take a picture with you?"	Можно Вам позвонить? <i>Mozhno Vam pozvonit'?</i> "May I call you?"

<p>Можно взять этот стул? <i>Mozhno vzyat' etot stul?</i></p> <p>"May I take this chair?"</p>	<p>Ему уже 18, можно пить алкоголь. <i>Yemu uzhye 18, mozhno pit' alkogol'.</i></p> <p>"He's already eighteen; he can drink alcohol."</p>
<p>Можно войти? <i>Mozhno voyti?</i></p> <p>"May I come in?"</p>	<p>Можно я здесь сяду? <i>Mozhno ya zdyes' syadu?</i></p> <p>"May I sit here?"</p>
<p>Где можно купить сувениры? <i>Gdye mozhno kupit' suvyeniry?</i></p> <p>"Where can I buy souvenirs?"</p>	<p>Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i></p> <p>"Can I smoke here?"</p>
<p>Можно вам позвонить вечером? <i>Mozhno vam pozvonit' vyechyerom?</i></p> <p>"May I call you tonight?"</p>	<p>У меня очень тяжёлая сумка. <i>U myenya ochyen' tyazhyolaya sumka.</i></p> <p>"I have a very heavy bag."</p>
<p>Погода сегодня не очень хорошая. <i>Pogoda segodnya ne ochen' khoroshaya.</i></p> <p>"The weather is not very good today."</p>	<p>Садитесь рядом со мной. <i>Sadityes' ryadom so mnoy.</i></p> <p>"Sit down next to me."</p>
<p>Садись за мной. <i>Sadis' za mnoy.</i></p> <p>"Sit behind me."</p>	<p>Не садитесь, здесь мокро. <i>Nye sadites', zdyes' mokro.</i></p> <p>"Don't sit down: it's wet here."</p>
<p>Садитесь на моё место. <i>Sadityes' na moyo myesto.</i></p> <p>"Take my seat."</p>	<p>Повторите, пожалуйста. <i>Povtorye, pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>"Repeat please."</p>
<p>Повторите это слово, пожалуйста. <i>Povtorye eto slovo, pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>"Repeat this word, please."</p>	<p>Повторите, пожалуйста, ваше имя. <i>Povtorye, pozhaluysta, vashye imya.</i></p> <p>"Repeat your name, please."</p>

<p>Концерт был просто восхитительным! <i>Kontsyert byl prosto voshitityel'nym!</i> "The concert was just delightful!"</p>	<p>Я не заболел, я просто устал. <i>Ya nye zabolyel, ya prosto ustal.</i> "I'm not sick, I'm just tired."</p>
<p>Посмотрите в камеру, пожалуйста. <i>Posmotrite v kameru, pozhaluysta.</i> "Look at the camera, please."</p>	<p>Быстрее, пожалуйста. <i>Bystreye, pozhaluysta.</i> "Faster (hurry up), please."</p>
<p>- Спасибо. - Пожалуйста. <i>- Spasibo. - Pozhaluysta.</i> -"Thank you." -"You are welcome."</p>	<p>Ваш билет, пожалуйста. <i>Vash bilet, pozhaluysta.</i> "Your ticket, please." (formal)</p>
<p>Спасибо за гостеприимство. <i>Spasibo za gostyepriimstvo.</i> "Thanks for your hospitality."</p>	<p>Большое спасибо! <i>Bol'shoye spasibo!</i> "Thank you very much!"</p>
<p>Да, это мой паспорт. <i>Da, eto moy pasport.</i> "Yes, it's my passport."</p>	<p>Я не заболел, я просто устал. <i>Ya nye zabolyel, ya prosto ustal.</i> "I'm not sick, I'm just tired."</p>
<p>Я учу русский. <i>Ya uchu russkiy.</i> "I study Russian."</p>	<p>Я Оксана. <i>Ya Oksana.</i> "I'm Oksana."</p>
<p>Разрешите позвонить с вашего телефона. <i>Razryeshitye pozvonit' s vashego tyelyefona.</i> "Let me use your phone to make a call (please)."</p>	<p>Разрешите пройти (пожалуйста). <i>Razryeshitye proyti (pozhaluysta).</i> "Let me pass through (please)."</p>
<p>Как вас зовут? <i>Kak vas zovut?</i> "What's your name?"</p>	<p>Очень приятно вас снова видеть. <i>Ochyen' priyatno vas snova vidyet'.</i> "It's a pleasure to see you again."</p>

Так приятно отдыхать в парке!

Tak priyatno otdyhat' v parkye!

"It's so nice to rest in the park!"

Мне не приятно смотреть на это.

Mnye nye priyatno smotryet' na eto.

"I can't stand watching (looking at) this."

Приятно познакомиться. - Взаимно.

Priyatno poznakomit'sya. - Vzaimno.

"Nice to meet you." -"Likewise."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Formal and Informal Forms of Russian Verbs.

Да, пожалуйста, садитесь.

"Yes, please, sit down."

Today, we'll learn formal and informal forms of the imperative verbs. Imperative verbs are not always "bossy" in Russian, if you add polite endings to them and say "please."

Let's take three verbs from our dialogue and three new words:

1. разрешите

"allow me"

2. садитесь

"sit down"

3. повторите "repeat"

4. посмотрите

"take a look"

5. попробуйте

"have a try"

6. **отойдите**
"move/go (away)"

All these imperative verbs have **те** in the end (with the only exception **садитесь**, which is a reflexive verb. It also has the polite part **те** in it; just put before the reflexive part **ся**, "self").

The **те** ending in Russian imperative verbs indicates either plural number (same as if you are referring to several people), or a polite form. In Russian, if you want to be polite, you speak to a person in the plural forms of all verbs and nouns, and use the pronoun **Вы** ("you"), which also indicates either plural or a polite "you."

If we drop the **те** ending, we'll get the same verbs with the same meanings, but in singular or informal forms:

1. **разрешите**
"allow me"
2. **садись**
"sit down"
3. **повтори** "repeat"
4. **посмотри**
"take a look"
5. **попробуй**
"have a try"
6. **отойди**
"move/go (away)"

It's totally okay to drop **те** while talking to friends, but it would still be good to use "please" so you don't seem rude:

1. **повтори, пожалуйста**
"Say it again, please."

2. отойди, пожалуйста
"Move a bit, please."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #3

Do People in Russia Understand Where You Are Coming From?

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar

3

RUSSIAN

1. JOHN: Вы русская?
 2. ELENA: Нет, я украинка. А Вы?
 3. JOHN: Я американец. Вы из Киева?
 4. ELENA: Да, я из Киева. А Вы из какого штата?
 5. JOHN: Я из Мичигана.

ROMANIZATION

1. JOHN: Vy ruskaya?
 2. ELENA: Net, ya ukrainka. A vy?
 3. JOHN: Ya amerikanets. Vy iz Kieva?
 4. ELENA: Da, ya iz Kieva. A vy iz kakogo shtata?
 5. JOHN: Ya iz Michigana.

ENGLISH

1. JOHN: Are you Russian?
 2. ELENA: No, I'm Ukrainian. What about you?

CONT'D OVER

3. JOHN: I'm American. Are you from Kiev?
4. ELENA: Yes, I'm from Kiev. And what state are you from?
5. JOHN: I'm from Michigan.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
штат	shtat	state	noun	
я	Ya	I, me	personal pronoun	
американец	amerikanets	American (nationality, masculine)	noun	masculine
какой	kakoi	what, what kind, which	pronoun	
нет	net	no	expression	
украинка	ukrainka	Ukrainian (nationality, feminine)	noun	
русская	russkaya	Russian (nationality, feminine)	noun, adjective	feminine
А	A	and, but	conjunction	
Вы	vy	you	pronoun (1. plural/2. polite)	
Из	iz, s	from	preposition	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Аляска – самый большой штат в Америке.</p> <p><i>Alyaska – samyy bol'shoy shtat v Amerike.</i></p> <p>"Alaska is the biggest state in America."</p>	<p>Я не была в Штатах.</p> <p><i>Ya nye byla v Shtatah.</i></p> <p>"I haven't been to the States."</p>
<p>Я из штата Орегон.</p> <p><i>Ya iz shtata Oryegon.</i></p> <p>"I'm from Oregon state."</p>	<p>Я украинка, а он американец.</p> <p><i>Ya ukrainka, a on amyerikanyets.</i></p> <p>"I'm Ukrainian, and he's American."</p>
<p>Я из Денвера, а Вы?</p> <p><i>Ya iz Dyenvyera, a Vy?</i></p> <p>"I'm from Denver, and you?"</p>	<p>Я занимаюсь.</p> <p><i>Ya zanimayus'.</i></p> <p>"I'm occupied."</p>
<p>Я украинка, а он американец.</p> <p><i>Ya ukrainka, a on amyerikanyets.</i></p> <p>"I'm Ukrainian, and he's American."</p>	<p>Вы американец?</p> <p><i>Vy amyerikanyets?</i></p> <p>"Are you an American?" (formal, masculine)</p>
<p>Вы из какой страны?</p> <p><i>Vy iz kakoy strany?</i></p> <p>"What country are you from?"</p>	<p>Какую музыку Вы слушаете?</p> <p><i>Kakuyu muzyku Vy slushayetye?</i></p> <p>"What kind of music do you listen to?"</p>
<p>Какая это улица?</p> <p><i>Kakaya eto ulitsa?</i></p> <p>"What street is this?"</p>	<p>Нет, спасибо.</p> <p><i>Net, spasibo.</i></p> <p>"No, thank you."</p>
<p>Нет, я не устал.</p> <p><i>Net, ya ne ustal.</i></p> <p>"No, I'm not tired."</p>	<p>Я украинка, а он американец.</p> <p><i>Ya ukrainka, a on amyerikanyets.</i></p> <p>"I'm Ukrainian, and he's American."</p>
<p>Она не русская, она англичанка.</p> <p><i>Ona nye russkaya, ona anglichanka.</i></p> <p>"She isn't Russian, she's English."</p>	<p>Я пришла, а его не было дома.</p> <p><i>Ya prishla, a yego nye bylo doma.</i></p> <p>"I came, but he wasn't home."</p>

<p>А ты? <i>A ty?</i> "And you?"</p>	<p>Вы откуда? <i>Vy otkuda?</i> "Where are you from?"</p>
<p>Вы из России? <i>Vy iz Rossii?</i> "Are you from Russia?"</p>	<p>Вы студент? <i>Vy student?</i> "Are you a student?"</p>
<p>Вы устали? <i>Vy ustali?</i> "Are you tired?"</p>	<p>Я из Украины. <i>Ya iz Ukrayiny.</i> "I'm from Ukraine."</p>
<p>Из какого Вы города? <i>Iz kakogo Vy goroda?</i> "What city are you from?"</p>	<p>Вы из какой страны? <i>Vy iz kakoy strany?</i> "What country are you from?"</p>
<p>Мы едем из Санкт-Петербурга в Москву. <i>My yedyem iz Sankt-Pyetyerburga v Moskvu.</i> "We are going from Saint Petersburg to Moscow."</p>	<p>Вы из Америки? <i>Vy iz Amyeriki?</i> "Are you from America?" (formal)</p>
<p>Он из Киева. <i>On iz Kiyeva.</i> "He is from Kiev."</p>	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the question "Where Did You Come From?"

Я американец. Вы из Киева?
 "I'm American. Are you from Kiev?"

Forming a Question

If your question doesn't have a question word in it (what, where, when, who, etc.) and only requires the answer "**yes**" or "**no**," its structure is not any different from a simple declarative sentence:

1. Он Русский.

On russkij.

"He's Russian."

2. Он Русский?

On russkij?

"Is he Russian?"

The only difference is in the intonation, so be sure to make your question sound like a question; otherwise, it will just be a statement.

Using the Word "from" - из

If you are talking about places or their names in the context of "I'm from...," you should put them into genitive case. Here's a short explanation of how to do that.

In Gengo Lesson 1, we talked about how to determine a noun's gender by its ending (see Lesson 1, PDF). Now, let's take a look at how to form the genitive case when we know the genders of the nouns.

Forming the Genitive Case

Masculine Nouns	Feminine Nouns	Neuter Nouns
If the noun ends in a consonant, add а	Replace а with и or ы Replace я with и	Don't change the endings in the personal names. Replace е with я in places

You can go an easier way and just remember the changes through examples. Here they are.

Masculine Nouns	Feminine Nouns	Neuter Nouns
-----------------	----------------	--------------

Это...	Я из...	Это...	Я из...	Это...	Я из...
	Нью-				
Нью-Йорк	Йорка	Калифорн	Калифорн	Колорадо	Колорадо
Бостон	Бостона	ия Аляска	ии Аляски	Огайо	Огайо
Лос-	Лос-	Бразилия	Бразилии	Рио-де-	Рио-де-
Анжелес	Анжелеса	Канада	Канады	Жанейро	Жанейро
Киев	Киева	Москва	Москвы		
Санкт-	Санкт-	Сибирь	Сибири	Сакрамен	Сакрамен
Петербург	Петербург	деревня	деревни	то	то
Минск	Минска			Сан-Хосе	Сан-Хосе
город	города	провинци	провинци	море	моря
штат	штата	я	и	поле	поля
				здание	здания

Translation

Masculine Nouns	Feminine Nouns	Neuter Nouns
This is...	I'm from...	This is...
New York,	New York,	Colorado,
Boston,	Boston,	Ohio,
Los	Los	Rio de
Angeles,	Angeles,	Janeiro,
Kiev,	Kiev,	Sacrament
St.	St.	o,
Petersburg,	Petersburg,	San Jose,
Minsk,	Minsk,	sea,
city,	city,	field,
state,	state,	building,

If we talk about several states or cities, or just talk about any plurals, we also have to take into consideration the endings that form those plurals, and correspond them to the genitive case. English plurals end in "-s." In Russian, there are more endings to make plurals, but in this

lesson, we'll only show two examples.

1. **штат-штаты**

"state"- "states"

2. **город-города**

"city"- "cities"

And now we'll put them into genitive case.

1. **штатов**

2. **городов**

And here are the sentence samples.

1. **Я приехал из Штатов.**

"I came from the States."

2. **Из каких они городов?**

"What cities are they from?"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #4

The Art of Small Talk In Russian

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 8 Grammar

4

RUSSIAN

1. ЕЛЕНА: Мичиган? Как сейчас в Мичигане? Не холодно?
2. ДЖОН: Нет, нормально. Я из Детройта, а в Детройте почти как в Москве. А как погода в Киеве?
3. ЕЛЕНА: В Киеве тепло. Вы были в Киеве?
4. ДЖОН: Нет, но хочу поехать как-нибудь.
5. ЕЛЕНА: А кем вы работаете?
6. ДЖОН: Я...как это сказать по-русски...lawyer.
7. ЕЛЕНА: Аах, вы юрист.
8. ДЖОН: Да. Вы говорите по-английски?
9. ЕЛЕНА: Немного.

ROMANIZATION

1. ELENA: Michigan? Kak syeichas v Michigane? Ne holodno?
2. JOHN: Net, normal'no. Ya iz Detroita, a v Detroite pochti kak v Moskve. A kak pogoda v Kieve?
3. ELENA: V Kieve teplo. Vy byli v Kieve?
4. JOHN: Net, no hochu poehat' kak-nibud'.

CONT'D OVER

5. ELENA: A kem vy rabotaete?
6. JOHN: Ya...kak eto skazat' po-russki...lawyer.
7. ELENA: Aaa, vy yurist.
8. JOHN: Da. Vy govorite po-angliiski?
9. ELENA: Nemnogo.

ENGLISH

1. ELENA: Michigan...how is it in Michigan now? Not cold?
2. JOHN: No, it's okay there. I'm from Detroit, and it's almost like in Moscow there. How about the weather in Kiev?
3. ELENA: It's warm in Kiev. Have you been to Kiev?
4. JOHN: No, but I want to go sometime.
5. ELENA: So, what do you do for work?
6. JOHN: I'm...how should I say it in Russian...lawyer.
7. ELENA: Oh, you are a lawyer!
8. JOHN: Yes! Do you speak English?
9. ELENA: Just a little.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
был, была, было, были	byl, byla, bylo, byli	was, were, have been	verb	masculine, feminine, neuter, plural
немного	nemnogo	a little, not much	adverb	
поехать	pojehat'	to go (by road transport)	verb	
не	ne	not, don't	conjunction	
почти	pochti	almost	adverb	
как	kak	how	pronoun	
но	no	but	conjunction	
в	v	in	preposition	
холодно	holodno	cold	adverb	
сейчас	seychas	now; at the moment, just a moment	adverb	
нормально	normal'no	all right, okay, fine, not bad	adverb	
Мичиган	Michigan	Michigan	noun	
тепло	tyeplo	warm	adverb	
хочу	hochu	want	verb (first person)	
как-нибудь	kak-nibud'	sometime, somehow	adverb	
кем	kem	as whom, by whom	pronoun	

сказать	skazat'	to say	verb
по-русски	pa-russki	(in) Russian	adverb
юрист	yurist	lawyer	noun
по-английски	po-angliski	in English (language)	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Я был здесь раньше. <i>Ya byl zdyes' ran'shye.</i> "I've been here before."	Я не была в Америке. <i>Ya nye byla v Amyerikye.</i> "I haven't been to America."
Я немного устал. <i>Ya nyemnogo ustal.</i> "I'm a little tired."	Он немного говорит по-русски. <i>On nyemnogo govorit po-russki.</i> "He speaks a little Russian."
Я хочу немного сыра. <i>Ya hochu nyemnogo syra.</i> "I'd like a little cheese."	Я хочу поехать в Калифорнию. <i>Ya hochu poyehat' v Kaliforniyu.</i> "I want to go to California."
Мы хотим поехать в Европу. <i>My hotim poyehat' v Yevropu.</i> "We want to go to Europe."	Я хотел бы поехать во Владивосток. <i>Ya hotyel by poyehat' vo Vladivostok.</i> "I'd like to go to Vladivostok."
Было бы здорово поехать в Мексику! <i>Bylo by zdorovo poyehat' v Myeksiku!</i> "It would be great to go to Mexico!"	Москве сейчас не жарко? <i>Moskvye syeychas nye zharko?</i> "Isn't it hot in Moscow now?"
Я сейчас не работаю. <i>Ya syeychas nye rabotayu.</i> "I don't work at the moment."	Как Ваш чай, не холодный? <i>Kak Vash chay, nye holodnyy?</i> "How's your tea, not cold?" ("warm enough?")

<p>Вам не холодно? <i>Vam nye holodno?</i> "Aren't you cold?"</p>	<p>Он не голодный. <i>On nye golodniy.</i> "He's not hungry."</p>
<p>Я не русский. <i>Ya nye russkiy.</i> "I'm not Russian."</p>	<p>Мы почти в Москве. <i>My pochti v Moskvye.</i> "We're almost in Moscow."</p>
<p>Я прожил в Москве почти 10 лет. <i>Ya prozhil v Moskvye pochti 10 lyet.</i> "I lived in Moscow almost ten years."</p>	<p>Моему сыну почти 5 лет. <i>Moyemu synu pochti 5 lyet.</i> "My son is almost five years old."</p>
<p>Уже почти полночь. <i>Uzhye pochti polnoch'.</i> "It's almost midnight."</p>	<p>Я почти уснул в аэропорту. <i>Ya pochti usnul v aeroportu.</i> "I almost fell asleep in the airport."</p>
<p>Уже почти 10, пора выходить. <i>Uzhye pochti 10, pora vyhodit'.</i> "It's almost 10 o'clock, time to head off."</p>	<p>Я почти ничего не ел сегодня. <i>Ya pochti nichyego nye yel syegodnya.</i> "I ate almost nothing today."</p>
<p>Москве почти девятьсот лет. <i>Moskvye pochti dyevyat'sot lyet.</i> "Moscow is almost nine hundred years old."</p>	<p>Как вы себя чувствуете? <i>Kak vy sebya chuvstvuyete?</i> "How do you feel?" (asking condition)</p>
<p>Как у тебя дела? <i>Kak u tebya dela?</i> "How are you?"</p>	<p>Я хочу пойти, но у меня нет времени. <i>Ya hochu poyti, no u myenya nyet vryemeni.</i> "I want to go, but I don't have time."</p>
<p>Я прожил в Москве почти 10 лет. <i>Ya prozhil v Moskve pochti 10 let.</i> "I lived in Moscow almost ten years."</p>	<p>В баре было много людей. <i>V bare bylo mnogo lyudey.</i> "There were lots of people in the bar."</p>

<p>Не бойся, нам не будет холодно. <i>Nye boysya, nam nye budyet holodno.</i> "Don't worry, we won't be cold."</p>	<p>Мне холодно. <i>Mnye holodno.</i> "I'm cold."</p>
<p>Вам не холодно? <i>Vam nye holodno?</i> "Are you cold (formal)?"</p>	<p>Я сейчас не работаю. <i>Ya seychas ne rabotayu.</i> "I don't work at the moment."</p>
<p>Ты сейчас занят? <i>Ty seychas zanyat?</i> "Are you busy now?"</p>	<p>Я сейчас не могу разговаривать. <i>Ya seychas ne mogu razgovarivat'.</i> "I can't talk now."</p>
<p>Всё нормально. <i>Vsyo normal'no.</i> "I'm doing all right."</p>	<p>Мой брат работает в Мичигане. <i>Moy brat rabotayet v Michigane.</i> "My brother works in Michigan."</p>
<p>Вам тепло? <i>Vam tyeplo?</i> "Are you warm?"</p>	<p>Я хочу поехать в Калифорнию. <i>Ya hochu poyehat' v Kaliforniyu.</i> "I want to go to California."</p>
<p>Вы хотите пить? <i>Vy hotitye pit'?</i> "Do you want a drink?"/"Are you thirsty?"</p>	<p>Мы хотим поехать в Европу. <i>My hotim poyehat' v Yevropu.</i> "We want to go to Europe."</p>
<p>Как-нибудь разберёмся. <i>Kak-nibud' razbyeryomsya.</i> "We'll figure it out somehow."</p>	<p>Я как-нибудь зайду. <i>Ya kak-nibud' zaydu.</i> "I'll stop by sometime."</p>
<p>Давай сходим в кино как-нибудь. <i>Davay shodim v kino kak-nibud'.</i> "Let's go to the movies sometime."</p>	<p>Я тебе как-нибудь позвоню. <i>Ya tyebye kak-nibud' pozvonyu.</i> "I'll call you sometime."</p>

<p>Кем работает Ваш муж? <i>Kyem rabotayet Vash muzh?</i> "What does your husband do for a living?"</p>	<p>Я не могу Вам этого сказать. <i>Ya nye mogu Vam etogo skazat'.</i> "I can't tell you this."</p>
<p>Как Вам сказать... <i>Kak Vam skazat'...</i> "How should I put it..."</p>	<p>Я плохо говорю по-русски. <i>Ya ploho govoryu po-russki.</i> "My Russian is not good."</p>
<p>Ты говоришь по-русски? <i>Ty govorish' po-russki?</i> "Do you speak Russian?" (informal)</p>	<p>Я не понимаю по-русски. <i>Ya nye ponimayu po-russki.</i> "I don't understand Russian."</p>
<p>Они много читают по-русски. <i>Oni mnogo chitayut po-russki.</i> "They read in Russian a lot."</p>	<p>Сергей - юрист, он помогает людям. <i>Sergey - yurist, on pomogayet lyudyam.</i> "Sergey is a lawyer, he helps people."</p>
<p>Я юрист, а он студент. <i>Ya yurist, a on student.</i> "I'm a lawyer and he's a student."</p>	<p>Юрист снял одежду. <i>Yurist snyal odyezhdu.</i> "The lawyer took off his clothes."</p>
<p>Мы не говорим по-английски. <i>My nye govorim po-angliyski.</i> "We don't speak English."</p>	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Prepositional Case

Мичиган... Как сейчас в Мичигане?

"Michigan...how is it in Michigan now?"

As we've mentioned before, there are six grammatical cases in Russian that modify the endings of the nouns, pronouns, and adjectives in a sentence. In English, we can find some

similar examples of the words changing according to their grammatical function in a sentence: "I-me," "we-us," "she-her," and so on. But mostly, English relies on the word order. In Russian, the word order is very flexible and almost never affects the general meaning of a sentence. However, if you mix up the cases (i.e., the endings of the nouns, pronouns, and adjectives), you might really confuse your companion.

In this lesson, we'll focus on prepositional case. It's called "prepositional" because it's the only case in which we use prepositions: **в** ("in" or "at"), **на** ("on" or "at"), and **о** ("about").

The prepositional case can also be called "locative," because it shows the location, or where the action takes place. Look at the chart below and see how the nouns of different genders change their endings in the prepositional case.

Forming the Prepositional Case

Gender	Russian		Russian		Russian "English"
	Noun Before Prep. Case	Change	Noun in Prep. Case		
Masculine	Мичиган	add "е"	Мичигане	в Мичигане	"in Michigan"
Masculine	стол	add "е"	столе	на столе	"on the table"
Masculine	город	add "е"	городе	о городе	"about a/the city"
Feminine	Москва	replace "а, я" with "е"	Москве	в Москве	"in Moscow"
Feminine	земля	replace "а, я" with "е"	земле	на земле	"on the ground"
Feminine	страна	replace "а, я" with "е"	стране	о стране	"about a/the country"

Neuter	пиво	replace "о" with "е" don't change "е"	пиве	в пиве	"in the beer"
Neuter	море	replace "о" with "е" don't change "е"	море	на море	"on the sea"
Neuter	лето	replace "о" with "е" don't change "е"	лете	о лете	"about a/the summer"

Next, we'll give you a list of different languages in Russian...

русский	<i>ruskiy</i>	"Russian"
английский	<i>angliskiy</i>	"English"
немецкий	<i>nemetskiy</i>	"German"
испанский	<i>ispanskiy</i>	"Spanish"
португальский	<i>portugal'skiy</i>	"Portuguese"
французский	<i>frantsuskiy</i>	"French"
китайский	<i>kitajskiy</i>	"Chinese"
японский	<i>yaponskiy</i>	"Japanese"

... and their modifications in the sentences where you talk about speaking these languages. In the sentence "I speak Russian" (or "I can speak Russian"), we change the word "Russian" according to the second column below, to: **Я говорю по-русски.**

по-русски	<i>po-ruski</i>	"(in) Russian"
по-английски	<i>po-angliski</i>	"(in) English"
по-немецки	<i>po-nemetski</i>	"(in) German"
по-испански	<i>po-ispanski</i>	"(in) Spanish"
по-португальски	<i>po-portugal'ski</i>	"(in) Portuguese"
по-французски	<i>po-frantsuski</i>	"(in) French"
по-китайски	<i>po-kitayski</i>	"(in) Chinese"
по-японски	<i>po-yaponski</i>	"(in) Japanese"

And last, some common professions in Russian:

юрист	<i>yurist</i>	"lawyer"
врач	<i>vrach</i>	"doctor"
учитель	<i>uchitel'</i>	"teacher"
бухгалтер	<i>bugalter</i>	"accountant"
бизнесмен	<i>biznesmen</i>	"businessmen"
официант	<i>ofitsant</i>	"waiter"
банкир	<i>bankir</i>	"bank worker"
музыкант	<i>muzykant</i>	"musician"
писатель	<i>pisatiel'</i>	"writer"
менеджер	<i>menedzher</i>	"manager"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #5

Welcome to Russia! Avoid Immersion Shock with This Lesson

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 10 Grammar

5

RUSSIAN

1. ПИЛОТ: Уважаемые пассажиры, добро пожаловать в аэропорт "Шереметьево" города Москвы. Сегодня пятница, местное время – 11:40 утра, температура воздуха- 12 градусов. Желаем вам приятно провести время в столице!
2. ДЖОН: 12 градусов? Прохладно...
3. ЕЛЕНА: Да. У Вас есть тёплые вещи?
4. ДЖОН: Да, но, боюсь, всё равно будет холодно...

ROMANIZATION

1. PILOT: Uvazhaemyie pasazhiry, dobro pozhalovat' v aeroport "Sheremetyevo" goroda Moskvy. Segodnya pyatnitsa, mestnoe vremya – odinatsats sorok utra, temperatura vozduha – dvenatsats gradusov. Zhelayem vam priyatno provesti vremya v stolitse!
2. JOHN: Dvenatsats gradusov? Prohladno...
3. ELENA: Da. U Vas iest' tyoplye veshi?
4. JOHN: Da, no, boyus', vse ravno budet holodno...

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. PILOT: Dear passengers, welcome to Sheremetyevo Airport of Moscow. Today is Friday; the local time is eleven-forty in the morning. The temperature is twelve degrees. We wish you a nice stay in the capital.
2. JOHN: Twelve degrees? Chilly...
3. ELENA: Yeah. Do you have warm clothes?
4. JOHN: I do, but I'm afraid I'll be cold anyway...

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
местный	mestnyi	local	adjective	
столица	stolitsa	capital (city)	noun	
в	v	in, at, to	preposition	
сегодня	segodnya	today	adverb	
город	gorod	a city, a town	noun	
утро	utra	morning	noun	neutral
пятница	pyatnitsa	Friday	noun	feminine
время	vremya	time	noun	
добро	dabro			
пожаловать	pazhalavat'	welcome	interjection	
пассажир	passazhir	passenger	noun	masculine
аэропорт	aeroport	airport	noun	

уважаемый	uvazhaemyi	honorable; respectable, dear	adjective	
температура	temperatura	fever	noun	feminine
воздух	vozduh	air	noun	
градус	gradus	degree	noun	masculine
желать	zhelat'	to wish	verb	
приятно	priyatna	nice; nicely, pleasantly	adverb	
проводить	provesti	to spend (time)	verb	
прохладно	prohladno	cool, chilly	adverb	
У Вас есть...?	U Vas yest'...?	Do you have...?	phrase	
тёплый	teplyy	warm	adjective	masculine
вещь	vesh'	thing, item	noun	
но	no	but	conjunction, preposition	
боюсь	boyus'	(I'm) afraid	verb/interjection	
всё равно	vsyo ravno	it doesn't matter; anyway	phrase	
будет	budyet	will be	verb	
холодно	holodno	cold	adverb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Вы местные? <i>Vy myestnyye?</i> "Are you local?"</p>	<p>Я живу в столице. <i>Ya zhivu v stolitsye.</i> "I live in the capital."</p>
<p>Давай встретимся в понедельник. <i>Davay vstryetimsya v ponyedyel'nik.</i> "Let's meet on Monday."</p>	<p>В Москве плохой воздух. <i>V Moskve plohoy vozduh.</i> "The air is not good in Moscow."</p>
<p>Тебе будет жарко в этом свитере! <i>Tyebye budyet zharko v etom svityere!</i> "You'll be hot in this sweater."</p>	<p>Я живу в столице. <i>Ya zhivu v stolitsye.</i> "I live in the capital."</p>
<p>Вы свободны в пятницу вечером? <i>Vy svobodny v pyatnitsu vyechyerom?</i> "Are you free on Friday evening?"</p>	<p>Давай встретимся в субботу. <i>Davay vstryetimsya v subbotu.</i> "Let's meet on Saturday."</p>
<p>В среду будет дождь. <i>V sryedu budyet dozhd'.</i> "It'll rain on Wednesday."</p>	<p>Мне нужно в город сегодня. <i>Mnye nuzhno v gorod syegodnya.</i> "I need to go to downtown today."</p>
<p>Сегодня в городе праздник. <i>Syegodnya v gorodye prazdnik.</i> "There's a holiday in the city today."</p>	<p>Катя никогда не была в Испании. <i>Katya nikogda nye byla v Ispanii.</i> "Katya has never been to Spain."</p>
<p>Я живу в Москве. <i>Ya zhivu v Moskve.</i> "I live in Moscow."</p>	<p>Он работает в банке. <i>On rabotayet v bankye.</i> "I work in a bank."</p>
<p>Сегодня был необычайно жаркий летний день. <i>Segodnya byl neobychayno zharkiy letniy den'.</i> "Today was an extraordinarily hot summer day."</p>	<p>Парад сегодня. <i>Parat sevodnya.</i> "The parade is today."</p>

<p>Сегодня плохой курс валют. <i>Syegodnya plohoy kurs valyut.</i> "The exchange rate is bad today."</p>	<p>Мне нужно в город сегодня. <i>Mnye nuzhno v gorod syegodnya.</i> "I need to go to downtown today."</p>
<p>Сегодня - суббота. <i>Segodnya - subbota.</i> "Today is Saturday."</p>	<p>Мне нужно в город сегодня. <i>Mnye nuzhno v gorod syegodnya.</i> "I need to go to downtown today."</p>
<p>Сегодня в городе праздник. <i>Syegodnya v gorodye prazdnik.</i> "There's a holiday in the city today."</p>	<p>Я люблю гулять по городу. <i>Ya lyublyu gulyat' po gorodu.</i> "I like wandering around the city."</p>
<p>Москва - большой город. <i>Moskva - bol'shoy gorod.</i> "Moscow is a big city."</p>	<p>Я ненавижу просыпаться рано утром, если у меня нет планов на утро. <i>Ya nenavizhu prasypatsa rana utram, yesli u menya net planaf na utra.</i> "I hate waking up early in the morning when I don't have plans for the morning."</p>
<p>Ты не знаешь, нужно ли предварительно записываться на приём в парикмахерскую? <i>Ty ne znayesh', nuzhna li predvaritel'na zapisyvatsa na priyom f parikmakherskuyu?</i> "Do you know whether pre- appointment is needed for the hair salon?"</p>	<p>Наши магазины снова откроются завтра утром. <i>Nashy magaziny snova atkroyutsa zavtra utram.</i> "Our stores will open again tomorrow morning."</p>
<p>Он не ел с восьми утра. <i>On nye yel s vos'mi utra.</i> "He hasn't eaten since eight o'clock in the morning."</p>	<p>Мальчик проснулся утром. <i>Mal'chik prosnulsya utrom.</i> "The boy woke up in the morning."</p>
<p>Девочка проснулась утром. <i>Dyevochka prosnulas' utrom.</i> "A girl woke up in the morning."</p>	<p>Что ты делаешь в пятницу вечером? <i>Chto ty delayesh' v pyatnitsu vecherom?</i> "What are you doing Friday night?"</p>

<p>Вы свободны в пятницу вечером? <i>Vy svobodny v pyatnitsu vyechyerom?</i> "Are you free on Friday evening?"</p>	<p>В какое время твоя игра? <i>F kakoje vremya tvaya igray?</i> "What time is your play?"</p>
<p>Напиши, если у тебя будет время. <i>Napishite, yesli u tyebya budyet vryemya.</i> "Write if you have some time."</p>	<p>Время идёт слишком медленно. <i>Vremya idyot slishkam medlenna.</i> "Time goes by too slowly."</p>
<p>Добро пожаловать ко мне домой! <i>Dabro pazhalavat' ka mne domoy!</i> "Welcome to my home!"</p>	<p>Над дверью моего любимого магазина написано "Добро пожаловать". <i>Nad dver'yu mayevo lyubimava magazina napisana "Dabro pazhalavat".</i> "Above my favorite shop there is a "Welcome" sign."</p>
<p>Добро пожаловать в аэропорт "Шереметьево!" <i>Dabro pazhalavat' v aeraport "Sheremet'yeva"!</i> "Welcome to the "Sheremet'evo" airport!"</p>	<p>Пассажир летел самолётом. <i>Passazhir lyetyel samolyotom.</i> "A passenger flew on the plane."</p>
<p>Я не воспринял его слова всерьёз. <i>Ya nye vosprinjal yego slova vsyer'yoz.</i> "I didn't take his words seriously."</p>	<p>Нам надо быть в аэропорту в два часа. <i>Nam nada byt' v aerapartu v dva chasa.</i> "We have to be at the airport at two o'clock."</p>
<p>В аэропорту было много людей. <i>V aeroportu bylo mnogo lyudyey.</i> "At the airport there were lots of people."</p>	<p>В Москве есть несколько аэропортов. <i>V Moskve est' nyeskol'ko aeroportov.</i> "There are several airports in Moscow."</p>
<p>Уважаемые посетители, добро пожаловать в музей имени Пушкина! <i>Uvazhayemyye posyetityeli, dobro pozhalovat' v muzyey imyeni Pushkina!</i> "Dear visitors, welcome to the Pushkin Museum."</p>	<p>Уважаемые пассажиры, пристегните ремни безопасности. <i>Uvazhayemyye passazhiry, pristyegnitye ryemni byezopasnosti.</i> "Dear passengers, fasten the seat belts."</p>

<p>У него высокая температура. <i>U nevo vysokaya temperatura.</i> "He's got a fever."</p>	<p>У меня температура и меня тошнит. <i>U menya temperatura i menya tashnit.</i> "I have a fever and I feel sick."</p>
<p>В Москве плохой воздух. <i>V Moskve plohoy vozduh.</i> "The air is not good in Moscow."</p>	<p>В горах очень свежий воздух. <i>V gorah ochyen' svyezhiy vozduh.</i> "The air in the mountains is very fresh."</p>
<p>На улице пять градусов мороза. "Ouside is five degrees below zero."</p>	<p>Завтра будет жарко, почти 30 градусов. <i>Zavtra budyet zharko, pochti 30 gradusov.</i> "It will be hot tomorrow, almost 30 degrees."</p>
<p>Желаю вам удачи! <i>Zhyelayu vam udachi!</i> "Wish you luck!"</p>	<p>Желаю удачи на экзаменах! <i>Zhyelayu udachi na ekzamyanah!</i> "Good luck on your exams!"</p>
<p>Желаю приятного полёта! <i>Zhyelayu priyatnogo polyota!</i> "Wish you a nice flight!"</p>	<p>Желаю приятного полёта! <i>Zhelayu priyatnava palyota!</i> "Wish you a nice flight!"</p>
<p>Очень приятно познакомиться! <i>Ochen' priyatna paznakomitsa!</i> "Very nice to meet you (get to know you)!"</p>	<p>Как приятно! <i>Kak priyatna!</i> "How nice!"/"What a pleasure!"</p>
<p>Приятно слышать. <i>Priyatna slyshat'.</i> "Nice to hear." (e.g., a compliment)</p>	<p>Приятно познакомиться. <i>Priyatna paznakomitsa.</i> "Nice to meet you."</p>
<p>Я хотел бы провести лето на море. <i>Ya hotyel by provyesti lyeto na morye.</i> "I'd like to spend the summer at the sea."</p>	<p>Как ты хочешь провести каникулы? <i>Kak ty hochyesh' provyesti kanikuly?</i> "How do you want to spend your holidays?"</p>

<p>Я взял вещи на тёплую и прохладную погоду.</p> <p><i>Ya vzyal vyeschi na tyopluyu i prohladnuyu pogodu.</i></p> <p>"I brought clothes for warm and chilly weather."</p>	<p>У Вас есть e-mail?</p> <p><i>U Vas yest' e-mail?</i></p> <p>"Do you have an e-mail address?"</p>
<p>У Вас есть дети?</p> <p><i>U Vas yest' deti?</i></p> <p>"Do you have children?"</p>	<p>У Вас есть время?</p> <p><i>U Vas yest' vremya?</i></p> <p>"Do you have time?"</p>
<p>Этот шарф тёплый?</p> <p><i>Etot sharf toplyy?</i></p> <p>"Is this scarf warm?"</p>	<p>Пироги тёплые.</p> <p><i>Pirogi tyoplyye.</i></p> <p>"The pies are warm."</p>
<p>Погода сегодня тёплая.</p> <p><i>Pogoda segodnya tyoplaya.</i></p> <p>"The weather is warm today."</p>	<p>Я взял вещи на тёплую и прохладную погоду.</p> <p><i>Ya vzyal vyeschi na tyopluyu i prohladnuyu pogodu.</i></p> <p>"I brought clothes for warm and chilly weather."</p>
<p>Мне хочется спать, но я должен закончить этот отчёт сегодня.</p> <p><i>Mne khochetsa spat', no ya dolzhen zakonchit' etat atchyot sevodnya.</i></p> <p>"I'm sleepy but I have to finish this report tonight."</p>	<p>Я знаю, что вы заняты, но не могли бы вы приехать?</p> <p><i>Ya znayu, shto vy zanyaty, no ne magli by vy priyekhat' ?</i></p> <p>"I know you're busy, but could you come?"</p>
<p>Я хочу пойти, но у меня нет времени.</p> <p><i>Ya khachu payti, no u menya net vremeni.</i></p> <p>"I want to go, but I don't have time."</p>	<p>Боюсь, я опоздаю.</p> <p><i>Boyus', ya opozdayu.</i></p> <p>"I'm afraid I will be late."</p>
<p>Боюсь, сегодня будет очень холодно.</p> <p><i>Boyus', syegodnya budyet ochyen' holodno.</i></p> <p>"I'm afraid it will be really cold today."</p>	<p>Боюсь, я не смогу прийти.</p> <p><i>Boyus', ya nye smogu priyti.</i></p> <p>"I'm afraid I won't be able to come."</p>

<p>Боюсь, Вы опоздали. <i>Boyus', Vy opozdali.</i></p> <p>"I'm afraid you are late."</p>	<p>Я всё равно поеду! <i>Ya vsyo ravno poyedu!</i></p> <p>"I will go anyway!"</p>
<p>Завтра будет жарко, почти 30 градусов. <i>Zavtra budyet zharko, pochti 30 gradusov.</i></p> <p>"It'll be hot tomorrow, almost thirty degrees."</p>	<p>Не бойся, нам не будет холодно. <i>Nye boysya, nam nye budyet holodno.</i></p> <p>"Don't worry, we won't be cold."</p>
<p>Тебе будет жарко в этом свитере! <i>Tyebye budyet zharko v etom svityere!</i></p> <p>"You'll be hot in this sweater."</p>	<p>В среду будет дождь. <i>V sryedu budyet dozhd'.</i></p> <p>"It'll rain on Wednesday."</p>
<p>Завтра будет жарко. <i>Zavtra budyet zharko.</i></p> <p>"It will be hot tomorrow."</p>	<p>Не бойся, нам не будет холодно. <i>Nye boysya, nam nye budyet holodno.</i></p> <p>"Don't worry, we won't be cold."</p>
<p>Мне холодно. <i>Mnye holodno.</i></p> <p>"I'm cold."</p>	<p>Вам не холодно? <i>Vam nye holodno?</i></p> <p>"Are you cold (formal)?"</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Genitive Case used to Express Possession and the Accusative Case.

Uvazhaemyie pasazhiry, dobro pozhalovats v aeroport "Sheremetyevo" goroda Moskvy.
"Dear passengers, welcome to *Sheremetyevo* Airport of Moscow."

In the PDF file of lesson 3, we gave you an explanation of how to form the **genitive case** and a table of examples with the preposition "from." Today, we'll continue exploring the genitive case and its new functions. One such function is expressing possession; that's why we often call this case the "of" case. Let's take a quick look back and remember how to form the

genitive case.

Masculine Nouns	Feminine Nouns	Neuter Nouns
If the noun ends in a consonant, add а	Replace а with и or ы Replace я with и	Don't change the endings in the personal names. Replace е with я in places Replace о with а

Remember! ** The noun-POSSESSOR changes its ending!

** Modified ending is the equivalent of the English "of"!

Now, let's try to recognize these rules in the following examples.

With Masculine Nouns

Russian (Romanized)	"English"	Explanation
собака друга (<i>sobaka drooga</i>)	"a dog of a friend (a friend's dog)"	<i>Друг (droog, "friend")</i> has a masculine gender and acts as a possessor in our phrase (he's the one who has a dog; therefore, we change his ending <u>друга</u>)
температура воздуха (<i>temperatura vozduha</i>)	"temperature of the air (air temperature)"	<i>Воздух (vozduh, "air")</i> is also masculine, and "he" is the one to whom the temperature belongs. So we change his ending <u>воздуха</u>)
номер телефона (<i>nomer telefona</i>)	"number of the telephone (telephone number)"	<i>Телефон (telefon, "telephone")</i> , masculine, possesses the number → <u>телефона</u> .

With Feminine Nouns

Russian (Romanized)	"English"	Explanation
город мечты (gorod mechty)	"a city of (one's) dream"	Мечта (<i>mechta</i> , "dream") has feminine gender and the city "belongs" to her (it's her city, a dream-city) → <u>мечты</u>
экономика страны (ekonomika strany)	"the economy of the country"	Страна (<i>strana</i> , "country") is also feminine, and to have any kind of economy it at least has to change its ending: <u>страны</u>
имя девушки (imya devushki)	"the name of the girl"	Девушка (<i>devushka</i> , "girl") is obviously feminine and obviously has a name that belongs to her. Let's change her ending, too: <u>девушки</u>

With Neuter Nouns

Russian (Romanized)	"English"	Explanation
цена пива (tsena piva)	"the price of beer"	Пиво (<i>pivo</i> , "beer") is neutral, and it always has a price → <u>пива</u>

горы Колорадо (*gory*

Kolorado)

"the mountains of Colorado"

Colorado has mountains, but according to the rules, we can't change the ending of this beautiful state, because we simply can't change personal names if they have a neuter gender.

глубина моря (*glubina*

morya)

"the depth of the sea"

Mope (*more*, "sea"), neuter
→ *моря*

The Accusative Case

One of the functions of the accusative case is to help us speak about directions. We use it after the preposition **в** ("to"). Don't confuse it with the other meaning of **в** ("in," "at"), in which case you have to use the prepositional case!

Forming the Accusative Case

In usage of this case to express directions, we mainly have to pay attention to the endings of feminine nouns.

Masculine Nouns	Feminine Nouns	Neuter Nouns
<i>No change</i>	1. Replace а with ы . 2. Replace я with ю .	<i>No change</i>

в ("to")	Киев Мичиган клуб туалет	M	Kiev Michigan kloob tualet	"Kiev" "Michigan" "club" "toilet"
-----------------	-----------------------------------	---	-------------------------------------	--

в ("to")	Россию Америку компанию комнату	F	Rosiyu Ameriku kompaniyu komnatu	"Russia" "America" "company" "room"
в ("to")	Колорадо море здание место	N	Kolorado more zdanie miesto	"Colorado" "sea" "building" "place"

The thing to remember is basically the changes in feminine nouns, which are only two letters, "ы" and "ю".

1. Я еду в **Москву**

Ya iedu v Moskvi.

"I'm going to Moscow."

2. Я хочу **поехать** в **Россию**

Ya hochu poiehats v Rossiyu.

"I want (to go) to Moscow."

We also use the accusative case to indicate time; for example, when we speak about days of the week. Let's take a look at what changes days of the week undergo in the accusative case. But first, the days of the week themselves.

Russian	Romanized	"English"
понедельник	<i>ponedel'nik</i>	"Monday"
вторник	<i>vtornik</i>	"Tuesday"
среда	<i>sreda</i>	"Wednesday"
четверг	<i>chetverg</i>	"Thursday"
пятница	<i>pyatnitsa</i>	"Friday"
суббота	<i>subota</i>	"Saturday"

воскресенье

voskresenie

"Sunday"

To indicate time, to speak about the events ON particular days of the week, we use the same old **в** and change the endings according to the same rules above.

В ("on")

понедельник

M

ponedel'nik

"Monday"

В ("on")

вторник

M

vtornik

"Tuesday"

В ("on")

среду

F

sredu

"Wednesday"

В ("on")

четверг

M

chetverg

"Thursday"

В ("on")

пятницу

F

pyatnitsu

"Friday"

В ("on")

субботу

F

subotu

"Saturday"

В ("on")

воскресенье

N

voskresenie

"Sunday"

The days of week that have feminine gender are only Wednesday, Friday, and Saturday; therefore, only those three undergo some minor changes.

Note! With **вторник** ("Tuesday") you should say **во** (*vo*) instead of just "**в**" so that you do not turn it into a tongue twister.

Russian

Romanized

"English"

Я приду в понедельник

Ya priedu v ponedel'nik.

"I'll arrive (come) on Monday."

Он уезжает **во** вторник

On uezhaet vo vtornik.

"He's leaving on Tuesday."

Вы свободны в среду?

Vy svobodny v sredu?

"Are you free on
Wednesday?"

У меня выходной в
четверг

*U menya vyhodnoi v
chetverg.*

"I have a day off on
Thursday."

Давай встретимся в
пятницу

*Davai vstrechimsya v
pyatnitsu.*

"Let's meet on Friday."

В субботу будет хорошая
погода

*V subotu budet horoshaya
pogoda.*

"The weather will be good
on Saturday."

Я позвоню тебе в
воскресенье

*Ya pozvonyu tebe v
voskresenie.*

"I'll call you on Sunday."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #6

Don't Miss Your Chance - How to Close the Deal in Russian

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 9 Grammar

6

RUSSIAN

1. ДЖОН: Елена, мне было очень приятно с Вами познакомиться.
2. ЕЛЕНА: Мне тоже, Джон.
3. ДЖОН: Вот, это моя визитная карточка. Здесь мой мобильный телефон и и-мейл.
4. ЕЛЕНА: Спасибо. К сожалению, у меня нет визитки. Давайте я Вам напишу мой номер.
5. ДЖОН: Давайте, вот блокнот.
6. ЕЛЕНА: Всего хорошего, до связи!
7. ДЖОН: До свидания!

ROMANIZATION

1. JOHN: Yelena, mne bylo ochen' priyatno s Vami poznakomitsa
2. ELENA: Mne tozhe, Jon
3. JOHN: Vot, eto moya vizitnaya kartochka. Zdes' moi mobil'nyi telefon ee email.
4. ELENA: Spasibo. K sozhaleniyu, u menya net vizitki. Davaite ya Vam napishu moi nomer.
5. JOHN: Davaite, vot bloknot.

CONT'D OVER

6. ELENA: Vsevo horoshevo, do svyazi!

7. JOHN: Do svidania!

ENGLISH

1. JOHN: Elena, I was very happy to get to know you.

2. ELENA: You too, John.

3. JOHN: Here, this is my business card. My telephone number and e-mail address are on it.

4. ELENA: Thank you. Unfortunately, I don't have a name card. Let me write down my number for you.

5. JOHN: Okay, here's a notebook.

6. ELENA: All the best to you; keep in touch!

7. JOHN: Good-bye!

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
мой, моя, моё, мои	moy, moya, moyo, moi	my, mine	pronoun	masculine, feminine, neuter, plural
мобильный телефон	mobil'nyy telefon	cell phone	noun	

приятно	priyatno	nice; nicely, pleasantly	adverb
тоже	tozhe	too, also	adverb
это	eto	this is, that is, it's	pronoun
визитная карточка	vizitnaya kartochka	name card/ business card	noun
очень	ochen'	very, very much	adverb
с вами	s vami	with you (polite or plural)	phrase
был, была, было, были	byl, byla, bylo, byli	was, were, have been	verb masculine, feminine, neuter, plural
познакомиться	poznakomit'sa	to meet, to get acquainted, to get to know (someone)	verb
мне	mnye	to me, for me	pronoun
вот	vot	here; here you go	particle/ interjection
здесь	zdes'	here	adverb
и	ee	and	conjunction
спасибо	spasibo	thank you, thanks	noun/interjection
к сожалению	k sozhaleniyu	unfortunately, I'm afraid	adverb
у меня нет	u menya net	I don't have	phrase
Давай	Davay	let's, shall we...	verb

вам	vam	to you	pronoun
писать	pisat'	to write	verb
номер	nomer	a hotel room, a number	noun
блокнот	bloknot	notebook, pocket diary	noun
всего хорошего	vsevo horoshevo	(wish you) all the best	phrase
до связи	do svyazi	keep in touch	phrase
До свидания	do svidania	good-bye, until next time	parting greeting

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Вот мой паспорт и билет. <i>Vot moy pasport i bilyet.</i> "Here's my passport and ticket."	Вот, это мой домашний телефон. <i>Vot, eto moy domashniy tyelyefon.</i> "Here, this is my home number."
У меня нет мобильного телефона. <i>U menya net mobil'nogo telefona.</i> "I don't have a cell phone."	Желаю приятного полёта! <i>Zhelayu priyatnogo polyota!</i> "Wish you a nice flight!"
Очень приятно познакомиться! <i>Ochen' priyatno poznakomit'sya!</i> "Very nice to meet you (get to know you)!"	Как приятно! <i>Kak priyatno!</i> "How nice!"/"What a pleasure!"
Приятно слышать. <i>Priyatno slyshat'.</i> "Nice to hear." (e.g., a compliment)	Приятно познакомиться. <i>Priyatno poznakomit'sya.</i> "Nice to meet you."

<p>Я тоже устал. <i>Ya tozhye ustal.</i> "I'm tired, too."</p>	<p>Мы тоже там работаем. <i>My tozhye tam rabotayem.</i> "We also work there."</p>
<p>Вам тоже нравится музыка? <i>Vam tozhe nrauit'sya muzyka?</i> "Do you like music, too?"</p>	<p>Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eto ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"</p>
<p>Это наши друзья. <i>Eto nashi druz'ya.</i> "These are our friends."</p>	<p>Собор Василия Блаженного-визитная карточка Москвы. <i>Sobor Vasiliya Blazhyennogo-vizitnaya kartochka Moskvy.</i> "St. Basil's Cathedral is the 'name card' of Moscow."</p>
<p>Мне тоже очень понравился этот фильм! <i>Mne tozhe ochen' ponravilsya etot fil'm!</i> "I liked this movie very much, too!" ("I also liked this movie!")</p>	<p>Я очень устал сегодня. <i>Ya ochen' ustal segodnya.</i> "I'm very tired today."</p>
<p>Я был здесь раньше. <i>Ya byl zdyes' ran'shye.</i> "I've been here before."</p>	<p>Я не была в Америке. <i>Ya nye byla v Amerikye.</i> "I haven't been to America."</p>
<p>Приятно познакомиться. <i>Priyatno poznakomit'sya.</i> "Nice to meet you."</p>	<p>Рад с Вами познакомиться, наконец! <i>Rad s Vami poznakomit'sa, nakonyets!</i> "I'm glad to finally meet you!"</p>
<p>Познакомься, это моя сестра, Катя. <i>Poznakom'sya, eto moya sestra, Katya.</i> "Meet my sister, Katya."</p>	<p>Мне тоже холодно. <i>Mnye tozhye holodno.</i> "I'm cold, too." ("I'm also cold.")</p>

<p>Мне тоже очень понравился этот фильм!</p> <p><i>Mne tozhe ochen' ponravilsya etot fil'm!</i></p> <p>"I liked this movie very much, too!" ("I also liked this movie!")</p>	<p>Вот, я купил два билета, как ты просил.</p> <p><i>Vot, ya kupil dva bilyeta, kak ty prosil.</i></p> <p>"Here, I bought two tickets as you asked me (as you requested)."</p>
<p>Вот мой паспорт и билет.</p> <p><i>Vot moy pasport i bilyet.</i></p> <p>"Here's my passport and ticket."</p>	<p>Вот, пожалуйста.</p> <p><i>Vot, pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>"Here you are; here it is."</p>
<p>Не садитесь, здесь мокро.</p> <p><i>Nye sadites', zdyes' mokro.</i></p> <p>"Don't sit down: it's wet here."</p>	<p>Здесь можно курить?</p> <p><i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i></p> <p>"Is it okay (allowed) to smoke here?"</p>
<p>Я был в Москве и Санкт-Петербурге.</p> <p><i>Ya byl v Moskve i Sankt-Pyetyerburgye.</i></p> <p>"I've been to Moscow and St. Petersburg."</p>	<p>И ты пойдёшь?</p> <p><i>I ty poydyosh'?</i></p> <p>"And you will go (too)?"</p>
<p>Хорошо, спасибо.</p> <p><i>Horosho, spasibo.</i></p> <p>"Good, thanks."</p>	<p>К сожалению, автобус уже ушёл.</p> <p><i>K sozhaleniyu, avtobus uzhe ushyol.</i></p> <p>"Unfortunately, the bus had gone already."</p>
<p>К сожалению, я не могу Вам помочь.</p> <p><i>K sozhaleniyu, ya nye mogu Vam pomoch'.</i></p> <p>"Unfortunately I can't help you."</p>	<p>У меня совсем нет денег.</p> <p><i>U myenya sovsyem nyet dyenyeg.</i></p> <p>"I'm totally broke." ("I don't have money at all.")</p>
<p>К сожалению, у меня нет телефона.</p> <p><i>K sozhaleniyu, u myenya nyet tyelyefona.</i></p> <p>"Unfortunately, I don't have a phone."</p>	<p>Давай я тебе помогу.</p> <p><i>Davay ya tyebye pomogu.</i></p> <p>"Let me help you."</p>
<p>Давай, просыпайся!</p> <p><i>Davay, prosypaysya!</i></p> <p>"Come on, wake up!"</p>	<p>Давай спать.</p> <p><i>Davay spat'.</i></p> <p>"Let's sleep/go to bed."</p>

<p>Давайте закажем шампанское! <i>Davaytye zakazhyem shampanskoye!</i> "Let's order champagne!"</p>	<p>Давайте пойдём ко мне. <i>Davaytye poydyom ko mnye.</i> "Let's go to my place."</p>
<p>Давай попьём чай на кухне. <i>Davay pop'yom chay na kuhnye.</i> "Let's have some tea in the kitchen."</p>	<p>Давайте встретимся вечером. <i>Davaytye vstryetimsya vyechyerom.</i> "Let's meet tonight."</p>
<p>Давайте познакомимся. <i>Davaytye poznakomimsya.</i> "Let's get to know each other."</p>	<p>Давайте работать! <i>Davaytye rabotat'!</i> "Let's work!" (formal)</p>
<p>Давай обедать! <i>Davay obyedat'!</i> "Let's have lunch!" (informal)</p>	<p>Тебе надо написать письмо? <i>Tyebye nado napisat' pis'mo?</i> "Do you need to write a letter?" (informal)</p>
<p>Ты выходил из номера сегодня? <i>Ty vyhodil iz nomyera syegodnya?</i> "Have you gone out of your room today?"</p>	<p>Он весь день провёл в номере. <i>On vyes' dyen' provyol v nomyere.</i> "He spent the whole day in his hotel room."</p>
<p>Ваш номер на восьмом этаже. <i>Vash nomyer na vos'mom etazhye.</i> "Your room is on the eighth floor."</p>	<p>Мне нужен самый дешёвый номер. <i>Mnye nuzhyen samyy dyeshyovyy nomyer.</i> "I need the cheapest room."</p>
<p>Это двухместный номер? <i>Eto dvuhmyestnyy nomyer?</i> "Is this a twin room?"</p>	<p>Я хотел бы забронировать номер люкс. <i>Ya hotyel by zabronirovat' nomyer lyuks.</i> "I'd like to book a suite."</p>
<p>Я сегодня останусь в номере. <i>Ya syegodnya ostanus' v nomyerye.</i> "I'll stay in my room today."</p>	<p>Это Ваш мобильный или домашний номер? <i>Eto Vash mobil'nyy ili domashniy nomyer?</i> "Is this your mobile or home number?"</p>

<p>Этот номер очень дорогой. <i>Etot nomyer ochyen' dorogoy.</i></p> <p>"This hotel room is very expensive."</p>	<p>Я хотела бы забронировать номер на одного человека. <i>Ya hotyela by zabronirovat' nomyer na odnogo chyelovyeka.</i></p> <p>"I'd like to book a hotel room for one person."</p>
<p>Я живу в доме номер семь. <i>Ya zhivu v domye nomyer syem'.</i></p> <p>"I live in house number seven."</p>	<p>До скорого! <i>Do skorogo!</i></p> <p>"See you soon!" (informal)</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is How to Express Conditions and Emotions as well as Negation and Absence.

Елена, мне было очень приятно с Вами познакомиться.

"Elena, I was very happy to get to know you."

One of the ways of expressing conditions and emotions in Russian requires two things: first, a pronoun in the Dative case, and second, an adverb. The word order in Russian is simple and flexible, so the biggest grammar point to remember here will be the pronouns in the dative case.

Dative Case

What is the dative case itself? Its primary function is to designate that something is given or addressed to a person (object). In English, we can call it the "to" case, because when you translate Russian words in the dative case, you will get "to" in English.

For Example:

1. Я пишу письмо **другу**

Ya pishu pis'mo drugu

"I'm writing a letter **to a friend**."

The dictionary form of the word "friend" is **друг**. As we mentioned before, changing the endings in Russian nouns is like adding prepositions to English nouns: this is how we change the functions of the words (and therefore the sense of the sentences) in these two languages. Today, we'll learn only how to change the pronouns in order to express your emotions and also ask for something.

In English, we express conditions and emotions through the following pronouns and verbs: "I am...," "he is...," "they are...," and so on. In Russian, as we've just mentioned, we have to change them according to the dative case and translate them as "to me," "to him," or "to them." Here are the original and modified pronouns:

Nominative				
(original) Case	Romanization	"English"	Dative Case ("to...")	Romanization
я	ya	"I"	мне	<i>mne</i>
ты	ty	"you" (informal)	тебе	<i>tebie</i>
вы	vy	"you" (formal or plural)	вам	<i>vam</i>
он	on	"he"	ему	<i>iemu</i>
она	ona	"she"	ей	<i>iei</i>
мы	my	"we"	нам	<i>nam</i>
они	oni	"they"	им	<i>im</i>

Take a look at the dative column. Now take any pronoun you need - that is, anyone you'll be

talking about - and add an adverb expressing the condition or emotion. Here are some examples:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
мне хорошо	<i>mne horosho</i>	"I feel good"
ей плохо	<i>iei ploho</i>	"he feels bad"
ему жарко	<i>iemu zharko</i>	"he's hot"
нам холодно	<i>nam holodno</i>	"we are cold"
им интересно	<i>im interesno</i>	"they are interested" ("they are enjoying)"
тебе не скучно?	<i>tebie nie skuchno?</i>	"Are (not) you bored?"
Вам не тяжело?	<i>Vam nie tyazhelo?</i>	"Is it (too) heavy for you?"
мне дорого	<i>mne dorogo</i>	"it's (too) expensive for me"

Using a dative pronoun and an adverb is only one way to express emotions, but it involves some essential adverbs, so it would be useful to remember.

The pronouns in dative case have another very useful function - they will help you to ask and make requests.

For Example:

1. **Дай(те) мне...**

Dai(tie) mne...

"Give me..."

Whenever you are buying, ordering, or just asking for something, you will use the pronoun **мне**, meaning "to me." And you will use the word "give" in a command form. You can make it sound more or less polite by adding or dropping **-те** at the end.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Дай мне ручку	<i>Dai mne ruchku</i>	"Give me a pen."
Дайте мне стакан сока, пожалуйста	<i>Daitie mnie stakan soka, pozhalusta</i>	"Give me a glass of juice, please."
Дайте ему воды!	<i>Daitie iemu vody!</i>	"Give him some water!"
Дайте нам два билета, пожалуйста	<i>Daitie nam dva biletta, pozhalusta</i>	"Give us two tickets, please."

Expressing Absence Using the Genitive Case: "I don't have"

Expressing absence in Russian should be easy for you, because you have already learned how to form the **genitive case** in the previous Gengo lessons 3 and 5. And besides the functions that we've already learned, which are roughly the "of" and "from" functions, genitive case is also the one you use to express the absence.

Let's remember how to form the genitive case:

Masculine Nouns	Feminine Nouns	Neuter Nouns
If the noun ends in a consonant, add -а .	Replace -а with -и or -ы . Replace -я with -и .	Don't change the endings in the personal names. Replace -е with -я in places. Replace -о with -а .

For Example:

1. У меня нет...

U menya net...

"I don't have..."

With Feminine Nouns:

Dictionary Form	Genitive Case	Romanization	"English"
собака	собаки	<i>sobaki</i>	"a dog"
квартира	квартиры	<i>kvartiry</i>	"an apartment"
работа	работы	<i>raboty</i>	"a job," "work"
ручка	ручки	<i>ruchki</i>	"a pen"
девушка	девушки	<i>devushki</i>	"a girlfriend"

With Masculine Nouns:

Dictionary Form	Genitive Case	Romanization	"English"
телефон	телефона	<i>telefona</i>	"a phone (or a phone number)"
друг	друга	<i>druga</i>	"a friend"
билет	билета	<i>bileta</i>	"a ticket"
компьютер	компьютера	<i>kompjutera</i>	"a computer"
блокнот	блокнота	<i>bloknota</i>	"notebook"

With Neuter Nouns:

Genitive Case	Romanization	"English"
пива	<i>piva</i>	"beer"

вина	<i>vina</i>	"wine"
белья	<i>belja</i>	"bed sheets," "underwear"
пальто	<i>pal'to</i>	"a coat"
пианино	<i>pianino</i>	"the piano"

Note: Some neuter nouns, most of which are borrowed words, never change no matter what case we use them in:

Genitive Case	Romanization	"English"
пальто	<i>pal'to</i>	"a coat"
пианино	<i>pianino</i>	"the piano"
видео	<i>video</i>	"video"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #7

Don't Answer the Russian Questions Incorrectly!

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 8 Grammar

7

RUSSIAN

1. ОФИЦЕР Здравствуйте, Ваш паспорт, пожалуйста.
ТАМОЖНИ:
2. ДЖОН: Вот, пожалуйста.
3. ОФИЦЕР Сколько Вы пробудете в России?
ТАМОЖНИ:
4. ДЖОН: 12 дней.
5. ОФИЦЕР Где Вы будете жить?
ТАМОЖНИ:
6. ДЖОН: в отеле Голден Эпл.
7. ОФИЦЕР Какая цель Вашего приезда в Москву?
ТАМОЖНИ:
8. ДЖОН: В основном бизнес, но хочу и немного попутешествовать.
9. ОФИЦЕР Хорошо, спасибо.
ТАМОЖНИ:

ROMANIZATION

1. CUSTOMS Zdrastvuite, Vash pasport, pozhalusta.
OFFICER:
2. JOHN: Vot, pozhalusta.

CONT'D OVER

3. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Skol'ko vy probudete v Rossii?
4. JOHN: dvenatsats dniei.
5. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Gde Vy budete zhit'?
6. JOHN: v otele Golden Apple.
7. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Kakaya tsel' Vashevo priezda v Moskvu?
8. JOHN: v osnovnom biznes, no hochu ee nemnogo poputeshestvovat'.
9. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Horosho, spasibo.

ENGLISH

1. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Hello. Your passport, please.
2. JOHN: Here, please.
3. CUSTOMS OFFICER: How long will you stay in Russia?
4. JOHN: Twelve days.

CONT'D OVER

5. CUSTOMS Where will you live?
 OFFICER:
6. JOHN: In the Golden Apple hotel.
7. CUSTOMS What is the purpose of your visit to Moscow?
 OFFICER:
8. JOHN: Mainly business, but I would also like to travel a little.
9. CUSTOMS Okay, thank you.
 OFFICER:

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
какой, какая, какое, какие	kakoy, kakaya, kakoye, kakiye	what kind	adjective	
в основном	v osnovnom	mainly, mostly	adverb	
пожалуйста	pozhaluysta	please; you are welcome	interjection	
день	den'	day	noun	masculine
жить	zhit'	to live, to stay	verb	
цель	tsel'	purpose, goal	noun	feminine
паспорт	pasport	passport	noun	masculine
Сколько	skol'ko	how much, how many, how long	numeral pronoun	

Ваш	vash	your (polite or plural)	pronoun
быть	byt'	to be	verb
Здравствуйте	Zdrastvuite	hello	exclamation
где	gde	where	pronoun
приезд	priезд	arrival, visit	noun
но	no	but	conjunction
хотеть	hotet'	to want	verb
немного	nemnogo	a little, not much	adverb
путешествовать	puteshestvovat'	to travel	verb
хорошо	horosho	okay, good, well, fine	particle; adverb
Спасибо	Spasibo	thank you	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Какой это ресторан, французский? <i>Kakoy eto ryestoran, frantsuzskiy?</i> "What kind of restaurant is this? Is it French?"	Какой у Вас бизнес? <i>Kakoy u Vas biznyes?</i> "What kind of business do you do?"
Посмотрите в камеру, пожалуйста. <i>Posmotrite v kameru, pozhaluysta.</i> "Look at the camera, please."	Быстрее, пожалуйста. <i>Bystreye, pozhaluysta.</i> "Faster (hurry up), please."

<p>- Спасибо. - Пожалуйста. - <i>Spasibo. - Pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>"Thank you." -"You are welcome."</p>	<p>Ваш билет, пожалуйста. <i>Vash bilet, pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>"Your ticket, please." (formal)</p>
<p>Я убираю в своей комнате каждый день. <i>Ya ubirayu v svoyey komnate kazhdyy den'.</i></p> <p>"I clean my room every day."</p>	<p>Он весь день сидит дома. <i>On ves' den' sidit doma.</i></p> <p>"He's been sitting at home all day."</p>
<p>Какой странный день! <i>Kakoy strannyy den'!</i></p> <p>"What a strange day!"</p>	<p>Где ты живёшь? <i>Gdye ty zhivyosh'?</i></p> <p>"Where do you live?"</p>
<p>Она хотела бы здесь жить. <i>Ona hotyela by zdyes' zhit'.</i></p> <p>"She'd like to live here."</p>	<p>Цель моего приезда – бизнес. <i>Tsyel' moyego priyedza – biznyes.</i></p> <p>"The purpose of my visit is business."</p>
<p>Женщина достигла цели. <i>Zhyenschina dostigla tsyeli.</i></p> <p>"A woman achieved her goal."</p>	<p>Вот, это наши паспорта. <i>Vot, eto nashi pasporta.</i></p> <p>"Here, these are our passports."</p>
<p>Сколько вам лет? <i>Skol'ko vam let?</i></p> <p>"How old are you?"</p>	<p>Сколько у тебя осталось денег? <i>Skol'ko u tebya ostalos' deneg?</i></p> <p>"How much money do you have left?"</p>
<p>Сколько сувениров ты купил? <i>Skol'ko suvenirov ty kupil?</i></p> <p>"How many souvenirs did you buy?"</p>	<p>Как Ваша фамилия? <i>Kak Vasha familiya?</i></p> <p>"What's your last name?"</p>
<p>Какая Ваша любимая кухня? <i>Kakaya Vasha lyubimaya kuhnya?</i></p> <p>"What's your favorite cuisine?"</p>	<p>Это Ваши вещи? <i>Eto Vashi vyeschi?</i></p> <p>"Are these your things?"</p>

<p>Нам надо быть в аэропорту в два часа. <i>Nam nado byt' v aeroporu v dva chasa.</i> "We have to be at the airport at two o'clock."</p>	<p>Здравствуйте, давно не виделись! <i>Zdravstvuyte, davno nye videlis'!</i> "Hello, long time no see!"</p>
<p>Здравствуйте, Вы откуда? <i>Zdravstvuyte, Vy otkuda?</i> "Hello, where are you from?"</p>	<p>Здравствуйте, вы - Павел Иванович? <i>Zdravstvuyte, vy - Pavel Ivanovich?</i> "Hello, are you Pavel Ivanovich?"</p>
<p>Где ты изучал русский язык? <i>Gde ty izuchal russkiy yazyk?</i> "Where did you learn Russian?"</p>	<p>Где твои сумки? <i>Gde tvoi sumki?</i> "Where are your bags?"</p>
<p>Я хочу пойти, но у меня нет времени. <i>Ya hochu poyti, no u myenya nyet vryemyeni.</i> "I want to go, but I don't have time."</p>	<p>Я хочу отдохнуть. <i>Ya hochu otdochnut'.</i> "I want to take a rest."</p>
<p>Он не хочет пить, не заставляй его. <i>On nye hochyet pit', nye zastavlyay yego.</i> "He doesn't want to drink; don't force him to."</p>	<p>Я немного устал. <i>Ya nyemnogo ustal.</i> "I'm a little tired."</p>
<p>Он немного говорит по-русски. <i>On nyemnogo govorit po-russki.</i> "He speaks a little Russian."</p>	<p>Я хочу немного сыра. <i>Ya hochu nyemnogo syra.</i> "I'd like a little cheese."</p>
<p>Мы путешествовали по Европе 10 дней. <i>My putyeshyestvovali po Yevropye 10 dnyey.</i> "We traveled around Europe for ten days."</p>	<p>Он много путешествует. <i>On mnogo putyeshyestvuyet.</i> "He travels a lot."</p>
<p>Я люблю путешествовать. <i>Ya lyublyu putyeshyestvovat'.</i> "I like to travel."</p>	<p>Вы любите путешествовать? <i>Vy lyubitye putyeshyestvovat'?</i> "Do you like to travel?"</p>

Вы хорошо себя чувствуете? <i>Vy horoshо syebya chuvstvuyetъ?</i> "Do you feel okay?"	Он хорошо говорит по-русски. <i>On horoshо govorit po-russki.</i> "He speaks Russian well."
Спасибо за гостеприимство. <i>Spasibo za gostyepriimstvo.</i> "Thanks for your hospitality."	Большое спасибо! <i>Bol'shoye spasibo!</i> "Thank you very much!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is a Basic Understanding of Russian Verbs and Tenses.

Сколько Вы пробудете в России?

"How long will you stay in Russia?"

Russian verbs have only three basic tenses: present, past, and future. But things called "aspects" complicate this simplicity. We use aspects to indicate whether an action was completed or is still ongoing, and we call them "the imperfective aspect" and "the perfective aspect." Just like in English, we only use them in the past and future tenses. But in English, we use extra verbs like "had" and "have," for example "I stayed" and "I've been staying," where the first one indicates the complete action, and the second one implies that the action is ongoing. So we use aspects in Russian to show this difference. Aspects are created by changing the **prefixes**. Tenses, which indicate when an action happened (past, present, future), are created by the **endings**. So what do we have left that is constant? The **stems**.

First, let's take a look at the Russian verbs in general in three tenses. We'll start with the verb "to be."

Present Tense:

1. *byt'*
быть
"to be"

Unlike English, the Russian "to be" doesn't serve as an auxiliary verb in the present tense, so the sentence "I am a student" sounds like "I student" in Russian... Я студент.

Past Tense:

1. *byl, byla, bylo, byli*
был, была, было, были
"was"/"were" (masculine, feminine, neuter, plural)

The meaning and the usage is almost identical to English. The things that need attention are **gender** and **number**.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Он был в Москве.	<i>On byl v Moskve.</i>	"He was/has been to Moscow."
Она была расстроена.	<i>Ona byla rastroena.</i>	"She was upset."
Они были счастливы.	<i>Oni byi schaslivy.</i>	"They were happy."

Future Tense:

1. *budu, budet, budem, budut*
буду (first person singular, "I," "me,"), будем (first person plural, "we"), будешь (second person singular, "you"), будете (second person singular, "you"), будет (third person singular, "he/she/it"), будут (third person plural, "they")
"will"/"will be"

The attention is on the **person** and **number**. The usage is the same as in English, but creating the future tense using this verb will indicate the imperfective aspect.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
---------	--------------	-----------

Я буду в Москве завтра.	<i>Ya budu v Moskve zavtra.</i>	"I will be in Moscow tomorrow."
Мы будем ждать вас.	<i>My budem zhdat' vas.</i>	"We will wait for you."
Ты будешь мне писать?	<i>Ty budesh mne pisat'?</i>	"Will you write to me?"
Вы будете смотреть этот фильм?	<i>Vy budete smotret' etot fil'm?</i>	"Will you watch this movie?"
Он будет танцевать?	<i>On budet tantsevat'?</i>	"Will he dance?"
Они не будут пить.	<i>Oni ne budut pit'.</i>	"They won't drink."

Forming the Perfective and Imperfective Aspects

As it is written above, the perfective and imperfective verbs in Russian differ by prefixes.

Note: When you are unsure of which aspect to use, it's better to use the imperfective: it will provide your friend with a better understanding than when you mistakenly use the perfective form.

Imperfective (incomplete, ongoing, interrupted, or repeated actions)

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Я делала прическу.	<i>Ya delala prichosku.</i>	"I was doing my hair."/"I did my hair." (if repeated)
Он звонил другу.	<i>On zvonil drugu.</i>	"He was calling his friend."/"He called his friend." (if repeated)
Она будет писать.	<i>Ona budet pisat'.</i>	"She will be writing."/"She will write." (if repeated)

Perfective (completed, finished actions)

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Я сделала причёску	<i>ya zdelala prichosku</i>	"I (have/had) my hair done."
Он позвонил другу	<i>on pozvonil drugu</i>	"He (has/had) called his friend."
Она напишет	<i>ona napishet</i>	"She will write/will have written."

So what do we know about Russian verbs at this point?

Russian verbs come in...

Two aspects: imperfective, perfective

Three tenses: present, past, future

The Prefix **по-**

One of the interesting qualities of Russian verbs is that adding or dropping just one letter might drastically change the sense or at least the tone and flavor of the word. Luckily, each word has its essential part called the "stem" that keeps the changes within certain boundaries. In this lesson, we came across the prefix **по-** in the word **попутешествовать**.

The word **путешествовать** itself means "to travel." Adding the prefix **по-** makes this word sound softer and makes you sound more modest and a little coy. It **diminishes** the importance of the act. It makes it sound shorter, smaller, and less significant, and it makes you seem even less of a show-off. It can also indicate that the act is temporary and is over soon. All in all, let's translate it as "a little." So, in the case of "travel," we'll get something like "to travel around a bit."

For Example:

Verbs (dict. form)	Romanizati on	"English"	Plus по-	Romanizati on	"English"
есть	<i>iest'</i>	"to eat"	поесть	<i>poiest'</i>	"to have (something) to eat"
спать	<i>spat'</i>	"to sleep"	поспать	<i>pospat'</i>	"to take a nap"
гулять	<i>gulyat'</i>	"to walk"	погулять	<i>pogulyat'</i>	"to take a walk"
смотреть	<i>smotret'</i>	"to watch"	посмотреть	<i>posmotret'</i>	"to have a look"
говорить	<i>govorit'</i>	"to speak"	Поговорить	<i>pogovorit'</i>	"to have a chat"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #8

Get What You Want Using Russian

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 9 Grammar

8

RUSSIAN

1. **ДЖОН:** Скажите, пожалуйста, как доехать до станции метро Тверская?
2. **ПРОДАВЕЦ**
БИЛЕТОВ: Сначала автобусом до Речного Вокзала, потом пересядете на метро до Тверской.
3. **ДЖОН:** А сколько стоит билет до Речного Вокзала?
4. **ПРОДАВЕЦ**
БИЛЕТОВ: 48 рублей.
5. **ДЖОН:** А во сколько автобус отправляется?
6. **ПРОДАВЕЦ**
БИЛЕТОВ: в 1:30.
7. **ДЖОН:** Вот, 50 рублей.
8. **ПРОДАВЕЦ**
БИЛЕТОВ: Пожалуйста, Ваш билет и сдача.
9. **ДЖОН:** Спасибо.

ROMANIZATION

1. JOHN: Skazhite, pozhalusta, kak doiehat' do stancii metro Tverskaya?
2. TICKET SELLER: Snachala avtobusom do Rechnogo Vokzala, potom peresyadete na metro do Tverskoi.

CONT'D OVER

3. JOHN: A skol'ko stoit bilet do Rechnogo Vokzala?
4. TICKET SELLER: Sorok vosem' rublei.
5. JOHN: A vo skol'ko avtobus otpravlyaetsa?
6. TICKET SELLER: chas tritsat'.
7. JOHN: Vot, pyat'desyat rublei I zdacha.
8. TICKET SELLER: Pozhalusta, Vash bilet.
9. JOHN: Spasibo.

ENGLISH

1. JOHN: Excuse me, how can I get to the Tverskaya subway station?
2. TICKET SELLER: First, take a bus to Rechnoi Vokzal, then change to the subway and go to Tverskaya.
3. JOHN: How much is the ticket to Rechnoi Vokzal?
4. TICKET SELLER: Forty-eight rubles.
5. JOHN: And what time does the bus leave?
6. TICKET SELLER: At one-thirty.
7. JOHN: Here, fifty rubles.

CONT'D OVER

8. TICKET SELLER: Here you are, your ticket and change.

9. JOHN: Thank you.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
на	na	on; at, for	preposition	
во сколько	vo skol'ko	at what time	phrase	
до	do	until, 'til; to	preposition	
потом	potom	then, later, after that	adverb	
автобус	aftobus	bus	noun	masculine
билет	bilet	ticket	noun	masculine
пересесть	pyeryesyest'	to change, to transfer	verb	
сколько стоит	skol'ko stoit	how much (price)	phrase	
доехать	dayekhat'	to get to (by transport), to get (to a place)	verb	
станция	stantsiya	station	noun	feminine
как	kak	how	pronoun	
сначала	snachala	at first; in the beginning, first, firstly	adverb	

скажите	skazhitye	tell (me); excuse me	verb/interjection
отправляться	otpravlyat'sya	to depart, to set off, to take off, to leave,	verb
Сдача	Sdacha	change (money)	noun
метро	metro	subway	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

У меня нет планов на завтра. <i>U myenya nyet planov na zavtra.</i> "I don't have any plans for tomorrow."	Деньги на столе, возьми. <i>Dyen'gi na stolye, voz'mi.</i> "The money is on the table; take it."
Во сколько ты придёшь? <i>Vo skol'ko ty pridyosh'?</i> What time will you come?	Во сколько ты заканчиваешь работу? <i>Vo skol'ko ty zakanchivayesh' rabotu?</i> "What time do you finish your work?"
Во сколько открываются банки? <i>Vo skol'ko otkryvayutsya banki?</i> "What time do the banks open?"	Во сколько мы сможем встретиться? <i>Vo skol'ko my smozhem vstretil'sya?</i> "What time can we meet?"
Этот ресторан работает до 11 вечера. <i>Etat restaran rabotayet da 11 vechera.</i> "This restaurant works until 6 p.m."	До вокзала, пожалуйста. <i>Da vakzala, pazhalusta.</i> "To the railway station, please."
До завтра! <i>Da zaftra!</i> "See you tomorrow!"	Я работаю до семи часов. <i>Ya rabotayu da semi chasof.</i> "I work till seven o'clock."

<p>Как доехать до Москвы? <i>Kak dayekhat' da Maskvy?</i> "How can I get to Moscow?"</p>	<p>Я потом тебе напишу, хорошо? <i>Ya potom tyebye napishu, horosho?</i> "I'll write to you later, okay?"</p>
<p>Он пригласил меня, а потом сказал, что занят. <i>On priglasil myenya, a potom skazal, chto zanyat.</i> "He invited me and then said he was busy."</p>	<p>Что мне потом следует сделать? <i>Chto mne potom sleduyet sdelat'?</i> "What should I do after that?"</p>
<p>Я добираюсь на работу на автобусе. <i>Ya dabirayus' na rabotu na aftobuse.</i> "I get to work by bus."</p>	<p>Он приехал автобусом, а я пришёл пешком. <i>On priyekhal aftobusam, a ya prishol peshkom.</i> "He came by bus, and I came on foot."</p>
<p>Вы не доещете до вокзала автобусом. <i>Vy ne dayedete da vakzala aftobusam.</i> "You won't/can't get to the railway station by bus."</p>	<p>Следующий автобус в пять. <i>Sledushchiy aftobus f pyat'.</i> "The next bus is at five."</p>
<p>Мне нужно забронировать билеты на самолёт. <i>Mne nuzhno zabronirovat' biletys na samolot.</i> "I need to book airplane tickets."</p>	<p>У тебя есть билет на концерт "Rolling Stones"? <i>U tebya yest' bilet na kantsert "Rolling Stones"?</i> "Do you have a ticket for the "Rolling Stones" concert?"</p>
<p>Дайте, пожалуйста, два билета на это шоу. <i>Dayte, pazhalusta, dva biletta na eta shou.</i> "Please, give me two tickets to this show."</p>	<p>Пять билетов на спектакль, пожалуйста. <i>Pyat' biletov na spektakl', pazhalusta.</i> "Five tickets for the show, please."</p>
<p>Мне надо купить билеты на самолёт. <i>Mne nado kupit' biletys na samalyot.</i> "I need to buy some plane tickets."</p>	<p>Ваш билет, пожалуйста. <i>Vash bilet, pazhalusta.</i> "Your ticket, please." (formal)</p>

<p>Мне нужно делать пересадку на Пушкинской?</p> <p><i>Mnye nuzhno dyelat' pyeryesadku na Pushkinskoy?</i></p> <p>"Do I have to transfer at Pushkinskaya?"</p>	<p>Я доехал без пересадки.</p> <p><i>Ya doyehal byez pyeryesadki.</i></p> <p>"I came without a change/directly."</p>
<p>Я забыл пересесть на Пушкинской.</p> <p><i>Ya zabyl pyeryesyest' na Pushkinskoy.</i></p> <p>"I forgot to transfer on Pushkinskaya."</p>	<p>Вам нужно пересесть на другую ветку.</p> <p><i>Vam nuzhno pyeryesyest' na druguyu vyetku.</i></p> <p>"You need to transfer to another line."</p>
<p>Сколько стоит доехать до Тверской?</p> <p><i>Skol'ko stoit doyehat' do Tverskoy?</i></p> <p>"How much is it to Tverskaya?" (asking a taxi driver)</p>	<p>Сколько стоит этот бутерброд?</p> <p><i>Skol'ko stoit etot butyerbrod?</i></p> <p>"How much is this sandwich?"</p>
<p>Извините, как доехать до Красной Площади?</p> <p><i>Izvinite, kak daekhat' da Krasnay Ploshchadi?</i></p> <p>"Excuse me; how can I get to the Red Square?"</p>	<p>Как Вы доехали?</p> <p><i>Kak Vy dayekhali?</i></p> <p>"How was your trip?"/"Did you arrive okay?"</p>
<p>Я доехал домой на метро.</p> <p><i>Ya dayekhal damoy na metro.</i></p> <p>"I came home by subway."</p>	<p>Как доехать до Москвы?</p> <p><i>Kak dayekhat' da Maskvy?</i></p> <p>"How can I get to Moscow?"</p>
<p>Я буду ждать тебя на станции метро Пушкинская.</p> <p><i>Ya budu zhdat' tyebya na stantsii myetro Pushkinskaya.</i></p> <p>"I'll be waiting for you at Pushkinskaya subway station."</p>	<p>Как вы себя чувствуете?</p> <p><i>Kak vy sebya chustvuyete?</i></p> <p>"How do you feel?" (asking condition)</p>

<p>Как у тебя дела? <i>Kak u tebya dela?</i> "How are you?"</p>	<p>Сначала прочитайте текст, а затем ответьте на вопросы. <i>Snachala prachitayte tekst, a zatem atvet'te na voprozy.</i> "Read the text first and then answer the questions."</p>
<p>Скажите, я смогу дойти пешком до Тверской? <i>Skazhitye, ya smogu doyti pyeshkom do Tverskoy?</i> "Excuse me; how can I get to Tverskaya if I go on foot?"</p>	<p>Скажите, пожалуйста, который час? <i>Skazhitye, pozhaluysta, kotoryy chas?</i> "Excuse me, what time is it?"</p>
<p>Скажите, как пройти к метро? <i>Skazhitye, kak proyti k myetro?</i> "Excuse me, how can I get to the subway?"</p>	<p>Скажите, пожалуйста, какая это станция? <i>Skazhitye, pozhaluysta, kakaya eto stantsiya?</i> "Excuse me, what station is this?"</p>
<p>Скажите, это не ваши ключи? <i>Skazhitye, eto nye vashi klyuchi?</i> "Excuse me, are these your keys?"</p>	<p>Скажите, пожалуйста, который час? <i>Skazhitye, pozhaluysta, kotoryy chas?</i> "Excuse me, what time is it?"</p>
<p>До отправления осталось 5 минут. <i>Do otpravlyeniya ostalos' 5 minut.</i> "There are five minutes left until departure."</p>	<p>Посадка окончена, поезд отправляется. <i>Posadka okonchena, poyezd otpravlyayetsya.</i> "The boarding is over; the train is setting off."</p>
<p>Пожалуйста, без сдачи. <i>Pozhaluysta, byez sdachi.</i> "Here you are (giving the money), keep the change."</p>	<p>Вы забыли дать мне сдачу. <i>Vy zabyli dat' mnye sdachu.</i> "You forgot to give me my change."</p>

Я буду ждать тебя на станции метро Пушкинская.

Ya budu zhdat' tyebya na stantsii myetro Pushkinskaya.

"I'll be waiting for you at Pushkinskaya subway station."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is to How to Ask the Directions and further introduction of the Genitive and Instrumental Case.

Сначала автобусом до Речного Вокзала, потом пересядете на метро до Тверской.

"First, take a bus to Rechnoi Vokzal, then change to the subway to go to Tverskaya."

In this lesson, we have to go back to our well-known **genitive case** and learn its next function.

Let's remember the situations in which we can use the genitive case:

1. Use the genitive case to express possession (in English, it's indicated with the apostrophe or the preposition "of"). Note: never use it in a sentence starting "I have...!!!"
2. Use the genitive case in the context "from..."
3. Use the genitive case with the negation "I don't have."

Its fourth function will help us talk about directions. Let's take a look at the examples from our dialogue:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
до станции	<i>do stancii</i>	"to the station"
до Тверской	<i>do Tverskoi</i>	"to Tverskaya"

до Речного Вокзала

do Rechnogo Vokzala

"to the River (Riverside)
Station"

When translated into English, the particle **до** means "to," but its literal meaning in Russian is "until" or "til." Therefore, we can also use **до** in all the other meanings we use "until" for in English:

до + time, + destination, and + event. So, we have our fourth function, the "until" function. We must change all the nouns after **до** into the genitive case, and therefore, also change adjectives into the genitive case as well because all Russian adjectives must agree with nouns in number, gender, and case.

For Example:

1. **станция** à **станции**

2. **Тверская** à **Тверской** (adjective, agrees with the noun **станция**: feminine, singular, genitive)

3. **Речной** à **Речного** (adjective, agrees with the noun **вокзал**: masculine, singular, genitive)

4. **Вокзал** à **Вокзала**

We will learn about adjectives a little later. For now, take a look at some more examples.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Дозвониться до друга	<i>dozvonitsa do druga</i>	"to get through (by phone) to a friend"
Ждать до вечера	<i>zhdat' do vechera</i>	"to wait 'til the evening"
Лететь до Москвы	<i>letet' do Moskvy</i>	"to fly to/until Moscow"
Плыть до берега	<i>plyt' do berega</i>	"to swim to/until the shore"

The Instrumental Case

The instrumental case illustrates the concepts of "with," "by," and "by means of." In other words, it represents the instrument that we use to carry out the action. In English, we normally do this using the words "by," "using," or "with," but be careful; in English, these words can have different meanings, so it's important to recognize when they mean "by means of."

In our dialogue, the representative of the instrumental case is the word *автобусом* (*avtobusom*), meaning "by bus." The word "bus" itself is *автобус*, and adding the ending *-ом* puts it into the instrumental case.

Forming the Instrumental Case

Here, we'll give you only the most common rules, but there will be some additions later.

Masculine Nouns	Feminine Nouns	Neuter Nouns
All consonants, add -ом.	Replace -а with -ой.	Add -м. Exceptions: метро, такси, etc.

For Example:

With Masculine Nouns: _____

- карандаш (*karandash*) "pencil"

Я пишу карандашом.

Ya pishu karandashom.

"I write with a pencil."

- автобус (*avtobus*) "bus"

Он приехал автобусом.

On priechal avtobusom.

"He came by bus."

With Feminine Nouns:

- ручка (*ruchka*) "pen"

Я пишу ручкой.

Ya pishu ruchkoi.

"I write with a pen."

- краска (*kraska*) "paint," "dye"

Она покрасила забор белой краской.

Ona pokrasila zabor beloi kraskoi.

"She painted the fence with a white paint."

- ложка (*lozhka*) "spoon"

Он ест суп ложкой.

On iest soop lozhkoi.

"He's eating soup with a spoon."

With Neuter Nouns:

- пиво (*pivo*) "beer"

Он отравился пивом.

On ottravilsya pivom.

"He got poisoned by beer."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #9

Your One-Stop Shop for All Your Russian Needs

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar

9

RUSSIAN

1. **ДЖОН:** Дайте, пожалуйста, 2 бутылки воды, пачку печенья, пакет молока и 4 батарейки.
2. **ПРОДАВЕЦ:** Это всё?
3. **ДЖОН:** А что это там, на полке?
4. **ПРОДАВЕЦ:** Это свежие булочки, очень вкусные, попробуйте.
5. **ДЖОН:** Хорошо, дайте 2 штуки, пожалуйста.
6. **ПРОДАВЕЦ:** Пожалуйста. 318 рублей.

ROMANIZATION

1. JOHN: Daite, pozhalusta, dve butylki vody, pachku pechenia, paket moloka ee chetyre batareiki.
2. CLERK: eto vsyo?
3. JOHN: a chto eto tam, na polke?
4. CLERK: eto svezhie bulochki, ochen' vkusnye, poprobuite.
5. JOHN: horosho, daite dve shtuki, pozhalusta.
6. CLERK: pozhalusta. Trista vosemnatsat' rublei.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. JOHN: Give me, please, two bottles of water, a pack of cookies, a carton of milk, and four batteries.
2. CLERK: Is that it?
3. JOHN: Oh, what is it there on the shelf?
4. CLERK: Those are fresh buns, very tasty. Have a try.
5. JOHN: Okay, give me two, please.
6. CLERK: Here you are. 318 rubles.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
всё	vsyo	all, everything	pronoun	
полка	polka	shelf	noun	
пачка	pachka	pack	noun	
молоко	moloko	milk	noun	neutral
это	eto	this is, that is, it's	pronoun	
там	tam	there	pronoun	
вода	voda	water	noun	feminine
печенье	pechenie	cookies	noun	
бутылка	butylka	bottle	noun	

пакет	paket	bag, plastic bag, paper bag	noun
дайте	daytye	give	verb (polite command)
батарейка	batareika	battery	noun
на	na	on; at, for	preposition
свежий	svezhiy	fresh	adjective
булочка	bulochka	bun, muffin	noun
очень	ochen'	very, very much	adverb
вкусный	vkusnyy	tasty, delicious	adjective
пробовать	probvat'	try, taste	verb
штука	shtuka	thing, item	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Это всё. <i>Eto vsyo.</i> "That's all."	Всё будет хорошо. <i>Vsyo budyet horosh.</i> "Everything will be okay."
Дайте мне словарь с полки, пожалуйста. <i>Dayte mnye slovar' s polki, pozhaluysta.</i> "Give me a dictionary from the shelf, please."	Возьми ключи с полки. <i>Voz'mi klyuchi s polki.</i> "Take the keys from the shelf."
Пожалуйста, пачку сока и шоколадку. <i>Pozhaluysta, pachku soka i shokoladku.</i> "A pack of juice and a bar of chocolate, please."	Мне надо купить молоко. I need to buy some milk.

<p>Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eto ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"</p>	<p>Это наши друзья. <i>Eto nashi druz'ya.</i> "These are our friends."</p>
<p>Я никогда там не был. <i>Ya nikogda tam ne byl.</i> "I've never been there."</p>	<p>Я там живу. <i>Ya tam zhivu.</i> "I live there."</p>
<p>У меня кончилась вода. <i>U myenya konchilas' voda.</i> "I'm out of water."</p>	<p>Не пейте воду из крана. <i>Nye pyeytye vodu iz krana.</i> "Don't drink tap water."</p>
<p>Я люблю печенье в шоколаде. <i>Ya lyublyu pyechnye v shokoladye.</i> "I like chocolate-covered cookies."</p>	<p>Дайте бутылку воды, пожалуйста <i>Daite butylku vody, pozhaluista</i> "Give me a bottle of water please."</p>
<p>Мы купили пять бутылок пива. <i>My kupili pyat' butylok piva.</i> "We bought five bottles of beer."</p>	<p>Что у тебя в пакете? <i>Chto u tyebya v paketye?</i> "What do you have in your (plastic) bag?"</p>
<p>Дай мне словарь с полки, пожалуйста. <i>Day mnye slovar' s polki, pozhaluysta.</i> "Give me a dictionary from the shelf, please."</p>	<p>Хочешь, я дам тебе её адрес? <i>Hochyesh', ya dam tyebye yeyo adres?</i> "I can give you her address if you want?"</p>
<p>У меня нет планов на завтра. <i>U myenya nyet planov na zavtra.</i> "I don't have any plans for tomorrow."</p>	<p>Деньги на столе, возьми. <i>Dyen'gi na stolye, voz'mi.</i> "The money is on the table; take it."</p>
<p>Скажите, этот сыр свежий? <i>Skazhite, etot syr svezhii?</i> "Excuse me; is this cheese fresh?"</p>	<p>Это свежая газета? <i>Eto svezhaya gazeta?</i> "Is it a fresh newspaper?"</p>

<p>Мне тоже очень понравился этот фильм!</p> <p><i>Mne tozhe ochen' ponravilsya etot fil'm!</i></p> <p>"I liked this movie very much, too!" ("I also liked this movie!")</p>	<p>Я очень устал сегодня.</p> <p><i>Ya ochen' ustal segodnya.</i></p> <p>"I'm very tired today."</p>
<p>Это очень вкусный торт, обязательно попробуйте.</p> <p><i>Eto ochyen' vkusnyy tort, obyazatel'no poprobuytye.</i></p> <p>"It's a very tasty pie/cake; you should definitely try it."</p>	<p>Очень вкусно, спасибо.</p> <p><i>Ochyen' vkusno, spasibo.</i></p> <p>"It's very tasty, thank you."</p>
<p>Я пробовал этот коктейль, ничего особенного.</p> <p><i>Ya proboval etot koklyeyl', nichyego osobyennogo.</i></p> <p>"I've tried this cocktail, nothing special."</p>	<p>Турист попробовал насекомое.</p> <p><i>Turist poproboval nasyekomoye.</i></p> <p>"The tourist tastes an insect."</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is The Plural Forms of Nouns and Adjectives in the Russian Language.

это свежие булочки, очень вкусные, попробуйте.

"Those are fresh buns, very tasty. Have a try."

In the Russian language, there are six different forms of plurals and many different forms of each adjective (relating to the six cases, three genders, and plural). We will start by discussing the plurals.

Plurals

The Russian language is based on the **case** system. There are different plurals in each case. Let's review the cases first:

I. Nominative

The nominative case is the dictionary form for nouns.

For Example:

Russian	"English"
страна	"country" (feminine)
город	"city" (male)
море	"sea" (neuter)

II. Genitive: Use the genitive case to express possession (in English, we indicate the possessive with the apostrophe or the preposition "of").

For Example:

1. собака **друга**
"the dog of a friend"

Use the genitive case in the context "from..."

For Example:

1. Я из **Америки**.
"I'm from America."

Use the genitive case with negations, such as "I don't have."

For Example:

1. У меня нет **собаки**.

"I don't have a dog."

Use the genitive case in the context of "until," "'til (to)."

For Example:

1. **доехать до вокзала**

"to get to the railway station"

III. Dative: Use the dative case to designate that something is given or addressed to a person (or object). In English, we can call it the "to" case. The difficult part is the pronouns.

For Example:

1. **Дай мне воды.**

"Give (to) me some water."

Use the dative case to express conditions and emotions.

For Example:

1. **Ему холодно.**

"He's cold."

IV. Accusative: Use the accusative case to talk about the directions in the context of **в**, meaning "to."

For Example:

1. **Я еду в Москву.**

"I'm going to Moscow."

Use the accusative case to express desire: "I want..."

For Example:

1. Я хочу **собаку**.
"I want a dog."

V. Instrumental: The instrumental case illustrates the concepts of "with," "by," and "by means of."

For Example:

1. **Автобусом**
"by bus"

VI. Prepositional: We can also call the prepositional case the "locative" case because it shows the location, or where the action takes place. We use it with prepositions including **в** ("in" or "at"), **на** ("on" or "at"), and **о** ("about").

For Example:

Russian	"English"
в Мичигане	"in Michigan"
о стране	"about a/the country"
на море	"on the sea"

Formation

First, we will show you how to form the plurals in two of the cases: nominative and genitive. Knowing these, you will easily form sentences like "I have..." and "I don't have...," plus you will be able to talk about exact quantities.

The Nominative Case

In Russian, in the nominative case, you make a plural by using the letters **и**, **ы**, **я**, or **а**.

Masculine Nouns	Feminine Nouns	Neuter Nouns
If the noun ends in a consonant, add -ы . Replace -й with -и . Replace -ь with -и .	Replace -а with -и or -ы . Replace -я with -и . Replace -ь with -и .	Replace -е with -я in places. Replace -о with -а .

For Example:

Singular Nominative	Plural Nominative	"English"
штат	штаты	"state(s)"
страна	страны	"country(ies)"
здание	здания	"building(s)"
бой	бои	"battle(s)"
семья	семьи	"family(ies)"
окно	окна	"window(s)"
коњ	коњи	"horse(s)"
ночь	ночи	"night(s)"

The Genitive Case

Generally, the genitive case ends in **-ов** (masculine) or we cut it short (feminine). These rules refer to converting nouns from the nominative singular (the dictionary form). You'll find only the most common rules in the table below.

Masculine Nouns	Feminine Nouns	Neuter Nouns
-----------------	----------------	--------------

Most (but not all) masculine nouns end in **-ов**.

If the noun ends in **-а**, then drop the **-а** (no ending).
If it ends in **-ь**, then drop the **-ь** and add **-ей**.
If it ends in a consonant + **-я**, then add **-ь**.
If it ends in a vowel + **-я**, then add **-й**.

If the noun ends in **-о**, then drop the **-о** (no ending).
If it ends in **-е**, the ending becomes **-ей**.
If it ends in **-ие**, the ending becomes **-ий**.

For Example:

Singular Genitive	Plural Genitive	"English"
штат	штатов	"state(s)"
страна	стран	"country(ies)"
здание	зданий	"building(s)"
город	городов	"city(ies)"
семья	семей	"family(ies)"
окно	окон	"window(s)"
билет	билетов	"ticket(s)"
ночь	ночей	"night(s)"

Note: If a feminine word ends in a double consonant, it is quite common to insert a vowel (о, е) for easy pronunciation.

For Example:

Singular Genitive	Plural Genitive	"English"
марка	марок	"stamp(s)"

девушка	девушек	"girl(s)"
сумка	сумок	"bag(s)"

Sample Sentences

Russian	"English"
У меня нет билетов.	"I don't have tickets."
В этом магазине нет сумок.	"There are no bags in this store."
У меня осталось 50 рублей.	"I have fifty rubles left."
Дайте 5 пачек печенья, пожалуйста.	"Give me five packs of cookies, please."

Note: When you refer to exact quantities (like "ten rubles"), you normally use the genitive case.

Adjectives

In the Russian language, there are many different forms of each adjective (relating to the six cases, three genders, and plural). The important point to remember is that adjectives, whatever their origin, must agree with the noun they describe. This means that there are several endings for each adjective. The **key** is just to learn the stem or dictionary form of each adjective, and then you can quickly form the rest. The dictionary form of a Russian adjective is normally the nominative, masculine form. This form will almost always end in the letters **-ый** or **-ий**.

Today we'll give you the examples of the adjectives for the nominative and genitive cases, the same as we've done with the plurals.

Formation

The sample words are **новый**, meaning "new," and **красивый**, meaning "beautiful."

Note: when we pluralize the adjective, gender doesn't matter anymore.

Construction	Nominative	Genitive		
Masculine	-ый	-ого		
Masculine	новый	красивый	нового	красивого
Feminine	-ая	-ой		
Feminine	новая	красивая	новой	красивой
Neuter	-ое	-ого		
Neuter	новое	красивое	нового	красивого
Plural	-ые	ых		
Plural	новые	красивые	новых	красивых

Nominative

Russian	"English"
Это новый дом.	"This is a new house."
Этот район очень красивый.	"This area is very beautiful."
У меня новая сумка.	"I have a new bag."
Она красивая девушка.	"She's a pretty girl."
Это новое здание.	"This is a new building."
Смотри, какое красивое небо.	"Look, what a beautiful sky."

У него новые ботинки.

"He's got new shoes."

У тебя красивые глаза.

"You have beautiful eyes."

Genitive

Russian

"English"

У меня нет нового костюма.

"I don't have a new suit."

Она хочет красивого парня.

"She wants (to have) a cute boyfriend."

**Мне не хватает новой антивирусной
программы.**

"I lack (I need) a new antivirus program."

**У него никогда не было красивой
подруги.**

"He's never had a beautiful (girl)friend."

Мы ещё не видели того нового

"We haven't seen that new building yet."

**Я никогда не видел такого
красивого моря.**

"I've never seen such a beautiful sea yet."

У него мало новых вещей.

"He's got very few new things (clothes)."

В Москве много красивых улиц.

"Moscow has lots of beautiful streets."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #10

How to Stay in Style in Russia

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar

10

RUSSIAN

1. ДЖОН: Здравствуйте. Неделю назад я забронировал номер в этом отеле.
2. АДМИНИСТРАТ Ваše полное имя, пожалуйста.
ОР:
3. ДЖОН: John Young. Вот мой паспорт.
4. АДМИНИСТРАТ Номер 501, пятый этаж. Вот ключи.
ОР:
5. ДЖОН: Скажите, в номере есть беспроводной интернет?
6. АДМИНИСТРАТ Есть.
ОР:
7. ДЖОН: А во сколько завтрак?
8. АДМИНИСТРАТ С 6 утра.
ОР:

ROMANIZATION

1. JOHN: Zdrastvuite. Nedelyu nazad ya zabroniroval nomer v etom otele.
2. FRONT DESK: Vashe polnoe imya, pozhalusta.
3. JOHN: John Young. Vot moi pasport.

CONT'D OVER

4. FRONT DESK: Nomer pyatsot odin, pyatyi etazh. Vot klyuchi.
5. JOHN: Skazhite, v nomere iest' besprovodnoi internet?
6. FRONT DESK: Iest'.
7. JOHN: A vo skol'ko zavtrak?
8. FRONT DESK: S shesti utra.

ENGLISH

1. JOHN: Hello, I reserved a room in this hotel a week ago.
2. FRONT DESK: Your full name, please.
3. JOHN: John Young. Here's my passport.
4. FRONT DESK: Room 501, fifth floor. Here are your keys.
5. JOHN: Excuse me, is there wireless Internet in the room?
6. FRONT DESK: Yes, there is.
7. JOHN: And what time is breakfast?
8. FRONT DESK: From six o'clock in the morning.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Интернет	Internet	internet	noun	masculine
утро	utro	morning	noun	neutral
номер	nomer	a hotel room, a number	noun	
Этаж	Etazh	floor	noun	masculine
Беспроводной	besprovodnoi	wireless internet	phrase	
завтрак	zavtrak	breakfast	noun	masculine
бронировать	bronirovat'	to reserve, book	verb	
этот	etot	this (masculine)	demonstrative pronoun	
полное имя	polnoye imya	full name	phrase	
неделю назад	nedelyu nazad	a week ago	phrase	
ключ	klyuch	key	noun	masculine
с	S	with, starting from, from, since	preposition	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ты будешь в интернете сегодня?

Ty budyesh' v intyernyetye syegodnya?

"Will you be online today?"

Мы часто заказываем книги по

Интернету.

My chasto zakazyvayem knigi po Intyernyetu.

"We often order books by Internet. "

Он не ел с восьми утра.

On nye yel s vos'mi utra.

"He hasn't eaten since eight o'clock in the morning."

Мальчик проснулся утром.

Mal'chik prosnul'sya utrom.

"The boy woke up in the morning."

<p>Девочка проснулась утром. <i>Dyevochka prosnulas' utrom.</i> "A girl woke up in the morning."</p>	<p>Ты выходил из номера сегодня? <i>Tu vyhodil iz nomyera syegodnya?</i> "Have you gone out of your room today?"</p>
<p>Он весь день провёл в номере. <i>On vyes' dyen' provyol v nomyere.</i> "He spent the whole day in his hotel room."</p>	<p>Ваш номер на восьмом этаже. <i>Vash nomyer na vos'mom etazhye.</i> "Your room is on the eighth floor."</p>
<p>Мне нужен самый дешёвый номер. <i>Mnye nuzhyen samyy dyeshyovyy nomyer.</i> "I need the cheapest room."</p>	<p>Это двухместный номер? <i>Eto dvuhmyestnyy nomyer?</i> "Is this a twin room?"</p>
<p>Я хотел бы забронировать номер люкс. <i>Ya hotyel by zabronirovat' nomyer lyuks.</i> "I'd like to book a suite."</p>	<p>Я сегодня останусь в номере. <i>Ya syegodnya ostanus' v nomyere.</i> "I'll stay in my room today."</p>
<p>Это Ваш мобильный или домашний номер? <i>Eto Vash mobil'nyy ili domashniy nomyer?</i> "Is this your mobile or home number?"</p>	<p>Этот номер очень дорогой. <i>Etot nomyer ochyen' dorogoy.</i> "This hotel room is very expensive."</p>
<p>Я хотела бы забронировать номер на одного человека. <i>Ya hotyela by zabronirovat' nomyer na odnogo chyelovskyaka.</i> "I'd like to book a hotel room for one person."</p>	<p>Я живу в доме номер семь. <i>Ya zhivu v domye nomyer syem'.</i> "I live in house number seven."</p>
<p>Я живу на девятом этаже. <i>Ya zhivu na dyevyatom etazhye.</i> "I live on the ninth floor."</p>	<p>В этом отеле 7 этажей. <i>V etom otyelye 7 etazhyey.</i> "There are seven stories in this hotel."/"This hotel has seven stories."</p>
<p>На каком этаже ты живешь? <i>Na kakom etazhye ty zhivyesh'?</i> "What floor do you live on?"</p>	<p>Я только что позавтракал. <i>Ya tol'ko chto pozavtrakal.</i> "I've just had breakfast."</p>

<p>Пора завтракать, собирайся. <i>Pora zavtrakat', sobiraysya.</i></p> <p>"It's time for breakfast; get ready (get dressed, etc.)."</p>	<p>Завтрак очень важен. <i>Zavtrak ochyen' vazhyen.</i></p> <p>"Breakfast is very important."</p>
<p>Я хотел бы забронировать номер люкс. <i>Ya hotyel by zabronirovat' nomyer lyuks.</i></p> <p>"I'd like to book a suite."</p>	<p>Это двухместный номер? <i>Eto dvuhmyestnyy nomyer?</i></p> <p>"Is this a twin room?"</p>
<p>Ты видел этот фильм? <i>Ty vidyel etot fil'm?</i></p> <p>"Have you seen this film?" (informal)</p>	<p>Ты можешь дать мне этот фильм? <i>Tu mozhyesh' dat' mnye etot fil'm?</i></p> <p>"Can you give me this film?"</p>
<p>Какое Ваше полное имя? <i>Kakoye Vashye polnoye imya?</i></p> <p>"What is your full name?"</p>	<p>Я звонил Вам неделю назад. <i>Ya zvonil Vam nyedyelyu nazad.</i></p> <p>"I called you a week ago."</p>
<p>Я потерял ключи от машины. <i>Ya potyeryal klyuchi ot mashiny.</i></p> <p>"I lost my car keys."</p>	<p>У меня нет ключей от офиса. <i>U myenya nyet klyuchey ot ofisa.</i></p> <p>"I don't have the office keys."</p>
<p>Я забыл ключи дома. <i>Ya zabyyl klyuchi doma.</i></p> <p>"I forgot the keys at home."</p>	<p>Я потерял ключ! <i>Ya potyeryal klyuch!</i></p> <p>"I have lost the key!"</p>
<p>Где мои ключи? <i>Gdye moi klyuchi?</i></p> <p>"Where are my keys?"</p>	<p>Вот ключ от машины. <i>Vot klyuch ot mashiny.</i></p> <p>"Here's the car key."</p>
<p>Я ничего не ел с десяти утра. <i>Ya nichyego nye yel s dyesyati utra.</i></p> <p>"I haven't eaten since ten am."</p>	<p>Я свободна с пяти вечера. <i>Ya svobodna s pyati vyechyera.</i></p> <p>"I'm free from five o'clock p.m."</p>

Он не ел с восьми утра.

On nye yel s vos'mi utra.

"He hasn't eaten since eight o'clock in the morning."

Уроки начинаются с сентября.

Uroki nachinayutsya s cyentyabrya.

"The classes are starting in (from) September."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Past Tense of Russian verbs and Numerals.

Здравствуйте. Неделю назад я забронировал номер в этом отеле.

"Hello, I reserved a room in this hotel a week ago."

In this lesson, we will teach you how to form the past tense of Russian verbs from their infinitive form (the form you will find in the dictionary). We will also discuss the ordinal form of Russian numerals, picking up from BootCamp Lessons 4 and 5 where we talked about cardinal numbers. But first, let's get started on forming the past tense of Russian verbs!

Past Tense

Every changeable Russian word has an initial form. For nouns, it's the nominative singular form. For verbs, the initial form is called the infinitive. All dictionaries give Russian verbs in the infinitive form.

The infinitive form of most of Russian verbs ends in **-ТЬ** or **-ТИ**.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
бронировать	<i>bronirovat'</i>	"to reserve," "book"
звонить	<i>zvonit'</i>	"to call"
говорить	<i>govorit'</i>	"to speak"

идти	ittee	"to go"
вести	vestee	"to lead"

Formation

Forming past tense verbs in Russian is actually quite easy for two main reasons: first, because there is only one past tense form in Russian compared to numerous forms in English; and second, all we have to consider in forming the past tense is gender and number.

With verbs that have the ending **-ТЬ** in the infinitive form, simply remove the **-ТЬ** and add:

Construction	Ending
Masculine	-л
Feminine	-ла
Neuter	-ло
Plural	-ли

...depending on the gender and number of the noun related to this verb.

For Example:

Russian	"English"
Он забронировал номер.	"He reserved a room."
Она забронировала номер.	"She reserved a room."
Оно забронировало номер.	"It reserved a room." (take it as a grammar example)
Они забронировали номер.	"They reserved a room."

Can you see the similarity between the endings of the subject (here, pronouns) and the verb? In the feminine gender, both end in **-a**; in the masculine, both end in a consonant; in neuter, both end in **-о**; and in plural, both end in **-и**.

For Example:

Russian	Infinitive	Romanization	"English"
Я тебе звонила.	ЗВОНИТЬ	<i>Ya tebe zvonila.</i>	"I called you."
Мой друг приехал из Киева.	приехать	<i>Moi drug priechal iz Kieva.</i>	"My friend came from Kiev."
Море потеплело.	потеплеть	<i>More poteplelo.</i>	"The sea warmed up."
Они заболели.	заболеть	<i>Oni zboleli.</i>	"They got sick."

Numerals

There are two numbering systems in Russian (as in any language). First are the regular Russian numbers (otherwise known as **cardinal** numbers), which we use to count. And second, are the Russian ordinals, which is the system we use for the order of start and finish and use commonly for days of the month (first, second, third...etc.).

You are familiar with the Russian cardinals from the Bootcamp Lessons 4 and 5. Now let's take a look at the **ordinals**.

Ordinal numbers decline just like adjectives, and therefore they must agree in **gender**, **number**, and **case** with the noun they describe. Like in English, Russian ordinal numbers are formed from cardinal numbers; however, there are more endings in Russian (-ый, -ой, -ая, -ое, -ые) as opposed to the only ending, -th, in English. Of course, like in English, there are exceptions for the numerals *first*, *second*, and *third*. In Russian, they are *первый*, *второй*, and *третий* correspondingly. See the table below:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
----------------	---------------------	------------------

Первый	<i>perviy</i>	"first"
Второй	<i>vtoroy</i>	"second"
Третий	<i>tretiy</i>	"third"
Четвёртый	<i>chetvyortiy</i>	"fourth"
Пятый	<i>pyatiy</i>	"fifth"
Шестой	<i>shestoy</i>	"sixth"
Седьмой	<i>sied'moy</i>	"seventh"
Восьмой	<i>vos'moy</i>	"eighth"
Девятый	<i>devyatiy</i>	"ninth"
Десятый	<i>desyatyi</i>	"tenth"

Note

пят(ь) + **ый, -ая, -ое, -ые** makes **пятый, пятая, пятое, пятые**

шест(ь) + **ой, -ая, -ое, -ые** makes **шестой, шестая, шестое, шестые**

The initial form of Russian ordinal numbers is nominative singular masculine (первый, пятый). All ordinal numbers appear in dictionaries and vocabularies in the initial form. Russian ordinal numbers change by cases, number, and gender the same ways as adjectives change. In today's lesson, we only touched on the genitive case.

For Example:

Russian	"English"
я не ел с трёх часов.	"I haven't eaten since three o'clock."

у меня нет шести рублей.

"I don't have six rubles."

мне не хватает восьми долларов.

"I lack eight dollars."

У меня нет даже десяти минут.

"I don't even have ten minutes."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #11

Don't Get Left out in the Russian Cold (or Heat!)

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar

11

RUSSIAN

1. АДМИНИСТРАТ Доброе утро, как Вы себя чувствуете сегодня?
ОР:

2. ДЖОН: Хорошо, спасибо. Скажите, какая сегодня погода?

3. АДМИНИСТРАТ Сейчас тепло и солнечно, но после обеда будет дождь.
ОР:

4. ДЖОН: А какой курс валют в этом отеле?

5. АДМИНИСТРАТ Один доллар – 32 рубля.
ОР:

6. ДЖОН: Понятно. А где я могу взять такси?

7. АДМИНИСТРАТ У центрального выхода. Удачного дня!
ОР:

8. ДЖОН: Спасибо.

ROMANIZATION

1. FRONT DESK: Dobroe utro, kak vy sebya chustvuite sevodnya?

2. JOHN: Horosho, spasibo. Skazhite, kakaya sevodnya pogoda?

3. FRONT DESK: Seichas teplo ee solnechno, no posle obeda budet dozhd'.

4. JOHN: A kakoi kurs valyut v etom otele?

CONT'D OVER

5. FRONT DESK: Odin dollar' – tritsat' dva rublya.
6. JOHN: Ponyatno. A gde ya mogu vzyat' taksi?
7. FRONT DESK: U central'nova vyhoda. Udachnova dnya!
8. JOHN: Spasibo.

ENGLISH

1. FRONT DESK: Good morning, how do you feel today?
2. JOHN: Good, thank you. Excuse me; what's the weather like today?
3. FRONT DESK: Right now, it's warm and sunny, but it'll rain in the afternoon.
4. JOHN: And what is the currency exchange rate in this hotel?
5. FRONT DESK: One dollar is thirty-two rubles.
6. JOHN: I see. And where can I get a taxi?
7. FRONT DESK: At the central exit. Have a nice day!
8. JOHN: Thank you.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
---------	--------------	---------	-------	--------

после обеда	poslye obyeda	in the afternoon	phrase	
курс валют	kurs valyut	currency exchange rate	phrase	
сегодня	segodnya	today	adverb	
тепло	tyeplo	warm	adverb	
сейчас	seychas	now; at the moment, just a moment	adverb	
дождь	dozhd'	rain	noun	masculine
солнечно	solnechno	sunny	adverb	
будет	budyet	will be	verb	
чувствовать	chuvstvovat'	feel	verb	
хорошо	horosho	okay, good, well, fine	particle; adverb	
себя	syeyba	self: (я) myself, (ты) yourself, (он) himself, (она) herself, (оно) itself, (мы) ourselves, (вы) yourselves, (они) themselves	pronoun	
погода	pogoda	weather	noun	feminine
Доброе утро	Dobroe utro	Good morning	greeting	

ПОНЯТНО	ponyatno	I got it, I see, understandable; it's understood, it's clear	adverb
могу (infinitive – мочь)	mogu (infinitive – moch')	(I) can (to be able to)	verb
взять	vzyat'	take	verb (perfective)
центральный	tsyentral'nyy	central	adjective
выход	vyhod	exit	noun
удачного дня	udachnogo dnya	have a good day	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Я всегда сплю после обеда. <i>Ya vsyegda splyu poslye obyeda.</i> "I always sleep in the afternoon."	Сегодня плохой курс валют. <i>Syegodnya plohoy kurs valyut.</i> "The exchange rate is bad today."
Сегодня был необычайно жаркий летний день. <i>Segodnya byl neobychayno zharkiy letniy den'.</i> "Today was an extraordinarily hot summer day."	Парад сегодня. <i>Parad segodnya.</i> "The parade is today."
Сегодня плохой курс валют. <i>Syegodnya plohoy kurs valyut.</i> "The exchange rate is bad today."	Мне нужно в город сегодня. <i>Mnye nuzhno v gorod syegodnya.</i> "I need to go to downtown today."
Сегодня - суббота. <i>Segodnya - subbota.</i> "Today is Saturday."	Вам тепло? <i>Vam tyeplo?</i> "Are you warm?"

<p>Я сейчас читаю книгу. <i>Ya seychas chitayu knigu.</i> I am reading a book now.</p>	<p>Я сейчас не работаю. <i>Ya seychas ne rabotayu.</i> "I don't work at the moment."</p>
<p>Ты сейчас занят? <i>Ty seychas zanyat?</i> "Are you busy now?"</p>	<p>Я сейчас не могу разговаривать. <i>Ya seychas ne mogu razgovarivat'.</i> "I can't talk now."</p>
<p>Мне нравится слушать звуки дождя. <i>Mne nrvavitsya slushat' zvuki dozhdaya.</i> "Yesterday, we had a lot of rain in short period of time."</p>	<p>На улице идёт дождь. <i>Na ulitsye idyot dozhd'.</i> "The rain is falling on the street."</p>
<p>Солнечно. <i>Solnechno.</i> "It's sunny."</p>	<p>Завтра будет жарко, почти 30 градусов. <i>Zavtra budyet zharko, pochti 30 gradusov.</i> "It'll be hot tomorrow, almost thirty degrees."</p>
<p>Не бойся, нам не будет холодно. <i>Nye boysya, nam nye budyet holodno.</i> "Don't worry, we won't be cold."</p>	<p>Тебе будет жарко в этом свитере! <i>Tyebye budyet zharko v etom svityerye!</i> "You'll be hot in this sweater."</p>
<p>В среду будет дождь. <i>V sryedu budyet dozhd'.</i> "It'll rain on Wednesday."</p>	<p>Завтра будет жарко. <i>Zavtra budyet zharko.</i> "It will be hot tomorrow."</p>
<p>Я себя плохо чувствую. <i>Ya sebya ploho chustvuyu.</i> "I feel under the weather/bad."</p>	<p>У меня онемела нога, я её не чувствую. <i>U menya onemela noga, ya eyo ne chustvuyu.</i> "My leg went numb (fell asleep), I can't feel it."</p>
<p>Вы хорошо себя чувствуете? <i>Vy horosho syebya chuvstvuyetye?</i> "Do you feel okay?"</p>	<p>Он хорошо говорит по-русски. <i>On horosho govorit po-russki.</i> "He speaks Russian well."</p>

<p>Вы хорошо себя чувствуете? <i>Vy horosho syebya chuvstvuyete?</i> "Do you feel okay?"</p>	<p>Я себя плохо чувствую. <i>Ya syebya ploho chuvstvuyu.</i> "I feel under the weather/bad."</p>
<p>Какая сейчас погода? <i>Kakaya seychas pogoda?</i> "What is the weather now?"</p>	<p>Погода ужасная. <i>Pogoda uzhasnaya.</i> "This weather is horrible."</p>
<p>Какая завтра будет погода? <i>Kakaya zavtra budet pogoda?</i> "What will the weather be like tomorrow?"</p>	<p>Погода сегодня не очень хорошая. <i>Pogoda segodnya ne ochen' khoroshaya.</i> "The weather is not very good today."</p>
<p>Всем доброе утро! <i>Vsyem dobroye utro!</i> "Good morning everyone!"</p>	<p>Не понятно, кто это сделал. <i>Nye ponyatno, kto eto sdyelal.</i> "It's not clear (I don't know) who did it."</p>
<p>Не звони мне больше, понятно? <i>Nye zvoni mnye bol'shye, ponyatno?</i> "Don't call me anymore. Got it?"</p>	<p>Я не могу есть остroe. <i>Ya nye mogu yest' ostroye.</i> "I can't eat spicy food."</p>
<p>Я могу позвонить с этого телефона? <i>Ya mogu pozvonit' s etogo tyelyefona?</i> "May I make a phone call from this telephone?"</p>	<p>Ты всё взял? <i>Ty vsyo vzyal?</i> "Have you taken everything?"</p>
<p>Возьми сумку, пожалуйста. <i>Voz'mi sumku, pozhaluysta.</i> "Take the bag, please."</p>	<p>Где находится центральный банк? <i>Gdye nahoditsya tsentral'nyy bank?</i> "Where's the central bank situated?"</p>
<p>Это вход. Выход с другой стороны. <i>Eto vhod. Vyhod s drugoy storony.</i> "This is the entrance. The exit is on the other side."</p>	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Russian Reflexive Pronouns and Russian Adverbs.

Сейчас тепло и солнечно, но после обеда будет дождь.

"Right now, it's warm and sunny, but it'll rain in the afternoon."

The reflexive pronoun **себя** literally means "self" and indicates that an action being performed is directed onto the person who performs this action.

For Example:

1. Она любит **себя**
"She loves herself."

You can use the reflexive pronoun **себя** with the first, second, or third person (i.e., it does not change by person). But you should think of the person to say the same sentence in English.

For Example:

1. Я люблю **себя**
"I love **myself**."
2. Он любит **себя**
"He loves **himself**."
3. Они любят **себя**
"**They** love **themselves**."

In our dialogue, we see the example как Вы **себя** чувствуете? This literally means "How you self feel." The pronoun does not have gender and number; therefore, we can build other sentences like:

1. как он **себя** чувствует?
"How does he feel (himself)?"
2. я **себя плохо** чувствую
"I feel (myself) bad."

3. **ОНИ СЕБЯ ОТЛИЧНО ЧУВСТВУЮТ.**

"They feel (themselves) great."

The only difficulty about the reflexive pronouns is that they change by case, but don't have the nominative form:

Case	Pronoun	Russian	"English"
Genitive	себя	Я не дам себя в обиду	"I won't let anyone hurt (offend) myself."
Dative	себе	Она купила себе сумку	"She bought herself a bag."
Accusative	себя	Он себя прекрасно чувствует	"He feels (himself) wonderful."
Instrumental	собой	Они не взяли меня с собой	"They didn't take me along with themselves."
Prepositional	о себе	Он любит рассказывать о себе	"He loves to talk about himself."

Russian Adverbs

In English, we form many adverbs by adding "-ly" to the adjective; for example, "strong" becomes "strongly." In Russian, we form many adverbs by adding "-o" to the stem of the adjective. Yes, most adverbs are created from adjectives. So, to form an adverb, you simply take an adjective and change its ending into "-o":

ХОЛОДНЫЙ - ХОЛОДНО

ТЁПЛЫЙ - ТЕПЛО

СОЛНЕЧНЫЙ - СОЛНЕЧНО

Let's use these adverbs in the context of weather and condition. Talking about the weather in Russian is very easy. To say "it's cold" you just need one word (adverb): **холодно**. You can add **сегодня** ("today") or **сейчас** ("now") as in the following example:

Сегодня холодно. "It's cold today."

You don't need a verb or a subject to form such sentences. We can use the same construction to describe many other weather conditions.

For Example:

1. **сегодня очень пасмурно**

"It's very cloudy today."

2. **завтра будет солнечно**

"It'll be sunny tomorrow."

3. **сейчас довольно тепло**

"It's quite warm now."

When we talk about personal conditions as in "I'm cold" or "I'm worried," we use the pronoun in the dative case (see the lesson 6) along with an adverb.

For Example:

1. **мне холодно**

"I'm cold."

2. **мне тревожно**

"I'm worried."

3. **мне понятно**

"I'm clear (about something)." / "I understand."

Conjugation of the Verb **мочь**

Pronoun	Conjugated Verb	Romanization	"Translation"	
Я	могу	<i>mogu</i>	"I"	"can"
Ты	можешь	<i>mozhesh</i>	"you"	"can"
Вы	можете	<i>mozhete</i>	"you" (plural, polite)	"can"
Он, она, оно	может	<i>mozhet</i>	"he," "she," "it"	"can"
Мы	можем	<i>mozhem</i>	"we"	"can"
Они	могут	<i>mogut</i>	"they"	"can"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #12

Get Where You Need to Go with a Mobile Language Partner

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 8 Grammar

12

RUSSIAN

1. ДЖОН: Здравствуйте, до проспекта Мира, пожалуйста.
2. ВОДИТЕЛЬ До станции метро?
ТАКСИ:
3. ДЖОН: Аа... Вот, у меня есть конкретный адрес.
4. ВОДИТЕЛЬ Аа, бизнес центр, понятно. Вы не из России?
ТАКСИ:
5. ДЖОН: Нет, я из Америки, только вчера прилетел.
6. ВОДИТЕЛЬ У Вас бизнес в Москве?
ТАКСИ:
7. ДЖОН: Ну... можно и так сказать.
8. ВОДИТЕЛЬ Приехали. С Вас 450 рублей. Вам нужен чек?
ТАКСИ:
9. ДЖОН: Да, пожалуйста. Вот 450 рублей.
10. ВОДИТЕЛЬ Будьте осторожны в Москве, удачи!
ТАКСИ:
11. ДЖОН: Спасибо, Вам тоже!

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. JOHN: Zdrastvuite, do prospeka Mira, pozhalusta.
2. TAXI DRIVER: do stancii metro?
3. JOHN: Aa... Vot, u menya iest' konkretnyi adres.
4. TAXI DRIVER: Aa, biznes centr, ponyatno. Vy nie iz Rosii?
5. JOHN: Net, ya iz Ameriki, tol'ko vchera priletel.
6. TAXI DRIVER: U Vas biznes v Moskve?
7. JOHN: Nu... Mozhno I tak skazat'.
8. TAXI DRIVER: Prieiali. S Vas chetyresta pyat'desyat rublei. Vam nuzhen chek?
9. JOHN: Da, pozhalusta. Vot 450 rublei.
10. TAXI DRIVER: Butte ostorozhny v Moskve, udachi!
11. JOHN: Spasibo, Vam tozhe!

ENGLISH

1. JOHN: Hello, to Mir (Peace) Avenue, please.
2. TAXI DRIVER: The metro station?
3. JOHN: Umm...here, I have the concrete address.

CONT'D OVER

4. TAXI DRIVER: Oh, the business center; I got it. You are not from Russia, are you?
5. JOHN: No, I'm from America. I came here just yesterday.
6. TAXI DRIVER: Do you have business in Moscow?
7. JOHN: Well...you can put it that way.
8. TAXI DRIVER: We're here. That'll be 450 rubles. Do you need a receipt?
9. JOHN: Yes, please. Here, 450 rubles.
10. TAXI DRIVER: Be careful in Moscow, good luck!
11. JOHN: Thanks, you too!

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
приехать	priyehat'	to arrive, to come (by transport)	verb
чек	chek	check, receipt, bill	noun
только	tol'ko	only, just	adverb
можно	mozhno	possible; can, may, allowed to	adverb; verb
так	tak	like this, this way, so	adverb
С вас	S vas	That'll be... (talking about price), you owe me...	phrase

бизнес центр	biznes centr	business center	phrase
вчера	vchyera	yesterday	adverb
конкретный	konkryetnyy	exact, concrete, specific	adjective
прилететь	prilyetyet'	to come/arrive (by plane)	verb
проспект	prosptyekt	avenue, boulevard	noun
и	ee	and	conjunction
нужный	nuzhnnyy	needful, necessary	adjective
будьте осторожны	bud'tye ostorozhny	be careful	phrase
тоже	tozhe	too, also	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Я приеду к тебе вечером. <i>Ya priyedu k tyebye vyechyerom.</i> "I'll come to you in the evening."	Он приехал в Москву в пятницу. <i>On priyehal v Moskvu v pyatnitsu.</i> "He came to Moscow on Friday."
Папа приехал вчера. <i>Papa priyehal vchyera.</i> "Dad arrived yesterday."	Приехали! <i>Priyehali!</i> "We have arrived!"
Вы забыли дать мне чек. <i>Vy zabyli dat' mnye chyek.</i> "You forgot to give me the check (receipt)."	Ваш чек, пожалуйста. <i>Vash chyek, pozhaluysta.</i> "Your check (receipt), please."
Я только проснулся. <i>Ya tol'ko prosnulsya.</i> "I've just woken up."	Я только утром ему звонил. <i>Ya tol'ko utrom yem u zvonil.</i> "I just called him this morning."

<p>У меня есть только один компьютер. <i>U myenya yest' tol'ko odin komp'yutyer.</i></p> <p>"I have only one computer."</p>	<p>В Москве можно купить кимчи? <i>V Moskve mozhno kupit' kimchi?</i></p> <p>"Is it possible to buy kimchi in Moscow?"</p>
<p>Александр, можно просто Саша. <i>Alyeksandr, mozhno prosto Sasha.</i></p> <p>"My name's Alexander, you can call me Sasha."</p>	<p>Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i></p> <p>"Is it okay to smoke here?"</p>
<p>Где можно приобрести эту картину? <i>Gdye mozhno priobryesti etu kartinu?</i></p> <p>"Where can I (is it possible to) purchase this painting?"</p>	<p>Можно с Вами сфотографироваться? <i>Mozhno s Vami sfotografirovat'sya?</i></p> <p>"May I take a picture with you?"</p>
<p>Можно Вам позвонить? <i>Mozhno Vam pozvonit'?</i></p> <p>"May I call you?"</p>	<p>Можно взять этот стул? <i>Mozhno vzyat' etot stul?</i></p> <p>"May I take this chair?"</p>
<p>Ему уже 18, можно пить алкоголь. <i>Yemu uzhye 18, mozhno pit' alkogol'.</i></p> <p>"He's already eighteen; he can drink alcohol."</p>	<p>Можно войти? <i>Mozhno voyti?</i></p> <p>"May I come in?"</p>
<p>Можно я здесь сяду? <i>Mozhno ya zdyes' syadu?</i></p> <p>"May I sit here?"</p>	<p>Где можно купить сувениры? <i>Gdye mozhno kupit' suveniry?</i></p> <p>"Where can I buy souvenirs?"</p>
<p>Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i></p> <p>"Can I smoke here?"</p>	<p>Можно вам позвонить вечером? <i>Mozhno vam pozvonit' vyechyerom?</i></p> <p>"May I call you tonight?"</p>
<p>Сколько с меня? <i>Skol'ko s myenya?</i></p> <p>"How much do I owe (you)?"</p>	<p>С Вас 800 рублей за всё. <i>S Vas 800 rubley za vsyo.</i></p> <p>"(You owe) Eight hundred rubles for everything."</p>

<p>С вас сорок рублей. <i>S vas sorok rubley.</i> "That'll be forty rubles, please."</p>	<p>Он работает в бизнес центре. <i>On rabotayet v biznyes tsyentre.</i> "He works in the business center."</p>
<p>Куда вы ездили вчера? <i>Kuda vy yezdili vchyera?</i> "Where did you go yesterday? (by car, etc.)"</p>	<p>Вчера мы ходили к врачу. <i>Vchyera my hodili k vrachu.</i> "Yesterday, we went to a doctor."</p>
<p>У Вас есть конкретные предложения? <i>U Vas yest' konkretnyye pryedlozhyeniya?</i> "Do you have anything specific to offer?"</p>	<p>Не нужно приезжать. <i>Nye nuzhno priyezzhat'.</i> "There's no need to come."</p>
<p>Мы уже приехали? <i>My uzhye priyehali?</i> "Have we arrived yet?"</p>	<p>Я приеду вечером. <i>Ya priyedu vyechyerom.</i> "I will come (by transport) in the evening."</p>
<p>Когда ты прилетел? <i>Kogda ty prilyetyel?</i> "When did you arrive (by plane)?"</p>	<p>Он работает в бизнес центре на проспекте Мира. <i>On rabotayet v biznyes tsyentre na prospyektye Mira.</i> "He works in the business center on Mir Avenue."</p>
<p>Я был в Москве и Санкт-Петербурге. <i>Ya byl v Moskve i Sankt-Pyetyerburgye.</i> "I've been to Moscow and St. Petersburg."</p>	<p>И ты пойдёшь? <i>I ty poydyosh'?</i> "And you will go (too)?"</p>
<p>Не нужно приезжать. <i>Nye nuzhno priyezzhat'.</i> "There's no need to come."</p>	<p>Будь осторожна на дорогах! <i>Bud' ostorozhna na dorogah!</i> "Be careful on the roads!"</p>
<p>Не волнуйся, я буду осторожен. <i>Nye volnuysya, ya budu ostorozhyen.</i> "Don't worry; I'll be careful."</p>	<p>Я тоже устал. <i>Ya tozhye ustal.</i> "I'm tired, too."</p>

Мы тоже там работаем.

My tozhye tam rabotayem.

"We also work there."

Вам тоже нравится музыка?

Vam tozhe nrvit'sya muzyka?

"Do you like music, too?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Russian Adjectives: Full and Short.

Аа... Вот, у меня есть конкретный адрес.

"Umm...here, I have the concrete address."

In lesson 9, we learned how to form adjectives and how to modify them according to gender, number, and even one of the cases: the genitive. Today, we'll add some information about Russian adjectives.

There are two types of adjectives in Russian: **normal (or full) and short**. Normal adjectives are those that you're already familiar with from the 9th lesson.

For Example:

Russian	"English"
новый дом	"new house" - <i>masculine</i>
красивая улица	"beautiful street" - <i>feminine</i>
маленькое здание	"small building" - <i>neuter</i>
большие глаза	"big eyes" - <i>plural</i>

Usually, we place these adjectives **before nouns** to describe them.

The second type of Russian adjectives is the short form. There's no such form in English, but the usage is very similar with English adjectives.

Most often, we use the short form to make a statement about something. In English, it normally

follows the word "is" or "are." For example, "You are funny," or "He is handsome." Notice that a noun does not follow the adjective. The use of the short form is generally limited to such simple sentences.

For Example:

1. Ты **смешна**.

"You are funny."

2. Он очень **красив**.

"He's very handsome."

3. Будь осторожен!

"Be careful!"

4. Они мне **дороги**.

"They are precious to me."

Not all adjectives can have a short form, but most do. For example, the words that describe nationalities of languages don't: **русский** ("Russian"), **английский** ("English"), and **немецкий** ("German").

Short adjectives don't have case changes, but they should still agree in gender with the noun.

Forming the Short Adjectives

Nominative

Masculine

Just use the **stem** of the adjective in the short form.

Masculine

дорог

красив

Feminine

adds "а"

Feminine

дорого

красива

Neuter

adds "о"

Neuter	дорого	красиво
Plural	adds "ы" or "и"	
Plural	дороги	красивы

Нужный - "necessary, need"

Note: This word has a very peculiar usage, or rather, interesting variations of its English translation.

Let's take a look at some examples:

1. **нужный документ**
"necessary document" (masculine)
2. **нужная информация**
"necessary information" (feminine)
3. **нужное слово**
"necessary word" (neutral)
4. **нужные вещи**
"necessary things" (plural)

In this case, the normal (full) adjective **нужный** in Russian is equivalent to the English adjective meaning "necessary." Just as in English, it's most often followed by a noun that it describes.

Now, take a look at another set of examples, in which we use the short form of **нужный**:

1. **Мне нужен документ**
"I need a document." (masculine)
2. **Ты мне нужна**
"I need you." (feminine)

3. Мне нужно домой
"I need to go home." (neutral)
4. Мне не нужны эти вещи
"I don't need these things." (plural)

In this case, the short form of the Russian adjective **нужный** ("necessary"), becomes the verb "need" in the English translation. It is usually followed by a noun (but, when serving as a verb, doesn't describe that noun), or another verb (when you talk about the necessity "to do" something).

The first sentence we translated as "I need a document," although if we translated it literally, it would sound as "to me necessary document." The second sentence, when translated literally, becomes "you necessary to me." The third sentence becomes "to me necessary (to go) home." And the last sentence "to me not necessary these things."

Note: When you talk about the necessity to do something, "I need to...," you use the short form of the verb **нужный** in neuter gender.

For Example:

1. Мне нужно поменять деньги
"I need to change money."
2. Мне нужно купить подарок
"I need to buy a present."
3. Мне нужно на Тверскую
"I need (to get) to Tverskaya."
4. Мне нужно домой
"I need to go home."

Note: When you talk about locations you need to go to, you can omit the words "to go" or "to get," just as we did in the last two examples.

C Ваc...

С Ваc is an idiomatic Russian phrase which means "that'll be..." or "you owe...." You will hear it in casual places such as shops and taxis as a more colloquial version of **пожалуйста**, but you will not hear it in high-class hotels and restaurants. Literally it means "from you...."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #13

Learn the Proper Way to Do Business in Russia

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar

13

RUSSIAN

1. JOHN: Добрый день, у меня назначена встреча на 10 утра с Игорем Ивановичем.
2. SECRETARY: Здравствуйте, Ваше имя, пожалуйста.
3. JOHN: Джон Янг.
4. SECRETARY: Одну секунду...
5. (telephone beep)
6. SECRETARY: Игорь Иванович, к Вам посетитель, Джон Янг (to John) входите, пожалуйста.
7. JOHN: Спасибо.
8. ИГОРЬ ИВАНОВИЧ: Джон, сколько лет, сколько зим!
9. JOHN: Да уж! Вот, сувенир из Америки.
10. ИГОРЬ ИВАНОВИЧ: Оо! Спасибо! Ну, как ты?
11. JOHN: Ничего, потихоньку. Ну, что, поработаем?

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. JOHN: Dobryi den', u menya naznachena vstrecha na desyat' utra s Igorem Ivanovichem.
2. SECRETARY: Zdrastvuite, Vashe imya, pozhalusta.
3. JOHN: John Young.
4. SECRETARY: Odnu sekundu...
5. (telephone beep)
6. SECRETARY: Igor' Ivanovich, k Vam posetitel', John Young (to John) Vhodite, pozhalusta.
7. JOHN: Spasibo.
8. IGOR' IVANOVICH: John, skol'ko let, skol'ko zim!
9. JOHN: Da uzh! Vot, suvenir iz Ameriki.
10. IGOR' IVANOVICH: Oo! Spasibo! Nu, kak ty?
11. JOHN: Nichevo, potihon'ku. Nu, shto, porabotaem?

ENGLISH

1. JOHN: Good day, I have an appointment for ten A.M. with Igor' Ivanovich.

CONT'D OVER

2. SECRETARY: Hello, your name please.
3. JOHN: John Young.
4. SECRETARY: One second...
5. (telephone beep)
6. SECRETARY: Igor' Ivanovich, you have a visitor, John Young. (to John) Come in, please.
7. JOHN: Thank you.
8. IGOR'
IVANOVICH: John, it's been ages!
9. JOHN: Oh yeah! Here, a souvenir from America.
10. IGOR'
IVANOVICH: Oh! Thank you! So, how are you?
11. JOHN: Not bad, slowly but steadily. So, work time?

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
да уж	da uzh	oh yeah; hell yeah, damn right	phrase
потихоньку	potihon'ku	slowly but surely/ steadily	adverb
с	s	with	preposition

посетитель	posyetityel'	a visitor	noun
сколько лет, сколько зим	skol'ko let, skol'ko zim	long time no see, it's been ages	phrase
сувенир	suvyenir	souvenir, gift	noun
встреча	vstryecha	meeting	noun
секунда	sekunda	a second	noun
назначить	naznachit'	appoint; arrange, make an appointment	verb
к	k	to, towards	preposition
добрый день	dobriy dyen'	good day	phrase
входить	vhodit'	to come in; enter	verb
ничего	nichyego	nothing; not bad, it's nothing, don't worry about it	noun/adverb
работать	rabotat'	to work	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Работа идёт потихоньку. <i>Rabota idyot potihon'ku.</i></p> <p>"The work goes slowly but steadily."</p>	<p>Я с ним не знаком. <i>Ya s nim nye znakom.</i></p> <p>"I'm not acquainted with him."</p>
<p>Встреча с директором назначена на 8 утра. <i>Vstryecha s diryektorom naznachyena na 8 utra.</i></p> <p>"The meeting with the director is scheduled for eight A.M."</p>	<p>Я приехал с подругой. <i>Ya priyehal s podrugoy.</i></p> <p>"I came with my (female) friend."</p>

<p>У меня был посетитель утром. <i>U myenya byl posyetityel' utrom.</i> "I had a visitor this morning."</p>	<p>Сегодня много посетителей. <i>Syegodnya mnogo posyetityelyey.</i> "There are a lot of visitors today."</p>
<p>Это традиционный русский сувенир. <i>Eto traditsionnyy russkiy suvyenir.</i> "This is a traditional Russian souvenir."</p>	<p>Нашу встречу придётся перенести. <i>Nashu vstryechu pridyotsya pyeryenyesti.</i> "We'll have to reschedule our meeting."</p>
<p>Какая встреча! <i>Kakaya vstryecha!</i> "What a meeting!" ("What a pleasant surprise!")</p>	<p>У меня завтра деловая встреча. <i>U myenya zavtra dyelovaya vstryecha.</i> "I have a business meeting tomorrow."</p>
<p>Встреча с директором назначена на 8 утра. <i>Vstryecha s diryektorom naznachyena na 8 utra.</i> "The meeting with the director is scheduled for eight A.M."</p>	<p>Наша встреча не случайна. <i>Nasha vstryecha nye sluchayna.</i> "Our meeting is not just an accident."</p>
<p>Какая встреча! <i>Kakaya vstryecha!</i> "What a meeting!"</p>	<p>Эта встреча перевернула его жизнь. <i>Eta vstryecha pyeryevyemula yego zhizn'.</i> "This meeting changed his life."</p>
<p>На сколько Вам назначено? <i>Na skol'ko Vam naznachyeno?</i> "What time is your appointment arranged for?"</p>	<p>Вам назначено? <i>Vam naznachyeno?</i> "Do you have an appointment?"</p>
<p>Добрый вечер, я Оксана. <i>Dobryy vyechyer, ya Oksana.</i> "Good evening; I'm Oksana."</p>	<p>Доброе утро, Наташа. <i>Dobroye utro, Natasha.</i> "Good morning, Natasha."</p>
<p>Добрый день, как вы себя чувствуете? <i>Dobryy dyen', kak vy syebya chuvstvuyetye?</i> "Good day; how do you feel?" (asking condition)</p>	<p>Можно войти? <i>Mozhno voyti?</i> "May I come in?"</p>

<p>Не входить! <i>Nye vhodit!</i> "Keep out!"/"Don't enter!" (sign)</p>	<p>Ничего не получается. <i>Nichyego nye poluchayetsya.</i> "Nothing works out."/"Everything fails."</p>
<p>Ничего страшного. <i>Nichyego strashnogo.</i> "Nothing to worry about."/"It's not a problem."</p>	<p>Я ничего не понимаю. <i>Ya nichyego nye ponimayu.</i> "I don't understand anything."</p>
<p>Я никому ничего не должен. <i>Ya nikomu nichyego nye dolzyen.</i> "I don't owe anything to anyone."</p>	<p>Врач осмотрел меня и ничего не нашёл. <i>Vrach osmotryel myenya i nichyego nye nashyol.</i> "The doctor examined me and didn't find anything wrong."</p>
<p>Банки работают в воскресенье? <i>Banki rabotayut v voskryesyen'ye?</i> "Are banks open on Sunday?"</p>	<p>Магазин сегодня не работает. <i>Magazin syegodnya nye rabotayet.</i> "The store is closed today."</p>
<p>Где она работает? <i>Gdye ona rabotayet?</i> "Where does she work?"</p>	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Russian Possessive Pronouns "my," "your," "his," "her"

Здравствуйте, Ваше имя, пожалуйста.

"Hello, your name please."

The possessive pronouns "my," "his," "her," "your," "our," and "their" attribute possession to someone or something. In English, we use them by placing a possessive pronoun in front of a noun ("my name," or "her book"). In Russian, possessive pronouns are trickier because they agree in gender and number with the nouns they are describing. That is to say, you should

think about the **gender and number of a noun** to find the matching form of a pronoun.

So, we can translate each of the English pronouns "my," "our," "your" (singular), and "your" (plural), into Russian in four different ways depending on whether the noun is masculine, feminine, neuter, or plural. The good news is that Russian possessive pronouns "his," "her," and "their" never change.

Today, we'll only give you the pronouns "my," "your," "his," and "her" in singular number.

Pronoun	With Masculine Nouns	With Feminine Nouns	With Neuter Nouns
"my"	мой мо́й	мо́я <i>moya</i>	мо́ё <i>mayo</i>
"your" - <i>formal</i>	Ваш Vash	Ваша Vasha	Ваше Vashe
"your" - <i>informal</i>	твой tvoi	твоя tvaya	твоё tvayo
"his"	его ievo	его ievo	его ievo
"her"	её ieyo	её ieyo	её ieyo

With Masculine Nouns:

Russian	Romanized	"English"
мой номер	<i>moi nomer</i>	"my number"
Ваш адрес	<i>Vash adres</i>	"your address"
твой телефон	<i>tvoi telefon</i>	"your phone"
его город	<i>ego gorod</i>	"his city"
её парень	<i>eyo paren'</i>	"her boyfriend"

With Feminine Nouns:

Russian	Romanized	"English"
моя сестра	<i>maya sestra</i>	"my sister"
Ваша книга	<i>Vasha kniga</i>	"your book"
твоя мечта	<i>tvoya mechta</i>	"your dream"
его девушка	<i>evo devushka</i>	"his girlfriend"
её сумка	<i>eyo sumka</i>	"her bag"

With Neuter Nouns:

Russian	Romanized	"English"
моё имя	<i>mayo imya</i>	"my name"
Ваше пальто	<i>Vashe pal'to</i>	"your coat"
твоё пианино	<i>tvayo pianino</i>	"your piano"
его пиво	<i>evo pivo</i>	"his beer"
её мороженое	<i>eyo morozhene</i>	"her ice cream"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #14

Making the Most out fo Your Time in Russia

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar

14

RUSSIAN

1. ИГОРЬ
ИВАНОВИЧ: Это наше расписание на сегодня.

2. 11.00: Встреча с представителем компании Альфа

3. 13.00: Деловой обед с менеджером банка Авангард

4. 14.30: Посещение нового Торгового Центра на Тверской, переговоры
с владельцем

5. 18.00: Ужин в ресторане Bon

6. ДЖОН: О, похоже, у нас будет напряжённый день!

ROMANIZATION

1. IGOR' Eto nashe raspisanie na sevodnya.
IVANOVICH:

2. 11.00: Vstrecha s predstavitelem kompanii Al'fa

3. 13.00: Delovoi obed s menedzherom banka Avangard

4. 14.30: Poseshenie novova Torgovova Tsentra na Tverskoi, peregovory s vladel'tsem

5. 18.00: Uzhin v restorane Bon

6. JOHN: O, pohozhe, u nas budet napryazhonnii den'!

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. IGOR' This is our schedule for today.
IVANOVICH:
2. ELEVEN Meeting with the representative of Alfa company
O'CLOCK:
3. ONE O'CLOCK: Business lunch with the manager of Avangard bank
4. TWO-THIRTY: Visit to the new trade center on Tverskaya Street, negotiations with the owner
5. SIX O'CLOCK: Dinner at Bon restaurant
6. JOHN: Oh, it seems like we'll have a very busy day!

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
деловой обед	delovoi obed	business lunch	phrase	
день	den'	day	noun	masculine
новый	noviy	new	adjective	masculine
на	na	on; at, for	preposition	
с	s	with	preposition	
компания	kompaniya	company	noun	feminine
банк	bank	bank	noun	masculine
расписание	raspisaniye	timetable, schedule	noun	
сегодня	segodnya	today	adverb	

наш, наша, наше, наши	nash, nasha, nashye, nashi	our	pronoun	masculine, feminine, neuter, and plural nouns
встреча	vstryecha	meeting	noun	
это	eto	this is, that is, it's	pronoun	
представитель	pryedstavityel'	representative	noun	
посещение	posyeschyiye	a visit, visiting	noun	
торговый центр	torgovyi tsentr	trading center, shopping mall	phrase	
ужин	uzhin	dinner	noun	masculine
ресторан	restoran	restaurant	noun	masculine
похоже	pohozhye	it seems, seems like	adverb	
у нас будет	u nas budet	we will have	phrase	
напряжённый	napryazhyonnyy	tense, strained; intensive, tight; busy	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Я убираю в своей комнате каждый день.

Ya ubirayu v svoyey komnate kazhdyy den'.

"I clean my room every day."

Он весь день сидит дома.

On ves' den' sidit doma.

"He's been sitting at home all day."

<p>Какой странный день! <i>Kakoy stranny den'!</i> "What a strange day!"</p>	<p>Это новый фильм? <i>Eto noviy fil'm?</i> "Is it a new movie?"</p>
<p>Это новая модель телефона. <i>Eto novaya modyel' tyelyefona.</i> "This is a new telephone model."</p>	<p>У меня нет планов на завтра. <i>U myenya nyet planov na zavtra.</i> "I don't have any plans for tomorrow."</p>
<p>Деньги на столе, возьми. <i>Dyen'gi na stolye, voz'mi.</i> "The money is on the table; take it."</p>	<p>Я с ним не знаком. <i>Ya s nim nye znakom.</i> "I'm not acquainted with him."</p>
<p>Встреча с директором назначена на 8 утра. <i>Vstryecha s diryektorom naznachyena na 8 utra.</i> "The meeting with the director is scheduled for eight A.M."</p>	<p>Я приехал с подругой. <i>Ya priyehal s podrugoy.</i> "I came with my (female) friend."</p>
<p>Он всегда душа компании. <i>On vsyegda dusha kompanii.</i> "He's always the life and soul of the party."</p>	<p>Я себя неуютно чувствую в незнакомой компании. <i>Ya syebya nyeyuyutno chuvstvuyu v nyeznakomoy kompanii.</i> "I feel uncomfortable in unknown company."</p>
<p>Это представитель американской компании. <i>Eto pryedstavityel' amyerikanskoy kompanii.</i> "This is an American company representative."</p>	<p>Вы работаете в банке? <i>Vy rabotayetye v bankye?</i> "Do you work in a bank?"</p>
<p>Он работает в банке. <i>On rabotaet v bankye.</i> "He works in a bank."</p>	<p>Это расписание семинаров на год. <i>Eto raspisaniye syeminarov na god.</i> "This is the seminar schedule for a year."</p>

<p>Где можно узнать расписание поездов? <i>Gdye mozhno uznat' raspisaniye poyezdov?</i> "Where can I find the train schedule?"</p>	<p>Сегодня плохой курс валют. <i>Syegodnya plohoj kurs valyut.</i> "The exchange rate is bad today."</p>
<p>Мне нужно в город сегодня. <i>Mnye nuzhno v gorod syegodnya.</i> "I need to go to downtown today."</p>	<p>Сегодня суббота. <i>Syegodnya subbota.</i> "Today is Saturday."</p>
<p>Это наши друзья. <i>Eto nashi druz'ya.</i> "These are our friends."</p>	<p>Это наша школа. <i>Eto nasha shkola.</i> "This is our school."</p>
<p>Это наш дом. <i>Eto nash dom.</i> "This is our house/home."</p>	<p>Нашу встречу придётся перенести. <i>Nashu vstryechu pridyotsya pyeryenyesti.</i> "We'll have to reschedule our meeting."</p>
<p>Какая встреча! <i>Kakaya vstryecha!</i> "What a meeting!" ("What a pleasant surprise!")</p>	<p>У меня завтра деловая встреча. <i>U myenya zavtra dyelovaya vstryecha.</i> "I have a business meeting tomorrow."</p>
<p>Встреча с директором назначена на 8 утра. <i>Vstryecha s diryektorom naznachyena na 8 utra.</i> "The meeting with the director is scheduled for eight A.M."</p>	<p>Наша встреча не случайна. <i>Nasha vstryecha nye sluchayna.</i> "Our meeting is not just an accident."</p>
<p>Какая встреча! <i>Kakaya vstryecha!</i> "What a meeting!"</p>	<p>Эта встреча перевернула его жизнь. <i>Eta vstryecha pyeruevymula yego zhizn'.</i> "This meeting changed his life."</p>
<p>Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eto ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"</p>	<p>Это наши друзья. <i>Eto nashi druz'ya.</i> "These are our friends."</p>

<p>Это представитель американской компании. <i>Eto pryedstavityel' amyerikanskoy kompanii.</i> "This is an American company representative."</p>	<p>Мы посетили много музеев в Москве. <i>My posyetili mnogo muzyeyev v Moskve.</i> "We visited a lot of museums in Moscow."</p>
<p>Он пригласил меня на ужин. <i>On priglasil myenya na uzhin.</i> "He invited me for dinner."</p>	<p>Можно Вас пригласить на ужин? <i>Mozhno Vas priglasit' na uzhin?</i> "May I invite you for dinner?"</p>
<p>Давай сходим в ресторан. <i>Davay shodim v restoran.</i> "Let's go to the restaurant."</p>	<p>Это очень известный ресторан в Москве. <i>Eto ochyen' izvyestnyy restoran v Moskve.</i> "This is a very famous restaurant in Moscow."</p>
<p>Пойдем в ресторан . <i>"Let's go to the restaurant."</i></p>	<p>Здесь поблизости есть недорогой ресторан. <i>Zdyes' pobлизости yest' nyedorogoy restoran.</i> "There's a reasonably priced restaurant not far from here."</p>
<p>Похоже, мы опоздали. <i>Pohozhye, my opozdali.</i> "It seems we are late."</p>	<p>Похоже, он не придёт. <i>Pohozhye, on nye pridyot.</i> "It seems he won't come."</p>
<p>Похоже, будет дождь. <i>Pohozhye, budyet dozhd'.</i> "It seems it's going to rain."</p>	<p>Ты слишком напряжён. <i>Ty slishkom napryazhyon.</i> "You are too tense/strained."</p>
<p>Сегодня был очень напряжённый день. <i>Syegodnya byl ochyen' napryazhyonnyy dyen'.</i> "It was a very intense (busy) day today."</p>	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the ways to Say What Are You Doing and With Whom.

Встреча с представителем компании Альфа

"Meeting with the representative of Alfa company"

To express the concept of doing something together with someone, you have two options in Russian. One of them is the phrase structure using the preposition **С** ("with"):

"who"/"what" + С + "who"/"what" in the instrumental case + "do what"

For Example:

1. *Ya s podrugoi idu v magazin.*

Я с подругой иду в магазин.

"I'm going to the store with my (girl)friend."

2. *Ona s drugom idyot v kino.*

Она с другом идёт в кино.

"She's going to the movie theater with her (boy)friend."

As we can see, the nouns in the instrumental case have different endings according to their gender.

подруга (being a "female friend" and therefore having female gender) becomes **подругой**, and **друг** ("a male friend") becomes **другом**.

Let's refresh our memory and see how to form the instrumental case:

Masculine Nouns

Feminine Nouns

Add "**ом**" or "**ем**."

Replace "**а**" with "**ой**."

For Example:

с... ("with...") Masculine Nouns

<i>Russian</i>	<i>"English"</i>
братьем	"brother"
сотрудником	"co-worker"
соседом	"neighbor"
папой	"dad"
начальником	"boss"

c... ("with...") Feminine Nouns

<i>Russian</i>	<i>"English"</i>
сестрой	"sister"
мамой	"mom"
соседкой	"neighbor"
сотрудницей	"co-worker"
студенткой	"student"

Just like in English, there's also a simpler way to express togetherness using **И**, meaning "and":

"who"/"what" + и ("and") + "who"/"what"

For Example:

1. *я ее он*
Я И ОН
"I and he" ("me and him")

2. *ona ee sobaka*

она **и** собака

"she and a dog"

In this structure, you don't have to change anything about the nouns.



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #15

Your Chance to Be the Life of the Russian Party

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 9 Grammar

15

RUSSIAN

1. ИГОРЬ Наконец-то, можно расслабиться! Разрешите представить, это ИВАНОВИЧ: мой друг и партнёр по бизнесу, Джон.
2. ДЖОН: Добрый вечер, я Джон.
3. ВСЕ: Оо! Здравствуйте, Джон!
4. ВИКТОР: Садитесь здесь. Вам нравится русская кухня?
5. ДЖОН: Да, очень, особенно борщ и блины.
6. ВИКТОР: А как Вам русская водка?
7. ДЖОН: Ну...
8. ВИКТОР: Давайте закажем! Девушка, пожалуйста, борщ, блины и 100 грам водки! А мне...

ROMANIZATION

1. IGOR' Nakonets, mozhno rasslabitsa! Razreshite predstavit', eto moi IVANOVICH: drug i partnyor po biznesu, John.
2. JOHN: Dobryi vecher, ya John.
3. EVERYONE: Oo! Zdrastvuite, John!
4. VICTOR: Sadites' zdes'. Vam nravitsa russkaya kuhnya?

CONT'D OVER

5. JOHN: Da, ochen', osobenno borsch i blini.
6. VICTOR: A kak Vam russkaya vodka?
7. JOHN: Nu...
8. VICTOR: Davaite zakazhem! Devushka, pozhalusta, borsch, blini i sto gram vodki! A mne...

ENGLISH

1. IGOR' IVANOVICH: Finally, we can relax! Let me introduce John, my friend and business partner.
2. JOHN: Good evening, I'm John.
3. EVERYONE: Oh, hello, John!
4. VICTOR: Sit down here. Do you like Russian food?
5. JOHN: Yes, very much; especially borscht and blini.
6. VICTOR: And what do you think of Russian vodka?
7. JOHN: Well...
8. VICTOR: Let's order! Waitress, borscht, blini, and one gram of vodka, please! And for me...

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
нравиться	nrvit'sya	like (literally, to be liked)	verb	
особенно	osobenno	especially	adverb	
разрешите представить	razryeshitye pryedstavit'	let me introduce	phrase	
добрый вечер	dobriy vyechyer	good evening	phrase	
здесь	zdes'	here	adverb	
кухня	kuhnya	kitchen; cuisine, food	noun	
расслабиться	rasslabit'sya	to relax	verb	
друг	drug	friend	noun	masculine
можно	mozhno	possible; can, may, allowed to	adverb; verb	
партнёр по бизнесу	partnyor po biznesu	business partner	phrase	
наконец	nakonyets	finally	adverb	
садитесь	sadityes'	sit, sit down (command)	verb	
очень	ochen'	very, very much	adverb	
борщ	borshch	borscht	noun	
блины	bliny	pancakes	noun	
как Вам	kak Vam	How do you find...; What do you think of...	phrase	
Давай	Davay	let's, shall we...	verb	

заказать	zakazat'	order; book, reserve	verb
девушка	devushka	young lady; girlfriend; waitress	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ему не нравится холодный Московский климат. <i>Yemu nye nraivitsya holodnyy Moskovskiy klimat.</i> "He doesn't like the cold Moscow climate."	Он мне нравится. <i>On mnye nraivitsya.</i> "I like him."
Вам нравится фильм "НН?" <i>Vam nraivitsya fil'm "NN?"</i> "Do you like the movie 'NN'?"	Мне нравится в Москве. <i>Mnye nraivitsya v Moskve.</i> "I like it in Moscow."
Нам не нравится этот дом. <i>Nam nye nraivitsya etot dom.</i> "We don't like this house."	Ему нравятся яблоки. <i>Yemu nraivatsya yabloki.</i> "He likes apples."
Мне нравится кофе. <i>Mnye nraivitsya kofye.</i> "I like coffee."	К нам в город приезжал цирк. Было много интересных номеров, но акробатические номера мне понравились особенно. <i>K nam v gorod priyezzhal tsirk. Bylo mnogo interesnykh nomerov, no akrobaticheskiye nomera mne ponravilis' osobenno.</i> "A circus came to our town. There were a lot of interesting performances but I particularly liked the acrobatic one."

<p>Да, особенно борщ. <i>Da, osobenno borshch.</i> "Yes, I especially like borshch. "</p>	<p>Разрешите представиться, я Алексей. <i>Razryeshitye pryedstavit'sya, ya Alyeksyey.</i> "Let me introduce myself: I'm Alexey."</p>
<p>Извините, я не представился. <i>Izvinyte, ya nye pryedstavilsya.</i> "I'm sorry, I didn't introduce myself."</p>	<p>Представьтесь, пожалуйста. <i>Pryedstav'tyes', pozhaluysta.</i> "Introduce yourself, please."</p>
<p>Добрый вечер, я не опоздал? <i>Dobryy vyechyer, ya nye opozdal?</i> "Good evening, am I late?"</p>	<p>Какой тёплый вечер сегодня! <i>Kakoy tyoplyy vyechyer syegodnya!</i> "What a warm evening tonight!"</p>
<p>Не садитесь, здесь мокро. <i>Nye sadites', zdyes' mokro.</i> "Don't sit down: it's wet here."</p>	<p>Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i> "Is it okay (allowed) to smoke here?"</p>
<p>У меня такая маленькая кухня, даже стол некуда поставить. <i>U myenya takaya malyen'kaya kuhnya, dazhye stol nyekuda postavit'.</i> "My kitchen is so small, there's even no space to put a table."</p>	<p>Мне не нравится китайская кухня, слишком жирная для меня. <i>Mnye nye nraovitsya kitayskaya kuhnya, slishkom zhirmaya dlya myenya.</i> "I don't like Chinese food - too oily for me."</p>
<p>Он совсем расслабился в Москве. <i>On sovsem rasslabilsya v Moskve.</i> "He totally relaxed in Moscow."</p>	<p>Не расслабляйся, у нас ещё много работы. <i>Ne rasslablyaysya, u nas yeshcho mnogo raboty.</i> "Don't relax/loosen up; we still have a lot of work to do."</p>
<p>Я не могу расслабиться, слишком большой стресс. <i>Ya ne mogu rasslabit'sya, slishkom bol'shoy stress.</i> "I can't relax; the stress is too great."</p>	<p>Тебе нужно расслабиться после экзаменов. <i>Tebe nuzhno rasslabit'sya posle ekzamenov.</i> "You need to relax after your exams."</p>

<p>Он мне не друг, а просто знакомый. <i>On mnye nye drug, a prosto znakomyy.</i></p> <p>"He's not my friend, but just someone I know."</p>	<p>Она моя лучшая подруга. <i>Ona moya luchshaya podruga.</i></p> <p>"She's my best friend."</p>
<p>Он мой лучший друг. <i>On moy luchshiy drug.</i></p> <p>"He's my best friend."</p>	<p>Я приехал с подругой. <i>Ya priyehal s podrugoy.</i></p> <p>"I came with my (female) friend."</p>
<p>Вот мой друг, Сергей. <i>Vot moy drug, Syergyey.</i></p> <p>"Here's my friend, Sergey."</p>	<p>В Москве можно купить кимчи? <i>V Moskvee mozhno kupit' kimchi?</i></p> <p>"Is it possible to buy kimchi in Moscow?"</p>
<p>Александр, можно просто Саша. <i>Alyeksandr, mozhno prosto Sasha.</i></p> <p>"My name's Alexander, you can call me Sasha."</p>	<p>Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i></p> <p>"Is it okay to smoke here?"</p>
<p>Где можно приобрести эту картину? <i>Gdye mozhno priobryesti etu kartinu?</i></p> <p>"Where can I (is it possible to) purchase this painting?"</p>	<p>Можно с Вами сфотографироваться? <i>Mozhno s Vami sfotografirovat'sya?</i></p> <p>"May I take a picture with you?"</p>
<p>Можно Вам позвонить? <i>Mozhno Vam pozvonit'?</i></p> <p>"May I call you?"</p>	<p>Можно взять этот стул? <i>Mozhno vzyat' etot stul?</i></p> <p>"May I take this chair?"</p>
<p>Ему уже 18, можно пить алкоголь. <i>Yemu uzhye 18, mozhno pit' alkogol'.</i></p> <p>"He's already eighteen; he can drink alcohol."</p>	<p>Можно войти? <i>Mozhno voyti?</i></p> <p>"May I come in?"</p>
<p>Можно я здесь сяду? <i>Mozhno ya zdyes' syadu?</i></p> <p>"May I sit here?"</p>	<p>Где можно купить сувениры? <i>Gdye mozhno kupit' suvyeniry?</i></p> <p>"Where can I buy souvenirs?"</p>

<p>Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i> "Can I smoke here?"</p>	<p>Можно вам позвонить вечером? <i>Mozhno vam pozvonit' vyechyerom?</i> "May I call you tonight?"</p>
<p>Она мой партнёр по жизни. <i>Ona moy partnyor po zhizni.</i> "She is my life partner."</p>	<p>Мы партнёры по бизнесу. <i>My partnyory po biznesu.</i> "We are business partners."</p>
<p>Это мой партнёр по теннису. <i>Eto moy partnyor po tyennisu.</i> "This is my tennis partner."</p>	<p>Наконец-то, ты пришёл! <i>Nakonyets-to, ty prishyol!</i> "Finally, you came!"</p>
<p>Наконец, он согласился с моим предложением. <i>Nakonyets, on soglasilsya s moim pryedlozhyyeniyem.</i> "Finally, he agreed to my proposition."</p>	<p>Садитесь рядом со мной. <i>Sadityes' ryadom so mnoy.</i> "Sit down next to me."</p>
<p>Садись за мной. <i>Sadis' za mnoy.</i> "Sit behind me."</p>	<p>Не садитесь, здесь мокро. <i>Nye sadites', zdyes' mokro.</i> "Don't sit down: it's wet here."</p>
<p>Садитесь на моё место. <i>Sadityes' na moyo myesto.</i> "Take my seat."</p>	<p>Мне тоже очень понравился этот фильм! <i>Mne tozhe ochen' ponravilsya etot fil'm!</i> "I liked this movie very much, too!" ("I also liked this movie!")</p>
<p>Я очень устал сегодня. <i>Ya ochen' ustal segodnya.</i> "I'm very tired today."</p>	<p>Я хочу попробовать русский борщ. <i>Ya khochu poprobovat' russkiy borshch.</i> "I want to try Russian borscht."</p>
<p>Как тебе мое новое платье? <i>Kak tyebye moyo novoye plat'ye?</i> "What do you think of my new dress?"</p>	<p>Как Вам Москва? <i>Kak Vam Moskva?</i> "How do you find/what do you think of Moscow?"</p>

<p>Давай я тебе помогу. <i>Davay ya tyebye pomogu.</i> "Let me help you."</p>	<p>Давай, просыпайся! <i>Davay, prosypaysya!</i> "Come on, wake up!"</p>
<p>Давай спать. <i>Davay spat'.</i> "Let's sleep/go to bed."</p>	<p>Давайте закажем шампанское! <i>Davaytye zakazhyem shampanskoye!</i> "Let's order champagne!"</p>
<p>Давайте пойдём ко мне. <i>Davaytye poydyom ko tnye.</i> "Let's go to my place."</p>	<p>Давай попьём чай на кухне. <i>Davay pop'yom chay na kuhnye.</i> "Let's have some tea in the kitchen."</p>
<p>Давайте встретимся вечером. <i>Davaytye vstryetimsya vyechyerom.</i> "Let's meet tonight."</p>	<p>Давайте познакомимся. <i>Davaytye poznakomimsya.</i> "Let's get to know each other."</p>
<p>Давайте работать! <i>Davaytye rabotat'!</i> "Let's work!" (formal)</p>	<p>Давай обедать! <i>Davay obyedat'!</i> "Let's have lunch!" (informal)</p>
<p>Я хочу заказать столик на 8 вечера. <i>Ya hochu zakazat' stolik na 8 vyechyera.</i> "I want to reserve a table for eight p.m."</p>	<p>Ты заказал отель? <i>Ty zakazal otyel'?</i> "Have you booked a hotel (room)?"</p>
<p>Ты уже заказал? <i>Ty uzhye zakazal?</i> "Have you ordered yet?"</p>	<p>Девушка, как Вас зовут? <i>Dyevushka, kak Vas zovut?</i> "Excuse me (miss); what's your name?"</p>
<p>Девушка, счёт, пожалуйста! <i>Dyevushka, schyot, pozhaluysta!</i> "Waitress, the bill please!"</p>	<p>Эта девушка красивая. <i>Eta dyevushka krasivaya.</i> "This girl is beautiful."</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is How to Make a Suggestion.

Давайте закажем! Девушка, пожалуйста, борщ, блины и 100 грам водки! А мне...

"Let's order! Waitress, borscht, blini, and one gram of vodka, please! And for me..."

The most common way to make a suggestion in Russian is to use this grammatical pattern:

давайте ("let's") + verb in the future tense, first person plural ("we")

As we remember from the seventh Gengo lesson, we can form the future tense in two ways in Russian.

The first method is using the verb "to be" in the future tense and adding a verb in its dictionary form.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
я буду читать	<i>ya budu chitat'</i>	"I will read"
он будет пить	<i>on budet pit'</i>	"he will drink"
мы будем смотреть	<i>my budem smotret'</i>	"we will watch"

The second way to form the future tense is with the help of prefixes and endings that we add or modify in the verb:

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
я прочитаю	<i>ya prochitayu</i>	"I'll read" ("I'll have read")
он выпьет	<i>on vyp'et</i>	"He'll drink" ("he'll have drunk")

мы посмотрим

my posmotrim

"We'll watch" ("we'll have
watched")

As you can see from the translation, the first way of forming the future tense gives us the imperfective aspect of the verbs, which we use to show an incomplete action. But the prefixes and endings we used in the second method gave us a distinct perfective aspect, which is a completed action.

To make a suggestion, we most often use the perfective aspect of the verb in the future tense. We also put the verb into the form of the first person plural ("we"), as we suggest we'll act and get the result together with our companions.

Below are some verbs you can use to make a suggestion.

For Example:

Russian Infinitive	"English"	Russian Future Tense, Perfective Aspect, First Person Plural	Romanization	"English"
пробовать	"try"	попробуем	<i>poprobuem</i>	"(we) will try" - "we will have tried"
заказывать	"order," "reserve"	закажем	<i>zakazhem</i>	"(we) will order" - "we will have ordered"
пить	"drink"	выпьем	<i>vyp'em</i>	"(we) will drink" - "we will have drunk"

идти	"go" (on foot)	пойдём	<i>poidyom</i>	"(we) will go" - "we will have gone"
ехать	"go" (by transport)	поедем	<i>poedem</i>	"(we) will go" - "we will have gone"
смотреть	"look," "watch"	посмотрим	<i>posmotrim</i>	"(we) will see (watch)" - "we will have watched"
звонить	"call"	позвоним	<i>pozvonim</i>	"(we) will call" - "we will have called"
брать	"take"	возьмём	<i>vozmyom</i>	"(we) will take" - "we will have taken"
покупать	"buy"	купим	<i>kupim</i>	"(we) will buy" - "we will have bought"
спрашивать	"ask"	спросим	<i>sprosim</i>	"(we) will ask" - "we will have asked"

Also, take a look at how you can form a request using "let's."

For Example:

Russian	English
давайте попробуем	"let's try"

давайте закажем	"let's order"
давайте выпьем	"let's drink"
давайте пойдём	"let's go"
давайте поедем	"let's go" (by transport)
давайте посмотрим	"let's watch," "let's see"
давайте позвоним	"let's call"
давайте возьмём	"let's take"
давайте купим	"let's buy"
давайте спросим	"let's ask"

If you want to sound less formal in making suggestions, just drop the **-тe** at the end of **давайте**, and use the same verbs with **давай**.



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #16

Fitting In and Making Friends - Several Surefire Phrases to Help Your Russian Social Life

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 10 Grammar

16

RUSSIAN

1. ВСЕ: За встречу!
2. ВИКТОР: За знакомство!
3. ИГОРЬ Всем приятного аппетита!
ИВАНОВИЧ:
4. ВИКТОР: Джон, попробуйте шашлык.
5. ДЖОН: Ммм, очень вкусно!
6. ВИКТОР: Джон, а Вы завтра свободны?
7. ДЖОН: Думаю, да.
8. ВИКТОР: Мы едем в Санкт-Петербург на один день, не хотите с нами?
9. ДЖОН: С удовольствием!
10. ВИКТОР: Тогда жду Вас на вокзале в 7 утра. Вот мой телефон, на всякий случай. До завтра!
11. ДЖОН: До завтра!

ROMANIZATION

1. EVERYONE: Za vstrechu!
2. VICTOR: Za znakomstvo!

CONT'D OVER

3. IGOR' Vsem priyatnova apetita!
IVANOVICH:
4. VICTOR: John, poprobuite shashlyk.
5. JOHN: Mmm, ochen' vkusno!
6. VICTOR: John, Vy zavtra svobodny?
7. JOHN: Dumayu, da.
8. VICTOR: My edem v Sankt-Peterburg na odin den', ne hotite s nami?
9. JOHN: S udovol'stviem!
10. VICTOR: Togda zhdu Vas na vokzale v sem' utra. Vot moi telefon, na vsyakij sluchaj. Do zavtra!
11. JOHN: Do zavtra!

ENGLISH

1. EVERYONE: To our meeting!
2. VICTOR: To the new acquaintance!
3. IGOR' Enjoy your meal, everyone!
IVANOVICH:
4. VICTOR: John, have a bite of this kebab.

CONT'D OVER

5. JOHN: Hmm, very tasty!
6. VICTOR: John, are you free tomorrow?
7. JOHN: I think so.
8. VICTOR: We are going to St. Petersburg for the day; would you like to join?
9. JOHN: With pleasure!
10. VICTOR: Well then, I'll wait for you at the railway station at seven o'clock A.M. Here's my phone number, just in case. See you tomorrow!
11. JOHN: See you tomorrow!

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
думать	dumat'	to think	verb	
хотеть	hotet'	to want	verb	
попробовать	poprobovat'	to have a try, taste	verb (perfective)	
вкусно	vkusno	delicious	adverb	
свободный	svobodniy	free, available, not busy	adjective	masculine
Мы	My	we	pronoun	
приятного аппетита	priyatnogo appyetita	enjoy your meal	phrase	

шашлык	shashlyk	kebab	noun
знакомство	znakomstvo	acquaintance	noun
очень	ochen'	very, very much	adverb
встреча	vstryecha	meeting	noun
завтра	zavtra	tomorrow	adverb
ехать	yehat'	go (about transport); go (by transport)	verb
с удовольствием	s udovol'stviem	with pleasure, gladly, happily	phrase
тогда	togda	then	adverb
Ждать	Zhdat'	to wait	verb
Вокзал	Vokzal	railway station	phrase
утро	utro	morning	noun
на всякий случай	na vsyakiy sluchay	just in case	phrase
До завтра	Da zavtra	see you tomorrow	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

А по-моему, очень симпатичные...

A po-moymu, ochyen' simpatichnye...

"And I think they are quite cute..."

По-моему, никакие.

Po-moymu, nikakiye.

"I think they are nothing special."

<p>Как тебе те парни? <i>Kak tyebye tye parni?</i> "What do you think of those guys?"</p>	<p>Я никогда не думал, что в Москве столько иностранцев. <i>Ya nikogda nye dumal, chto v Moskve stol'ko inostrantsyev.</i> "I've never thought there were so many foreigners in Moscow."</p>
<p>Я думаю, нам нужно уходить. <i>Ya dumayu, nam nuzhno uhodit'.</i> "I think we should leave."</p>	<p>Что ты об этом думаешь? <i>Chto ty ob etom dumayesh'?</i> "What do you think about it?"</p>
<p>Думаю, ты прав. <i>Dumayu, ty prav.</i> "I think you are right."</p>	<p>Ты думаешь, мы успеем? <i>Ty dumayesh', my uspyeyem?</i> "Do you think we can make it on time?"</p>
<p>Я не думаю, что он придёт. <i>Ya nye dumayu, chto on pridyot.</i> "I don't think he'll come."</p>	<p>О чём ты думаешь? <i>O chyom ty dumayesh'?</i> "What are you thinking about?"</p>
<p>Как вы думаете, во сколько он придёт? <i>Kak vy dumayetye, vo skol'ko on pridyot?</i> "What time do you think he will arrive?"</p>	<p>Я хочу отдохнуть. <i>Ya hochu otdochnut'.</i> "I want to take a rest."</p>
<p>Он не хочет пить, не заставляй его. <i>On nye hochyet pit', nye zastavlyay yego.</i> "He doesn't want to drink; don't force him to."</p>	<p>Попробуй, достаточно соли и перца? <i>Poprobuy, dostatochno soli i pyertsya?</i> "Have a try. Does it have enough salt and pepper?"</p>
<p>Я хочу попробовать русский борщ. <i>Ya hochu poprobovat' russkiy borsch.</i> "I want to try Russian borscht."</p>	<p>Попробуйте торт! <i>Poprobuytye tort!</i> "Taste the cake!"</p>

<p>Этот салат очень вкусный. <i>Etot salat ochen' vkusnyy.</i> "This salad is delicious."</p>	<p>Вкусно. <i>Vkusno.</i> "It's delicious."</p>
<p>Это место свободно? <i>Eto myesto svobodno?</i> "Is this seat (place) free?"</p>	<p>Если Вы свободны, давайте пообедаем вместе. <i>Yesli Vy svobodny, davaytye poobyedayem vmyestye.</i> "If you are free, let's have lunch together."</p>
<p>Когда ты свободен? <i>Kogda ty svobodyen?</i> "When are you free?"</p>	<p>Вы завтра свободны? <i>Vy zavtra svobodny?</i> "Are you free tomorrow?"</p>
<p>Этот столик свободный? <i>Etot stolik svobodnyy?</i> "Is this table available?"</p>	<p>Это свободная страна. <i>Eto svobodnaya strana.</i> "It's a free country."</p>
<p>Мы едем во Владивосток на шесть дней. <i>My yedyem vo Vladivostok na shyest' dnyey.</i> "We are going to Vladivostok for six days."</p>	<p>В Вашем офисе очень приятная атмосфера. <i>V Vashyem ofisye ochyen' priyatnaya atmosfyera.</i> "Your office has a very nice atmosphere."</p>
<p>Мне неприятно с ним общаться. <i>Mnye nyepriyatno s nim obschat'sya.</i> "I don't like talking to him." ("It's unpleasant for me to talk to him.")</p>	<p>Какой приятный день! <i>Kakoy priyatnyy dyen'!</i> "What a nice day!"</p>
<p>У меня пропал аппетит. <i>U myenya propal appyetit.</i> "I lost my appetite."</p>	<p>На второе у нас голубцы, шашлык из говядины, и пельмени. "For the main entree (second course), we have stuffed peppers, beef kabobs, and Pelmeni."</p>

<p>Я очень рад нашему знакомству. <i>Ya ochyen' rad nashyemu znakomstvu.</i> "I'm very glad we got to know each other."</p>	<p>Мне тоже очень понравился этот фильм! <i>Mne tozhe ochen' ponravilsya etot fil'm!</i> "I liked this movie very much, too!" ("I also liked this movie!")</p>
<p>Я очень устал сегодня. <i>Ya ochen' ustal segodnya.</i> "I'm very tired today."</p>	<p>Нашу встречу придётся перенести. <i>Nashu vstryechu pridyotsya pyeryenyesti.</i> "We'll have to reschedule our meeting."</p>
<p>Какая встреча! <i>Kakaya vstryecha!</i> "What a meeting!" ("What a pleasant surprise!")</p>	<p>У меня завтра деловая встреча. <i>U myenya zavtra dyelovaya vstryecha.</i> "I have a business meeting tomorrow."</p>
<p>Встреча с директором назначена на 8 утра. <i>Vstryecha s diryektorom naznachyena na 8 utra.</i> "The meeting with the director is scheduled for eight A.M."</p>	<p>Наша встреча не случайна. <i>Nasha vstryecha nye sluchayna.</i> "Our meeting is not just an accident."</p>
<p>Какая встреча! <i>Kakaya vstryecha!</i> "What a meeting!"</p>	<p>Эта встреча перевернула его жизнь. <i>Eta vstryecha pyeryevyemula yego zhizn'.</i> "This meeting changed his life."</p>
<p>Что ты завтра делаешь? <i>Chto ty zavtra delayesh'?</i> "What are you doing tomorrow?"</p>	<p>Вы завтра свободны? <i>Vy zavtra svobodny?</i> "Are you free tomorrow?"</p>
<p>Я позвоню тебе завтра. <i>Ya pozvonyu tyebye zavtra.</i> "I'll call you tomorrow."</p>	<p>Завтра мы идём в кино. <i>Zavtra my idyom v kino.</i> "Tomorrow I'm going to the cinema."</p>
<p>Завтра я буду работать. <i>Zavtra ya budu rabotat'.</i> "Tomorrow I'll be working."</p>	<p>Он приехал в Москву на четыре дня. <i>On priyehal v Moskvu na chyetyrye dnya.</i> "He came to Moscow for four days."</p>

<p>Мы едем во Владивосток на шесть дней. <i>My yedyem vo Vladivostok na shyest' dnyey.</i> "We are going to Vladivostok for six days."</p>	<p>Как доехать до Москвы? <i>Kak doyehat' do Moskvy?</i> "How can I get to Moscow?"</p>
<p>Я с удовольствием с Вами пообедаю. <i>Ya s udovol'stviyem s Vami poobyedayu.</i> "I'd love to have lunch with you."</p>	<p>Я с удовольствием к тебе приеду следующим летом. <i>Ya s udovol'stviyem k tyebye priyedu slyeduyuschim lyetom.</i> "I will be happy to visit you next summer."</p>
<p>Тогда я позвоню ему завтра. <i>Togda ya pozvonyu yemu zavtra.</i> "Then I will call him tomorrow."</p>	<p>Ты всё купил? Тогда пошли домой. <i>Ty vsyo kupil? Togda poshli domoy.</i> "Have you bought everything? Then let's go home."</p>
<p>Что ты сделал тогда? <i>Chto ty sdelal togda?</i> "What did you do then?"</p>	<p>Не жди меня сегодня. <i>Nye zhdi myenya syegodnya.</i> "Don't wait for me tonight."</p>
<p>Я тебя жду дома. <i>Ya tyebya zhdu doma.</i> "I'll wait for you at home."</p>	<p>Жду тебя у станции метро. <i>Zhdu tyebya u stantsii myetro.</i> "I'm waiting for you by the subway station."</p>
<p>Не жди меня, я задержусь на работе. <i>Nye zhdi myenya, ya zadyerzhus' na rabotye.</i> "Don't wait for me; I am going to be late to work."</p>	<p>Не меняйте деньги на вокзале, там плохой курс. <i>Nye myenyaytye dyen'gi na vokzalye, tam plohoj kurs.</i> "Don't change your money at the railway station: the exchange rate is very bad there."</p>
<p>Он не ел с восьми утра. <i>On nye yel s vos'mi utra.</i> "He hasn't eaten since eight o'clock in the morning."</p>	<p>Мальчик проснулся утром. <i>Mal'chik prosnulsya utrom.</i> "The boy woke up in the morning."</p>

Девочка проснулась утром. <i>Dyevochka prosnulas' utrom.</i> "A girl woke up in the morning."	Возьмите зонт на всякий случай. <i>Voz'mitye zont na vsyakiy sluchay.</i> "Take an umbrella with you just in case."
Запишите мой адрес на всякий случай. <i>Zapishitye moy adryes na vsyakiy sluchay.</i> "Write down my address just in case."	Не скучай, до завтра! <i>Nye skuchay, do zavtra!</i> "Have fun, see you tomorrow!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Learning How to Socialize at a Dinner Party.

За знакомство!

"To the new acquaintance!"

Raising toasts is something you will have to deal with a lot in Russia, whether it's a business dinner or a friend's party. You might be even forced to say something yourself, and here we'll equip you with some short toasts that will help you avoid awkward situations in which people are staring at you and expecting you to say something. A short toast will also raise you in the eyes of your friends and partners as someone who knows and respects Russian traditions.

The easiest pattern of making a toast phrase is:

за (3a), meaning "for" + whatever you want to drink for

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
За тебя/За Вас!	<i>za tebya/za Vas!</i>	"To you!"/"To you!" - <i>formal</i>
За здоровье!	<i>za zdorov'e!</i>	"To health!"
За встречу!	<i>Za vstrechu!</i>	"To (our) meeting!"
За знакомство!	<i>Za znakomstvo!</i>	"To (our) acquaintance!"

За дружбу!

Za druzhbu!

"To friendship!"

За любовь!

Za lyubov'

"To love!"

Verb Conjugation

In today's dialogue, we heard four verbs: "try," "think," "want," and "wait." The speaker used the verb "try" in a command form. It's more useful to remember this verb just in two forms: command and infinitive, and then conjugate it:

Command: *poprobuite* (попробуйте) "have a try"

Infinitive: *poprobovat'* (попробовать) "to have a try"

For Example:

1. *Ya ochu poprobovat'*

Я хочу попробовать

"I want to try"

Russian speakers commonly use the rest of the verbs in all forms; therefore, take a look at the below conjugation table to learn how to use these words correctly.

For Example:

I. *dumat'* (ДУМАТЬ) "to think"

Pronoun	Verb	Romanization
<i>ya (Я)</i> "I"	думаю	<i>dumayu</i>
<i>ty (Ты)</i> "you"	думаешь	<i>dumaesh</i>
<i>on, ona, ono (Он, она, оно)</i> "he," "she," "it"	думает	<i>dumaet</i>
<i>my (Мы)</i> "we"	думаем	<i>dumaem</i>

<i>vy (Вы)</i> "you" (plural, polite)	думаете	<i>dumaete</i>
<i>oni (Они)</i> "they"	думают	<i>dumayut</i>

II. *hotet'* (ХОТЕТЬ) "to want"

Pronoun	Verb	Romanization
Я	хочу	<i>hachu</i>
Ты	хочешь	<i>hochesh</i>
Он, она, оно	хочет	<i>hochet</i>
Мы	хотим	<i>Hatim</i>
Вы	хотите	<i>hatite</i>
Они	хотят	<i>hatyat</i>

III. *zhdat'* (ЖДАТЬ) "to wait"

Pronoun	Verb	Romanization
Я	-жду	<i>zhdu</i>
Ты	ждёшь	<i>zhdyosh</i>
Он, она, оно	ждёт	<i>zhdyot</i>
Мы	ждём	<i>zhdyom</i>
Вы	ждёте	<i>zhdyote</i>
Они	ждут	<i>zhdut</i>

And the last thing for this lesson is the modification of the short adjective **свободен**, meaning "free."

Construction	Russian	Romanization
With masculine nouns	свободен	<i>svoboden</i>
With feminine nouns	свободна	<i>svobodna</i>
With neuter nouns	свободно	<i>svobodno</i>
With plural nouns	свободны	<i>svobodny</i>

For Example:

1. *Etot stol svoboden?*
Этот стол свободен?
"Is this table free?"
2. *Ya sevodnya absolyutno svobodna.*
Я сегодня абсолютно свободна.
"I'm absolutely free today."
3. *Eto mesto svobodno, sadites'.*
Это место свободно, садитесь.
"This place (seat) is free, sit down."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #17

Lost in Translation - Finding Yourself in Russian

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 8 Grammar

17

RUSSIAN

1. ВИКТОР: Алло?
2. ДЖОН: Алло! Это Джон!
3. ВИКТОР: Где Вы, Джон?
4. ДЖОН: Я на вокзале, но где конкретно – я не знаю.
5. ВИКТОР: Мы тоже на вокзале, но мы Вас не видим. Что сейчас рядом с Вами? Что Вы видите?
6. ДЖОН: Какой-то магазин...
7. ВИКТОР: Понятно! Стойте там, мы сейчас подойдём.
8. ДЖОН: Спасибо, я жду!
9. ВИКТОР: Здравствуйте, Джон! Наконец-то мы Вас нашли! Идёмте!
10. ДЖОН: Извините за беспокойство...

ROMANIZATION

1. VICTOR: Alo?
2. JOHN: Alo! Eto John!
3. VICTOR: Gde Vy, John?

CONT'D OVER

4. JOHN: Ya na vokzale, no gde konkretno – ya ne znayu.
5. VICTOR: My tozhe na vokzale, no my Vas ne vidim. Shto sechas ryadom s Vami? Shto Vy vidite?
6. JOHN: Kakoi-to magazin...
7. VICTOR: Ponyatno! Stoite tam, my seichas podoidyom.
8. JOHN: Spasibo, ya zhdu!
9. VICTOR: Zdrastvuite, John! Nakonec-to my Vas nashli! Idyomte!
10. JOHN: Izvinite za bespokoistvo...

ENGLISH

1. VICTOR: Hello?
2. JOHN: Hello! It's John!
3. VICTOR: Where are you, John?
4. JOHN: I'm at the railway station, but I don't know where exactly.
5. VICTOR: We are also at the station, but we can't see you. What's near you now? What can you see?
6. JOHN: Some store...

CONT'D OVER

7. VICTOR: Got it! Stay there; we'll come up now.
8. JOHN: Thank you. I'm waiting!
9. VICTOR: Hello, John! Finally we found you! Let's go!
10. JOHN: Sorry to have hassled you guys...

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
сейчас	seychas	now; at the moment, just a moment	adverb	
найти	nayti	to find	verb	
магазин	magazin	shop, store	noun	masculine
Вокзал	Vokzal	railway station	phrase	
знать	znat'	to know	verb	
видеть	vidyet'	to see	verb	
рядом	ryadom	near, close	adverb	
где	gde	where	pronoun	
но	no	but	conjunction	
это	eto	this is, that is, it's	pronoun	
конкретно	konkryetno	specifically, exactly	adverb	

алло	alo	hello (on the telephone)	interjection
тоже	tozhe	too, also	adverb
какой-то	kakoy-to	some, certain; kind of	pronoun masculine
ПОНЯТНО	ponyatno	I got it, I see, understandable; it's understood, it's clear	adverb
стоять	stoyat'	to stand, stay	verb
там	tam	there	pronoun
подходить	podhodit'	to come up, go with	verb
Ждать	Zhdat'	to wait	verb
наконец	nakonec	finally	adverb
идти	idti	to go (on foot)	verb
беспокойство	bespokoistvo	trouble, disturbance, bother, inconvenience	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Я сейчас не работаю.

Ya seychas ne rabotayu.

"I don't work at the moment."

Ты сейчас занят?

Ty seychas zanyat?

"Are you busy now?"

<p>Я сейчас не могу разговаривать. <i>Ya seychas ne mogu razgovarivat'.</i> "I can't talk now."</p>	<p>Я нашла 100 рублей. <i>Ya nashla 100 rubley.</i> "I found a hundred rubles."</p>
<p>Ты нашёл свой кошельёк? <i>Ty nashyol svoy koshelyok?</i> "Have you found your wallet?"</p>	<p>Через дорогу есть магазин. <i>Chyeryez dorogu yest' magazin.</i> "There's a store across the street."</p>
<p>В центре Москвы много магазинов. <i>V tsyentrye Moskvy mnogo magazinov.</i> "There are a lot of shops in the center of Moscow."</p>	<p>К сожалению, магазин сегодня не работает. <i>K sozhalyeniyu, magazin syegodnya nye rabotayet.</i> "Unfortunately, the shop is closed today."</p>
<p>Не меняйте деньги на вокзале, там плохой курс. <i>Nye myenyaytye dyen'gi na vokzalye, tam plohoy kurs.</i> "Don't change your money at the railway station: the exchange rate is very bad there."</p>	<p>Он знает куда идти? <i>On znayet kuda idti?</i> "Does he know where to go?"</p>
<p>Я не знаю этот район. <i>Ya nye znayu etot rayon.</i> "I don't know this area."</p>	<p>Ты его знаешь? <i>Ty yego znayesh'?</i> "Do you know him?"</p>
<p>Я так рад Вас снова видеть! <i>Ya tak rad Vas snova vidyet'!</i> "I'm so glad to see you again!"</p>	<p>Я плохо вижу. <i>Ya ploho vizhu.</i> "I can't see well."</p>
<p>Мы будем рады Вас видеть. <i>My budyem rady Vas vidyet'.</i> "We'll be glad to see you."</p>	<p>Рядом с моим домом находится супермаркет. <i>Ryadom s moim domom nakhoditsya supermarket.</i> "There is a supermarket near my house."</p>

<p>Садись рядом, тут свободно. <i>Sadis' ryadom, tut svobodno.</i> "Sit near (me); it (seat) is free (not occupied)."</p>	<p>Кто это там, рядом с Леной? <i>Kto eto tam, ryadom s Lenoy?</i> "Who is that there next to Lena?"</p>
<p>Где ты изучал русский язык? <i>Gde ty izuchal russkiy yazyk?</i> "Where did you learn Russian?"</p>	<p>Где твои сумки? <i>Gde tvoi sumki?</i> "Where are your bags?"</p>
<p>Я хочу пойти, но у меня нет времени. <i>Ya hochu poyti, no u tyuena nyet vryemyeni.</i> "I want to go, but I don't have time."</p>	<p>Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eto ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"</p>
<p>Это наши друзья. <i>Eto nashi druz'ya.</i> "These are our friends."</p>	<p>Где конкретно вы договорились встретиться? <i>Gdye konkryetno vy dogovorilis' vstryetit'sya?</i> "Where exactly did you agree to meet?"</p>
<p>Я не знаю его конкретный адрес. <i>Ya nye znayu yego konkryetnyy adryes.</i> "I don't know his exact address."</p>	<p>Я тоже устал. <i>Ya tozhye ustal.</i> "I'm tired, too."</p>
<p>Мы тоже там работаем. <i>My tozhye tam rabotayem.</i> "We also work there."</p>	<p>Вам тоже нравится музыка? <i>Vam tozhe nrauit'sya muzyka?</i> "Do you like music, too?"</p>
<p>Тебя ждёт какая-то женщина на улице. <i>Tyebya zhdyot kakaya-to zhyenschina na ulitsye.</i> "Some woman is waiting for you outside."</p>	<p>Не понятно, кто это сделал. <i>Nye ponyatno, kto eto sdyelal.</i> "It's not clear (I don't know) who did it."</p>
<p>Не звони мне больше, понятно? <i>Nye zvoni mnye bol'shye, ponyatno?</i> "Don't call me anymore. Got it?"</p>	<p>Я стою у памятника, найди меня. <i>Ya stoyu u pamyatnika, naydi myenya.</i> "I'm standing next to the monument; find me."</p>

<p>Почему вы здесь стоите? <i>Pochyemtu vy zdyes' stoitye?</i> "Why are you standing here?"</p>	<p>Таня стояла на платформе. <i>Tanya stoyala na platformye.</i> "Tanya was standing on the platform."</p>
<p>Анна в этом уверена. <i>Anna v etom uvyeryena.</i> "Anna is sure in it."</p>	<p>Я никогда там не был. <i>Ya nikogda tam ne byl.</i> "I've never been there."</p>
<p>Я там живу. <i>Ya tam zhivu.</i> "I live there."</p>	<p>О! Это Джон! Давай подойдём! <i>O! Eto Dzhon! Davay podoydyom!</i> "Oh! It's John! Let's come up (to him)!"</p>
<p>Я боюсь к ней подойти. <i>Ya boyus' k nyey podoysti.</i> "I'm afraid to come up to her (approach her)."</p>	<p>Не жди меня сегодня. <i>Nye zhdi myenya syegodnya.</i> "Don't wait for me tonight."</p>
<p>Я тебя жду дома. <i>Ya tyebya zhdu doma.</i> "I'll wait for you at home."</p>	<p>Жду тебя у станции метро. <i>Zhdu tyebya u stantsii myetro.</i> "I'm waiting for you by the subway station."</p>
<p>Не жди меня, я задержусь на работе. <i>Nye zhdi myenya, ya zadyerzhus' na rabotye.</i> "Don't wait for me; I am going to be late to work."</p>	<p>Наконец-то ты позвонил, я жду весь день! <i>Nakonec-to ty pozvonil, ya zhdu ves' den'!</i> "Finally you called; I've been waiting all day!"</p>
<p>Наконец-то! Где ты был? <i>Nakonec-to! Gde ty byl?</i> "Finally! Where have you been?"</p>	<p>Ну что, идём? <i>Nu chto, idyom?</i> "Well, are we going?"</p>
<p>Идём в кино! <i>Idyom v kino!</i> "Let's go to the movie theater!"</p>	<p>Вы пойдете на дискотеку? - Конечно. <i>Vi poidete na diskoteku? - Konechno.</i> "Are you going to the disco? - Sure."</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of Today's Lesson Is the Conjugations of Russian Verbs.

Мы тоже на вокзале, но мы Вас не видим. Что сейчас рядом с Вами? Что Вы видите?

"We are also at the station, but we can't see you. What's near you now? What can you see?"

As you might have noticed, there's nothing difficult about today's lesson, except for the number of new verbs you have to learn. In the dialogue, you heard eight verbs:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
знаю	<i>znayu</i>	"(I) know"
видим	<i>vidim</i>	"(we) see"
видите	<i>vidite</i>	"(you) see"
стойте	<i>stoite</i>	"(you) stay" (command)
подойдём	<i>podoidyom</i>	"(we will) come up"
жду	<i>zhdu</i>	"(I) wait"
нашли	<i>nashli</i>	"(we) found"
Идёмте	<i>idyomte</i>	"let's go" (polite)

In the right column, you see the translation of the verbs with the pronouns in the brackets.

The pronouns allow you to understand the context in which the speaker uses the verb. But as we already know, we don't always need to say the pronouns in Russian in order to understand the person or people we are talking about. We modify each verb according to the person, number, tense, and aspect (perfective and imperfective), so even from one single verb, we can tell a lot about the context it's used in.

First, we'll give you the tables of the conjugated verbs from today's lesson, and you try to figure out the pattern according to which we modify these verbs.

(We did not focus on aspects for the present and past tenses here as they are not essential at this point.)

Present Tense

Verb Infinitive: знать, "to know"

Person/Construction	Russian
"I"	знаю
"we"	знаем
"you"	знаешь
"you" (plural or polite)	знаете
"he," "she," "it"	знает
"they"	знают
Command form	зной(те)

Verb Infinitive: видеть, "to see"

Person/Construction	Russian
"I"	вижу
"we"	видим
"you"	видишь
"you" (plural or polite)	видите

"he," "she," "it"	ВИДИТ
"they"	ВИДЯТ
Command form	n/a

Verb Infinitive: *стоять*, "to stand," "to stay"

Person/Construction	Russian
"I"	СТОЮ
"we"	СТОИМ
"you"	СТОИШЬ
"you" (plural or polite)	СТОИТЕ
"he," "she," "it"	СТОИТ
"they"	СТОЯТ
Command form	стой(те)

Verb Infinitive: *подходить*, "to come up"

Person/Construction	Russian
"I"	подхожу
"we"	подходим
"you"	подходишь
"you" (plural or polite)	подходите

"he," "she," "it"

подходит

"they"

подходят

Command form

подойди(те)

Verb Infinitive: ждать, "to wait"

Person/Construction	Russian
"I"	жду
"we"	ждём
"you"	ждёшь
"you" (plural or polite)	ждёте
"he," "she," "it"	ждёт
"they"	ждут
Command form	жди(те)

Verb Infinitive: находить, "to find"

Person/Construction	Russian
"I"	нахожу
"we"	находим
"you"	находишь
"you" (plural or polite)	находите

"he," "she," "it"	находит
"they"	находят
Command form	найди(те)

Verb Infinitive: **идти**, "to go" (on foot)

Person/Construction	Russian
"I"	иду
"we"	идём
"you"	идёшь
"you" (plural or polite)	идёте
"he," "she," "it"	идёт
"they"	идут
Command form	иди(те)

These are the verbs from the dialogue in the present tense. Let's sum up the pattern:

- The infinitives end in *-ts* (-ть).
- The verbs used with the first person ("I") end in *-u* (-у) or *-yu* (-ю). Exception: **идти** ("to go").
- The verbs used with the first person plural ("we") end in *-yem* (-ем) or *-eem* (-им).
- The verbs used with the second person ("you") end in *-sh* (-шь).

- The verbs used with the second person plural ("you") end in *-te* (-тe).
- The verbs used with the third person ("he," "she," "it") end in *-yet* (-eт) or *-it* (-иt).
- The verbs used with the third person plural ("they") end in *-yut* (-юt) or *-yat* (-яt).
- The verbs in the command form end in *-y* (-и) or *-ee* (-и). You should add *-te* (-тe) if you are speaking in a polite form.

Past Tense

Now let's take a look at the verbs in the past tense. Unlike the present tense, it doesn't require persons; that is, it is not modified according to different pronouns. What it requires is gender and number.

Verb Infinitive: "to know"

Person/Construction	Russian
Masculine	знал
Feminine	знала
Neuter	знало
Plural	знали

Verb Infinitive: "to see"

Person/Construction	Russian
Masculine	видел
Feminine	видела

Neuter	видело
Plural	видели

Verb Infinitive: "to stand," "to stay"

Person/Construction	Russian
Masculine	стоял
Feminine	стояла
Neuter	стояло
Plural	стояли

Verb Infinitive: "to come up"

Person/Construction	Russian
Masculine	подошёл
Feminine	подошла
Neuter	подошло
Plural	подошли

Verb Infinitive: "to wait"

Person/Construction	Russian
Masculine	ждал
Feminine	ждала
Neuter	ждало

Verb Infinitive: "to find"

Person/Construction	Russian
Masculine	нашёл
Feminine	нашла
Neuter	нашло
Plural	нашли

Verb Infinitive: "to go" (on foot)

Person/Construction	Russian
Masculine	шёл
Feminine	шла
Neuter	шло
Plural	шли

To sum up:

- The verbs in masculine gender (the verbs used with masculine nouns) end in *-l* (-л).
- The verbs in feminine gender end in *-la* (-ла).
- The verbs in neuter gender end in *-lo* (-ло).

- The verbs in plural number end in *-lee* (-ли).

Future Tense

The last tables of conjugated verbs refer to the future tense. We build the future tense according to persons. Although we didn't mention the aspects in the tables of the present and the past tenses, we can't omit them this time.

Let us remind you of one thing:

We can form the Russian future tense in two ways.

1. with the help of the verb **быть**, meaning "to be" (быть + infinitive)
2. by modifying the verb itself.

In the first case, we are getting an imperfective aspect of the verb, which means we may not necessarily successfully complete the action we mention, as in the sentence "I will be writing." In the second case, we will complete the action we mention successfully, as in the sentence "I will have written." There's no simple "I will write" in Russian. You should always think about whether the action you are talking about is an ongoing or a completed one.

Verb Infinitive: "to know"

Person	Perfective	Imperfective
"I"	узнаю	буду знать
"we"	узнаем	будем знать
"you"	узнаешь	будешь знать
"you" (plural or polite)	узнаете	будете знать
"he," "she," "it"	узнает	будет знать

"they"	узнают	будут знать
--------	--------	-------------

Verb Infinitive: "to see"

Person	Perfective	Imperfective
"I"	увижу	буду видеть
"we"	увидим	будем видеть
"you"	увидишь	будешь видеть
"you" (plural or polite)	увидите	будете видеть
"he," "she," "it"	увидит	будет видеть
"they"	увидят	будут видеть

Verb Infinitive: "to stand," "to stay"

Person	Imperfective
"I"	буду стоять
"we"	будем стоять
"you"	будешь стоять
"you" (plural or polite)	будете стоять
"he," "she," "it"	будет стоять
"they"	будут стоять

Verb Infinitive: "to come up"

Person	Perfective
"I"	подойду
"we"	подойдём
"you"	подойдёшь
"you" (plural or polite)	подойдёте
"he," "she," "it"	подойдёт
"they"	подойдут

Verb Infinitive: "to wait"

Person	Imperfective
"I"	буду ждать
"we"	будем ждать
"you"	будешь ждать
"you" (plural or polite)	будете ждать
"he," "she," "it"	будет ждать
"they"	будут ждать

Verb Infinitive: "to find"

Person	Perfective
"I"	найду
"we"	найдём
"you"	найдёшь
"you" (plural or polite)	найдёте
"he," "she," "it"	найдёт
"they"	найдут

Verb Infinitive: "to go" (on foot)

Person	Perfective
"I"	буду идти
"we"	будем идти
"you"	будешь идти
"you" (plural or polite)	будете идти
"he," "she," "it"	будет идти
"they"	будут идти

As you can see, some of the verbs don't have either imperfective or perfective forms. Technically, they can be built according to the grammar rules. But we didn't include them in our tables because Russian speakers almost never use them.

Let's sum up the verb conjugations in the future tense:

- We build imperfective words on the base of the structure **быть** + infinitive, where we change the verb **быть** ("to be") according to the person.
- The perfective verbs have their similar pattern in the endings; however, you just need to memorize the stems.
- The words "know" and "see" (знать, видеть) only differ with one letter, *y*-, in the beginning from the verbs in the present tense.

Notes

And finally:

- Unlike English, the Russian language has only three basic tenses: present, past, and future.
- We conjugate the verbs in the present and future tenses according to persons.
- We conjugate the verbs in the past tense according to gender and number.
- All tenses have perfective and imperfective aspects; however, they are most obvious in the past and future tenses. Today, we only touched on the aspects of verbs in the future tense.

Sample Sentences

Present Tense

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Я знаю эту девушку.	<i>Ya znayu etu devushku.</i>	"I know this girl."

Мы тебя не видим.	<i>My tebya ne vidim.</i>	"We can't see you."
Он стоит на перекрёстке.	<i>On stoit na perekryostke.</i>	"He's standing at a crossroad."
Она часто находит деньги на улице.	<i>Ona chasto nahodit den'gi na ulice.</i>	"She often finds money on the street."
Они нас ждут в кафе.	<i>Oni zhdut nas v jafe.</i>	"They are waiting for us in a cafe."
Куда ты идёшь?	<i>Kuda ty idyosh?</i>	"Where are you going?"
Подойди ко мне.	<i>Podoidi ko mne.</i>	"Come up to me."

Past Tense

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Раньше я знал наизусть много цитат.	<i>Ran'she ya znal naizust' mnogo citat.</i>	"I knew a lot of quotations by heart before."
Мы тебя видели в клубе в пятницу.	<i>My tebya videli v klube v pyatnicu.</i>	"We saw you in a club on Friday."
Она стояла и ждала его.	<i>Ona stoyala i zhdala evo.</i>	"She was standing and waiting for him."
Они нас видели, но не подошли.	<i>Oni nas videli, no ne podoshli.</i>	"They saw us, but didn't come up."
Наконец-то я нашла ключи!	<i>Nakonecto ya nashla klyuchi!</i>	"Finally I found my keys!"
Она шла по улице и улыбалась.	<i>Ona shla po ulice i ulybalas'.</i>	"She was walking the street smiling."

Я тебя не узнал.

Ya tebya ne uznal.

"I didn't recognize you."

Future Tense

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Знайте, я этого так не оставлю!	<i>Znaite, ya etova tak ne ostavlyu!</i>	"You should know I won't leave it like this!"
Мы никогда не узнаем, кто это сделал.	<i>My nikogda ne uznaem, kto eto sdelal.</i>	"We'll never know who did this."
Когда я тебя увижу в следующий раз?	<i>Kogda ya tebya uvizhu v sleduyushij raz?</i>	"When will I see you next time?"
Вы будете хорошо видеть после операции.	<i>Vy budete horosho videt' posle operacii.</i>	"You'll see clearly (you'll have good eyesight) after the operation."
Я буду стоять возле памятника Пушкину.	<i>Ya budu stoyat' vozle pamyatnika Pushkinu.</i>	"I'll be waiting for you by the Pushkin monument."
Давай подойдём и поговорим с ними.	<i>Davai podoidyom ee pogovorim s nimi.</i>	"Let's go and talk to them."
Он будет ждать меня возле памятника Пушкину.	<i>On budet zhdat' menya vozle pamyatnika Pushkinu.</i>	"He'll be waiting for me by the Pushkin monument."
Когда-нибудь, мы найдём друг друга.	<i>Kogda-nibud', my nайдём drug druga.</i>	"Someday we'll find each other."
Когда будешь идти домой, купи хлеба.	<i>Kogda budesh idti domoi, kupi hleba.</i>	"Buy some bread on the way home." (literally, "When you will go home, buy some bread.")



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #18

The Beauty of Eastern Europe - Pretty Girls and Handsome Guys

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 9 Grammar

18

RUSSIAN

1. ДЖОН: Ух ты, какая красивая девушка! Вон там, за тем столиком.
2. ВИКТОР: Да, действительно! Хотите познакомиться?
3. ДЖОН: Нет, ну что Вы!
4. ИГОРЬ
ИВАНОВИЧ: Да ладно, Джон, не стесняйся! Или у тебя есть подруга?
5. ДЖОН: Нет, но я не привык знакомиться в кафе.
6. ВИКТОР: Перестаньте, Джон! Вы такой видный мужчина, холостой, ещё и иностранец, Вы обязательно ей понравитесь.
7. ДЖОН: Вы думаете? Ну, пойду попробую...

ROMANIZATION

1. JOHN: Ooh ty, kakaya kraseevaya devushka! Von tam, za tem stolikom.
2. VICTOR: Da, destveetel'no! Hotite poznakomit'sya?
3. JOHN: Net, nu chto Vy!
4. IGOR'
IVANOVICH: Da ladno, John, ne stesnyaisya! Eeli u tebya jest' podruda?
5. JOHN: Net, no ya ne privyk znakomitsa v kafe.

CONT'D OVER

6. VICTOR: Perestan'te, John! Vy takoj vidnyi, holostoj muschina, jescho i inostranec, Vy obyazatel'no jej ponravites'.
7. JOHN: Vy dumaete? Nu, poidu poprobuyu...

ENGLISH

1. JOHN: Wow, what a beautiful girl! Over there, at that table.
2. VICTOR: Yeah, true! Would you like to meet her?
3. JOHN: No, of course not.
4. IGOR' IVANOVICH: Come on, John, don't be shy! Or maybe you have a girlfriend?
5. JOHN: No, but I'm not used to meeting people in a cafe.
6. VICTOR: Stop it, John! You are such a handsome, single man. Moreover, you are a foreigner; she'll definitely like you.
7. JOHN: You think so? Okay, I'll go try my luck...

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
стесняться	styesnyat'sya	to be shy	verb	

обязательно	obyazatel'no	sure(ly), definitely, certainly	adverb
привыкнуть	privyknut'	get used to	verb
за	za	behind (about place); for	preposition
познакомиться	poznakomit'sa	to meet, to get acquainted, to get to know (someone)	verb
да ладно	da ladno	it's okay, forget it, oh, come on	phrase
или	ili	or	conjunction
вон там	von tam	over there	adverb
стол	stol	table, desk	noun
красивый	krasiviy	beautiful	adjective
действительно	deystvityel'no	really, indeed, truly	adverb
Ух ты	Ukh ty	oh my, wow	expression
ну что Вы!	nu shto vy!	What are you talking about! Of course not!	interjection
подруга	podruga	female friend	noun
перестать	perestat'	stop; cease	verb
видный	vidnyy	good-looking, handsome	adjective
мужчина	muzhchina	a man	noun

холостой	holostoy	single	adjective
ещё и	escho ee	moreover, besides (inf)	phrase
иностранец	inostranyets	foreigner	noun
понравиться	ponravit'sya	to like	verb (perfective)
думать	dumat'	to think	verb
пойти	poyti	to go (on foot)	verb (perfective)
попробовать	poprobovat'	to have a try, taste	verb (perfective)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Он стесняется танцевать. <i>On styesnyayetsya tantsyevat'.</i> "He's ashamed to dance."	Не стесняйся, поговори с ним. <i>Nye styesnyaysya, pogovori s nim.</i> "Don't be shy; talk to him."
Я стесняюсь говорить на публике. <i>Ya styesnyayus' govorit' na publikye.</i> "I'm shy to speak in public."	Обязательно надень свитер, на улице холодно. <i>Obyazatel'no naden' sviter, na ulitse holodno.</i> "You should definitely put a sweater on: it's cold outside."
Я обязательно приду, сто процентов! <i>Ya obyazatel'no pridu, sto protsentov!</i> "I will definitely come, one hundred percent."	Он не может привыкнуть к русской кухне. <i>On nye mozhyet privyknut' k russkoy kuhnye.</i> "He can't get used to Russian food."

<p>Вы уже привыкли к нашему климату? <i>Vy uzhye privyli k nashyemu klimatu?</i> "Did you get used to our climate yet?"</p>	<p>Я уже привык, что она всегда опаздывает. <i>Ya uzhye privyk, chto ona vsyegda opazdyvayet.</i> "I'm already used to her always being late."</p>
<p>Он сидел за компьютером и что-то читал. <i>On sidiel za komp'yutyerom i chto-to chital.</i> "He was sitting at the computer and reading something."</p>	<p>У нас за домом есть маленький сад. <i>U nas za domom yest' malyen'kiy sad.</i> "We have a small garden behind our house."</p>
<p>Приятно познакомиться. <i>Priyatno poznakomit'sya.</i> "Nice to meet you."</p>	<p>Рад с Вами познакомиться, наконец! <i>Rad s Vami poznakomit'sa, nakonyets!</i> "I'm glad to finally meet you!"</p>
<p>Познакомься, это моя сестра, Катя. <i>Poznakom'sya, eto moya sestra, Katya.</i> "Meet my sister, Katya."</p>	<p>Да ладно! Я тебе не верю! <i>Da ladno! Ya tyebye nye vyeryu!</i> "No way! I don't believe you!"</p>
<p>Да ладно тебе, не плачь! <i>Da ladno tyebye, nye plach'!</i> "Come on, don't cry!"</p>	<p>Он приедет в пятницу или субботу. <i>On priyedet v pyatnitsu ili subbotu.</i> "He'll come on Friday or Saturday."</p>
<p>Кофе или чай? <i>Kofe ili chay?</i> "Coffee or tea?"</p>	<p>Похоже, этот стол занят. <i>Pohozhye, etot stol zanyat.</i> "It seems this table is taken."</p>
<p>Питер – красивый город. <i>Pityer – krasiviy gorod.</i> "St. Petersburg is a beautiful city."</p>	<p>Наташа очень красивая. <i>Natasha ochyen' krasivaya.</i> "Natasha is very beautiful."</p>

<p>Это платье красивое. <i>Eto plat'ye krasivoye.</i> "This dress is beautiful."</p>	<p>Сегодня действительно замечательная погода. <i>Syegodnya dyeystvityel'no zamechayel'naya pogoda.</i> "It is truly beautiful weather."</p>
<p>Ух ты, какое красивое платье! <i>Uh ty, kakoye krasivoye plat'ye!</i> "Wow, what a beautiful dress!"</p>	<p>Ух ты! <i>Uh ty!</i> "Oh my!"</p>
<p>Почти все мои подруги уже вышли замуж. <i>Pochti vsye moi podrugi uzhe vyshli zamuzh.</i> "Almost all my friends already got married."</p>	<p>Это твоя девушка или просто подруга? <i>Eto tvoya devushka ili prosto podruga?</i> "Is this your girlfriend or just a friend?"</p>
<p>Это моя подруга, Катя. <i>Eto mya podruga, Katya.</i> "This is my friend, Katya."</p>	<p>Перестань смеяться, это уже не смешно. <i>Ryegystan' smyeyat'sya, eto uzhye nye smyeshno.</i> "Stop laughing; it's not funny anymore."</p>
<p>Дождь уже перестал, пойдём. <i>Dozhd' uzhye pyeryestal, poydyom.</i> "The rain has stopped already; let's go."</p>	<p>На остановке стоял высокий, видный мужчина. <i>Na ostanovkye stoyal vysokiy, vidnyy muzhchina.</i> "There was a tall, handsome man standing at the (bus) stop."</p>
<p>Её муж высокий, видный мужчина. <i>Yeyo muzh vysokiy, vidnyy muzhchina.</i> "Her husband is a tall, handsome man."</p>	<p>На остановке стоял высокий, видный мужчина. <i>Na ostanovkye stoyal vysokiy, vidnyy muzhchina.</i> "There was a tall, handsome man standing at the (bus) stop."</p>

<p>Её муж высокий, видный мужчина. <i>Yeyo muzh vysokiy, vidnyy muzhchina.</i> "Her husband is a tall, handsome man."</p>	<p>Мужчина! Ваш билет, пожалуйста! <i>Muzhchina! Vash bilyet, pozhaluysta!</i> "Excuse me! (addressing a man) Your ticket, please!"</p>
<p>Я не знаю этого мужчину. <i>Ya nye znayu etogo muzhchiniu.</i> "I don't know this man."</p>	<p>Я холостой. (м) <i>Ya holostoy.</i> "I'm a bachelor. I'm single."</p>
<p>Он иностранец, по-моему, из Канады. <i>On inostranyets, po-moyemu, iz Kanady.</i> "He's a foreigner; I think he's from Canada."</p>	<p>Тебе обязательно понравится этот пирог. <i>Tyebye obyazatye'l'no ponravitsya etot pirog.</i> "You'll definitely like this pie."</p>
<p>Ему понравилась та блондинка. <i>Yemu ponravilas' ta blondinka.</i> "He likes that blonde."</p>	<p>Мне не нравится твоё отношение. <i>Mnye nye nraovitsya tvooyo otnoshyeniye.</i> "I don't like your attitude."</p>
<p>А по-моему, очень симпатичные... <i>A po-moyetu, ochyen' simpatichnyye...</i> "And I think they are quite cute..."</p>	<p>По-моему, никакие. <i>Po-moyetu, nikakiye.</i> "I think they are nothing special."</p>
<p>Как тебе те парни? <i>Kak tyebye tye parni?</i> "What do you think of those guys?"</p>	<p>Я никогда не думал, что в Москве столько иностранцев. <i>Ya nikogda nye dumal, chto v Moskve stol'ko inostrantsyev.</i> "I've never thought there were so many foreigners in Moscow."</p>
<p>Я думаю, нам нужно уходить. <i>Ya dumayu, nam nuzhno uhodit'.</i> "I think we should leave."</p>	<p>Что ты об этом думаешь? <i>Chto ty ob etom dumayesh'?</i> "What do you think about it?"</p>

<p>Думаю, ты прав. <i>Dumayu, ty prav.</i> "I think you are right."</p>	<p>Ты думаешь, мы успеем? <i>Ty dumayesh', my uspyeyem?</i> "Do you think we can make it on time?"</p>
<p>Я не думаю, что он придёт. <i>Ya nye dumayu, chto on pridyot.</i> "I don't think he'll come."</p>	<p>О чём ты думаешь? <i>O chyom ty dumayesh'?</i> "What are you thinking about?"</p>
<p>Как вы думаете, во сколько он придёт? <i>Kak vy dumayetye, vo skol'ko on pridyot?</i> "What time do you think he will arrive?"</p>	<p>Ты пойдёшь с нами? <i>Tu poydyosh' s nami?</i> "Will you come with us?"</p>
<p>Я не пошёл в кино, потому что плохо себя чувствовал. <i>Ya nye poshyol v kino, potomu chto ploho syebya chuvstvoval.</i> "I didn't go to the movies, because I didn't feel well."</p>	<p>Ты хочешь пойти туда? <i>Tu khochesh' poyti tuda?</i> "Would you like to go there?"</p>
<p>Попробуй, достаточно соли и перца? <i>Poprobuy, dostatochno soli i pyertsya?</i> "Have a try. Does it have enough salt and pepper?"</p>	<p>Я хочу попробовать русский борщ. <i>Ya hochu poprobovat' russkiy borsch.</i> "I want to try Russian borscht."</p>
<p>Попробуйте торт! <i>Poprobuytye tort!</i> "Taste the cake!"</p>	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Using Adjectives to Talk about Appearances and the Opposite Sex.

Ух ты, какая красивая девушка! Вон там, за тем столиком.

"Wow, what a beautiful girl! Over there, at that table."

There are two main ways to build sentences describing a person's appearance. First, when an adjective precedes a noun: Красивая девушка ("a beautiful girl"). And second, when a noun precedes an adjective: Эта девушка красивая ("This girl is beautiful.").

See, all you do in Russian is switch the words around and get a totally new structure.

What you have to pay close attention to when describing a person is gender with adjectives and demonstrative pronouns ("this," "that").

Feminine Pronouns and Adjectives

First, let's take a look at the feminine gender.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
девочка	<i>devochka</i>	"girl" (0-16)
девушка	<i>devushka</i>	"girl" (16-30)
женщина	<i>zhenshina</i>	"woman"

The feminine pronouns for these nouns are:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Эта	<i>eta</i>	"this"
Та	<i>ta</i>	"that"

And here are some examples of adjectives you can use to describe a female.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
красивая	<i>krasivaya</i>	"pretty," "beautiful"
симпатичная	<i>simpatichnaya</i>	"cute"
стройная	<i>stroinaya</i>	"slim"
полная	<i>polnaya</i>	"plump," "chubby"
высокая	<i>vysokaya</i>	"tall"
невысокая	<i>nevysokaya</i>	"short" (literally, "not tall")
молодая	<i>molodaya</i>	"young"
пожилая	<i>pozhilaya</i>	"old"

Finally, let's put all of this together in sentence form.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Эта девушка очень высокая.	<i>Eta devushka ochen' vysokaya.</i>	"This girl is very tall."
Эта женщина немножко полная.	<i>Eta zhenshina nemnogo polnaya.</i>	"This woman is a bit plump."
За столиком сидит молодая, симпатичная девушка.	<i>Za stolikom sidit molodaya, simpatichnaya devushka.</i>	"There's a young, cute girl sitting at the table."

Masculine Pronouns and Adjectives

Now, let's take a look at the pronouns and adjectives for the masculine gender. The representatives of the gender are:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
мальчик	<i>mal'chik</i>	"boy" (0-16)
парень	<i>paren'</i>	"guy" (16-30)
мужчина	<i>muschina</i>	"man"

And the demonstrative pronouns for these nouns are:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
этот	<i>etot</i>	"this"
тот	<i>tot</i>	"that"

Here are some examples of adjectives you can use to describe a male:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
симпатичный	<i>simpatichnyi</i>	"cute"
видный	<i>veednyi</i>	"handsome," "good-looking"
интересный	<i>interesnyi</i>	"interesting" ("good-looking")
высокий	<i>vysokiy</i>	"tall"
невысокий	<i>nevysokiy</i>	"short" (literally, "not tall")
худой	<i>hudoy</i>	"thin"
полный	<i>polniy</i>	"plump," "chubby"
лысый	<i>lysiy</i>	"bold"

Now let's put these elements together and look at this structure in sentence form.

For Example:

1. *Na ostanovke stoyal vysokij, vidniy muschina.*
На остановке стоял высокий, видный мужчина.

"There was a tall, handsome man standing at the (bus) stop."

1. *Etot paren' ochen' simpatichniy, hotya i lysiy*
Этот парень очень симпатичный, хотя и лысый.

"This guy is very cute, even though he's bold."

Plural Pronouns and Adjectives

Lastly, you should know how to describe people in the plural.

Russian	Romanization	"English"
девочки	<i>devochki</i>	"(little) girls"
девушки	<i>devushki</i>	"girls"
женщины	<i>zhenshiny</i>	"women"
мальчики	<i>mal'chiki</i>	"boys"
парни	<i>parni</i>	"guys"
мужчины	<i>muschiny</i>	"men"

The plural demonstrative pronouns are:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
эти	<i>eti</i>	"these"

те

te

"those"

Let's look at what Russian adjectives look like in their plural forms.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Красивые	<i>kraseevye</i>	"pretty," "beautiful"
симпатичные	<i>simpatichnye</i>	"cute"
стройные	<i>stroinye</i>	"slim"
интересные	<i>interesnye</i>	"interesting" ("good-looking")
(не) высокие	<i>(ne)vysokie</i>	(not) "tall"
стильные	<i>stil'nye</i>	"stylish"
никакие	<i>nikakie</i>	nothing special

Finally, here are plural pronouns, nouns, and adjectives together in sentence form.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Как тебе те парни?	<i>Kak tebe te parni?</i>	"What do you think of those guys?"
По-моему, никакие.	<i>Po-moemu, nikakie.</i>	"I think nothing special."
А по-моему, очень симпатичные...	<i>A po-moemu, ochen' simpatichnie...</i>	"And I think they are quite cute..."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #19

Five Places You Have to See When in Russia

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 8 Grammar

19

RUSSIAN

1. ВИКТОР: Джон, какие у Вас планы на выходные?
2. ДЖОН: Завтра я собираюсь поехать на Красную Площадь, посмотреть на Кремль.
3. ДЖОН: А послезавтра хочу пойти в Большой Театр.
4. ИГОРЬ ИВАНОВИЧ: Оо, хорошая программа! Если ты интересуешься искусством, я советую тебе посетить Третьяковскую Галерею.
5. ДЖОН: Ах, да, туда я тоже планирую пойти.
6. ВИКТОР: А если хотите увидеть старую Москву, езжайте на Арбат.

ROMANIZATION

1. VICTOR: John, kakie oo Vas plany na vyhodnye?
2. JOHN: Zavtra ya sobirayus' poehat' na Krasnuyu Ploschad', posmotret' na Kreml'. A poslezavtra hochu pojti v Bol'shoi Teatr.
3. IGOR' IVANOVICH: Oo! Horoshaya programa! Esli ty interesueshsya iskustvom, ya sovetuyu tebe posetit' Tretjakovskuyu galereyu.
4. JOHN: Ah, da, tuda ya tozhe planiruyu poiti.
5. VICTOR: A esli hotite uvidet' staruyu Moskvu, ezhajte na Arbat.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. VICTOR: John, what plans have you got for the weekend?
2. JOHN: Tomorrow, I'm going to go to Red Square and take a look at the Kremlin. And after tomorrow, I want to go to the Bolshoi Theater.
3. IGOR' IVANOVICH: Oh! Good program! If you are interested in art, I advise you to visit Tretjakov Gallery.
4. JOHN: Oh, right, I'm planning to go there, too.
5. VICTOR: And if you want to see old Moscow, go to Arbat.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Большой Театр	Bol'shoi Teatr	Bolshoi Theater	phrase	masculine
старый	stariy	old	adjective	
интересоваться я	interesovat'sya	to be interested in	verb	
поехать	poyehat'	to go (by road transport)	verb	
Кремль	Kreml'	Kremlin	noun	masculine
пойти	poyti	to go (on foot)	verb (perfective)	
программа	programma	program	noun	feminine
собираться	sobirat'sya	to get ready to smth, to be going to do smth.	verb	

Красная Площадь	Krasnaya Ploschad'	Red Square	phrase	feminine
выходной	vyhodnoy	weekend; day off	noun	
посмотреть	posmotret'	to look, to take a look	verb (perfective)	
план	plan	plan	noun	masculine
послезавтра	poslezavtra	the day after tomorrow	adverb	
если	esli	if	conjunction	
искусство	iskusstvo	art	noun	neutral
советовать	sovyetovat'	give advice, advise	verb	
посетить	posyetit'	visit (not about people)	verb	
Третьяковская Галерея	Tretjakovskaya Galereya	Tretjakov Gallery	name	
туда	tuda	there (direction)	adverb	
планировать	planirovat'	to plan	verb	
так	tak	like this, this way, so	adverb	
сделать	sdylat"	do	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Большой театр - один из крупнейших театров оперы и балета в мире</p> <p><i>Bol'shoy tyeart - odin iz krupnyeyshih tyeatrov opyery i ballyeta v mirye</i></p> <p>"The Bolshoi Theater is one of the biggest houses of Opera and Ballet in the world."</p>	<p>Этот компьютер очень старый.</p> <p><i>Etot komp'yutyer ochyen' staryy.</i></p> <p>"This computer is very old."</p>
<p>Это очень старый район Москвы.</p> <p><i>Eto ochyen' staryy rayon Moskvy.</i></p> <p>"It's a very old area of Moscow."</p>	<p>Я не интересуюсь этими глупостями.</p> <p><i>Ya nye intyeryesuyus' etimi glupostyami.</i></p> <p>"I'm not interested in these silly things."</p>
<p>Чем ты интересуешься?</p> <p><i>Chyem ty intyeryesuyesh'sya?</i></p> <p>"What are you interested in?"</p>	<p>Он совсем не интересуется литературой.</p> <p><i>On sovsyem nye intyeryesuyetsya lityeraturoy.</i></p> <p>"He's absolutely not interested in literature."</p>
<p>Я хочу поехать в Калифорнию.</p> <p><i>Ya hochu poyehat' v Kaliforniyu.</i></p> <p>"I want to go to California."</p>	<p>Мы хотим поехать в Европу.</p> <p><i>My hotim poyehat' v Yevropu.</i></p> <p>"We want to go to Europe."</p>
<p>Я хотел бы поехать во Владивосток.</p> <p><i>Ya hotyel by poyehat' vo Vladivostok.</i></p> <p>"I'd like to go to Vladivostok."</p>	<p>Было бы здорово поехать в Мексику!</p> <p><i>Bylo by zdorovo poyehat' v Myeksiku!</i></p> <p>"It would be great to go to Mexico!"</p>
<p>Кремль - официальная резиденция Президента Российской Федерации</p> <p><i>Kryeml' - ofitsial'naya ryezidyentsiya Pryezidyenta Rossiyskoy Fyedyeratsii</i></p> <p>"The Kremlin is the official residence of the President of the Russian Federation."</p>	<p>Ты пойдёшь с нами?</p> <p><i>Tu poydyosh's nami?</i></p> <p>"Will you come with us?"</p>

<p>Я не пошёл в кино, потому что плохо себя чувствовал.</p> <p><i>Ya nye poshyol v kino, potomu chto ploho syebya chuvstvoval.</i></p> <p>"I didn't go to the movies, because I didn't feel well."</p>	<p>Ты хочешь пойти туда?</p> <p><i>Ty khochesh' poyti tuda?</i></p> <p>"Would you like to go there?"</p>
<p>Я собираюсь в Питер на пару дней.</p> <p><i>Ya sobirayus' v Pityer na paru dnyey.</i></p> <p>"I'm going to St. Petersburg for a couple of days."</p>	<p>Когда Вы собираетесь в Москву?</p> <p><i>Kogda Vy sobirayetyes' v Moskvu?</i></p> <p>"When are you going (to go) to Moscow?"</p>
<p>Длина Красной Площади составляет 300 метров</p> <p><i>Dlina Krasnoy Ploschadi sostavlyayet 300 myetrov</i></p> <p>"The length of Red Square is 300 meters."</p>	<p>Вы были на Красной Площади?</p> <p><i>Vy byli na Krasnoy Ploschadi?</i></p> <p>"Have you been to Red Square?"</p>
<p>Я собираюсь в Питер на пару дней.</p> <p><i>Ya sobirayus' v Pityer na paru dnyey.</i></p> <p>"I'm going to St. Petersburg for a couple of days."</p>	<p>Можно посмотреть эти часы?</p> <p><i>Mozhno posmotret' eti chasy?</i></p> <p>"Can I have a look at this watch?"</p>
<p>Не мешай, дай мне посмотреть фильм.</p> <p><i>Ne meshay, day mne posmotret' fil'm.</i></p> <p>"Don't bother me, let me watch the movie."</p>	<p>Я очень хочу посмотреть этот фильм.</p> <p><i>Ya ochen' khochu posmotret' etot fil'm.</i></p> <p>"I want to see this movie very much."</p>
<p>Он посмотрел на неё и отвернулся.</p> <p><i>On posmotrel na neyo i otvernuлся.</i></p> <p>"He looked at her and turned away."</p>	<p>Какие у тебя планы на воскресенье?</p> <p><i>Kakiye u tyebya plany na voskresyeny'e?</i></p> <p>"What plans have you got for Sunday?"</p>
<p>Что ты делаешь послезавтра вечером?</p> <p><i>Chto ty dyelayesh' poslyezavtra vyechyerom?</i></p> <p>"What are you doing the night after tomorrow?"</p>	<p>Послезавтра я пойду к врачу.</p> <p><i>Poslyezavtra ya poydu k vrachu.</i></p> <p>"The day after tomorrow, I'm going to a doctor."</p>

<p>Что ты делаешь послезавтра? <i>Chto ty dyelayesh' poslyezavtra?</i> "What are you doing the day after tomorrow?"</p>	<p>Напиши, если у тебя будет время. <i>Napishite, yesli u tyebya budyet vryetmya.</i> "Write if you have some time."</p>
<p>Если хочешь, я помогу тебе. <i>Yesli hochyesh', ya pomogu tyebye.</i> "If you like, I'll help you."</p>	<p>Мне нравится современное искусство, но оно не сравнится с искусством эпохи Ренессанса. <i>Mnye nraovitsya sovryemennoye iskusstvo, no ono nye sravnitsya s iskusstvom epohi Ryenyessansa.</i> "I like modern art but it doesn't compare to Renaissance art."</p>
<p>Я не советую тебе туда ехать. <i>Ya nye sovyetuyu tyebye tuda yehat'.</i> "I don't recommend you go there."</p>	<p>Что Вы посоветуете? <i>Chto Vy posovyetuyete?</i> "What would you recommend?"</p>
<p>Посоветуйте мне, пожалуйста, куда пойти в Москве. <i>Posovyetuyte mnye, pozhaluysta, kuda poyti v Moskve.</i> "Give me please some advice where I can go in Moscow."</p>	<p>Я посетил несколько музеев и выставок. <i>Ya posyetil nyeskol'ko muzyeyev i vystavok.</i> "I visited several museums and exhibitions."</p>
<p>Хочешь, поедем туда вместе. <i>Hochyesh', moyedyem tuda vmyestye.</i> "If you want, we can go there together."</p>	<p>Я не советую тебе туда ехать. <i>Ya nye sovyetuyu tyebye tuda yehat'.</i> "I don't recommend you go there."</p>
<p>У него всегда хорошо получалось планировать вечеринки. <i>UU nego vsegda khorosho poluchalos' planirovat' vecherinki.</i> "He was always good at planning parties."</p>	<p>Я планирую навестить своего друга. <i>Ya planiruyu navestit' svoyego druga.</i> "I'm planning to visit my friend."</p>

Ты сделал домашнее задание?

Ty sdyelal domashnyeye zadaniye?

"Have you done your homework?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of Today's Lesson Is How to Ask and Talk about Plans.

Завтра я собираюсь поехать на Красную Площадь, посмотреть на Кремль. А послезавтра хочу пойти в Большой Театр.

"Tomorrow I'm going to go to Red Square and take a look at the Kremlin. And after tomorrow, I want to go to the Bolshoi Theater."

There's nothing difficult about asking or talking about plans because all we have to remember is some set-phrases related to planning.

Asking about Plans in Russian

The question structure is:

kakie oo Vas plany na + time

какие у Вас планы на + time

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
какие у Вас планы на следующую неделю?	<i>Kakie oo Vas plany na sleduschuyu nedelyu?</i>	"What plans have you got for the next week?"
какие у Вас планы на субботу?	<i>Kakie oo Vas plany na subotu?</i>	"What plans have you got for this Saturday?"

какие у Вас планы на вечер?	<i>Kakie oo Vas plany na vecher?</i>	"What plans have you got for tonight?"
какие у Вас планы на завтра?	<i>Kakie oo Vas plany na zavtra?</i>	"What plans have you got for tomorrow?"

You can also replace the pronoun with the following:

Russian	<i>Romanization</i>	"English"
Тебя	<i>tebya</i>	"you"
Него	<i>nevo</i>	"he"
ней	<i>veyo</i>	"she"
нас	<i>nas</i>	"we"
них	<i>nih</i>	"they"

Note: We put the pronouns into the genitive case.

For Example:

1. *Kakie oo tebya plany na etu nedelyu?*
Какие у тебя планы на эту неделю?
"What plans have you got for this week?"
2. *Kakie oo tebya plany na sledushij mesyac?*
Какие у него планы на следующий месяц?
"What plans has he got for the next month?"

Telling Someone Your Plans in Russian

You can answer a question about your plans in several different ways.

I. One way is to use the verb meaning "going to" in the following structure:

Я собиряюсь' + verb

Я собираюсь + verb (perfective aspect)

"I'm going to..."

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Я собираюсь поехать в Питер.	<i>Ya sobirayus' poehat' v Piter.</i>	"I'm going to go to St. Petersburg."
Я собираюсь пойти в кино.	<i>Ya sobirayus' poiti v kino.</i>	"I'm going to go to the movies."
Я собираюсь поговорить с ним.	<i>Ya obirayus' pogovorit' s nim.</i>	"I'm going to talk to him."

Note: Just like in English, when a word of motion (for example, *поехать*, meaning "to go") follows the phrase *я собираюсь* ("I'm going"), we can omit this verb.

For Example:

1. *Ya sobirayus' v Piter.*

Я собираюсь в Питер.

"I'm going to St. Petersburg."

2. *Ya sobirayus' v kino.*

Я собираюсь в кино.

"I'm going to the movies."

We conjugate the verb **собираться** ("to be going to") according to person:

Pronoun	Russian	Romanization
Я	собираюсь	<i>sobirayus'</i>

Ты	собираешься	<i>sobiraeshsy</i>
Он, она, оно	собирается	<i>sobiraetsa</i>
Мы	собираемся	<i>sobiraemtsy</i>
Они	собираются	<i>sobirayutsa</i>

II. A second way to talk about your plans is to use the verb meaning "want to"/"would like to" in the following format:

Ya hochu/Ya hotel by + verb

Я хочу / Я хотел бы + verb (perfective aspect)

"I want to/ I would like to..."

These phrases express desire and intention, but we can also use them to talk about plans.

For Example:

1. *Sevodnya ya hochu otdohnut'.*

Сегодня я хочу отдохнуть.

"Today, I want to take a rest."

2. *Zavtra ya hotel by posetit' musej'.*

Завтра я хотел бы посетить музей.

"Tomorrow, I'd like to visit a museum."

We conjugate the verb **хотеть** ("want") according to person:

Pronoun	Russian	Romanization
Я	Хочу	<i>hochu</i>
Ты	Хочешь	<i>hochesh</i>
Он, она, оно	Хочет	<i>hochet</i>
Мы	Хотим	<i>hotim</i>

The phrase **хотел бы** ("would like to") is not conjugated. All you should do is change the pronouns when talking about someone else.

III. A third way to talk about plans is to use the verb meaning "plan to" in the following format:

Я planiruyu + verb (perfective aspect)

Я планирую + verb (perfective aspect)

"I'm planning to..."

For Example:

1. **Я planiruyu kupit' mashinu.**

Я планирую купить машину.

"I'm planning to buy a car."

2. **Он planiruet smenit' rabotu.**

Он планирует сменить работу.

"He's planning on changing his job."

We conjugate the verb **планировать** ("to plan") according to person:

Pronoun	Russian	Romanization
Я	планирую	<i>planiruyu</i>
Ты	планируешь	<i>planiruesh</i>
Он, она, оно	планирует	<i>planiruet</i>
Мы	планируем	<i>planiruem</i>
Они	планируют	<i>Planiruyut</i>

We mentioned that all of the above expressions of intention require verbs in the perfective aspect.

Here's the list of the verbs in the perfective aspect you can use:

Russian	<i>Romanization</i>	"English"
сделать	<i>sdelat'</i>	"do"
купить	<i>kupit'</i>	"buy"
позвонить	<i>pozvonit'</i>	"call"
написать	<i>napisat'</i>	"write"
предложить	<i>predlozhit'</i>	"offer," "suggest"
поговорить	<i>pogovorit'</i>	"talk"
сказать	<i>skazat'</i>	"say"
пойти	<i>poiti</i>	"go" (on foot)
поехать	<i>poehat'</i>	"go" (by road transport)

Finally, here is the conjugation of the verb **интересоваться**, meaning "to be interested in."

Pronoun	Russian	<i>Romanization</i>
Я	интересуюсь	<i>interesoooyus'</i>
Ты	интересуешься	<i>interesooeshsyu</i>
Он, она, оно	интересуется	<i>interesoooyutsa</i>
Мы	интересуемся	<i>interesooemtsyu</i>
Они	интересуются	<i>interesoooyutsa</i>



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #20

You'd Better Ask Before You Do This in Russia

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 10 Grammar

20

RUSSIAN

1. ДЖОН: Скажите, во сколько открывается галерея?
2. РАБОТНИК ГАЛЕРЕИ: В 11.
3. ДЖОН: А сейчас который час?
4. РАБОТНИК ГАЛЕРЕИ: Сейчас 10:45.
5. ДЖОН: Хорошо, я подожду. Извините, здесь можно курить?
6. РАБОТНИК ГАЛЕРЕИ: Нет, к сожалению, нельзя.
7. ДЖОН: Один билет и буклеть, пожалуйста.
8. РАБОТНИК ГАЛЕРЕИ: 300 рублей.
9. ДЖОН: А внутри можно фотографировать?
10. РАБОТНИК ГАЛЕРЕИ: Нет, фотографировать нельзя, но Вы можете приобрести у нас книгу о галерее на английском языке.
11. ДЖОН: Спасибо.

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. JOHN: Skazhite, vo skol'ko otkryvaetsa galereya?
2. STAFF: V odinatsat'.
3. JOHN: A sechas kotoryj chas?
4. STAFF: Sechas desyat' sorok pyat'.
5. JOHN: Horosho, ya podozhdu. Izvinite, zdes' mozhno kureet'?
6. STAFF: Net, k sozhaleniyu, nel'zya.
7. JOHN: Odin billet i buklet, pozhalusta.
8. STAFF: treesta rublej.
9. JOHN: A vnutree mozhno fotografirovat'?
10. STAFF: Net, fotografirovat' nel'zya, no Vy mozhete preeobresti oo nas kneegu o galeree na anglijskom yazyke.
11. JOHN: Spasebo.

ENGLISH

1. JOHN: Excuse me, what time does the gallery open?
2. STAFF: At eleven o'clock.
3. JOHN: And what time is it now?

CONT'D OVER

4. STAFF: It's ten forty-five now.
5. JOHN: Okay, I'll wait. I'm sorry, can I smoke here?
6. STAFF: No, unfortunately, you can't.
7. JOHN: One ticket and a booklet please.
8. STAFF: Three hundred rubles.
9. JOHN: Can I take pictures inside?
10. STAFF: No, you can't take pictures, but you can purchase a book about the gallery in English here.
11. JOHN: Thank you.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
можно	mozhno	possible; can, may, allowed to	adverb; verb	
о	o	about	preposition	
нельзя	nel'zya	you can't, you mustn't, it's forbidden, it's impossible	adverb	
галерея	galereya	gallery	noun	
извините	izvinite	excuse me, I am sorry, pardon	interjection	

подождать	podozhdat'	wait	verb (perfective)	
к сожалению	k sozhaleniyu	unfortunately, I'm afraid	adverb	
здесь	zdes'	here	adverb	
курить	kurit'	to smoke	verb	
открываться	otkryvat'sya	to (be) open	verb	
сейчас	seychas	now; at the moment, just a moment	adverb	
во сколько	vo skol'ko	at what time	phrase	
который час?	kotoriy chas?	what time is it?	expression	
скажите	skazhitye	tell (me); excuse me	verb/interjection	
буклет	booklet	booklet	noun	
билет	bilet	ticket	noun	masculine
внутри	vnutri	inside	adverb	
фотографиров ать	fatagrafiravat'	to take a picture	verb	
приобрести	priobryesti	purchase	verb (perfective)	
книга	kniga	book	noun	feminine
английский язык	angliyskiy yazyk	English language	phrase	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>В Москве можно купить кимчи? <i>V Moskve mozhno kupit' kimchi?</i> "Is it possible to buy kimchi in Moscow?"</p>	<p>Александр, можно просто Саша. <i>Alyeksandr, mozhno prosto Sasha.</i> "My name's Alexander, you can call me Sasha."</p>
<p>Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i> "Is it okay to smoke here?"</p>	<p>Где можно приобрести эту картину? <i>Gdye mozhno priobryesti etu kartinu?</i> "Where can I (is it possible to) purchase this painting?"</p>
<p>Можно с Вами сфотографироваться? <i>Mozhno s Vami sfotografirovat'sya?</i> "May I take a picture with you?"</p>	<p>Можно Вам позвонить? <i>Mozhno Vam pozvonit'?</i> "May I call you?"</p>
<p>Можно взять этот стул? <i>Mozhno vzyat' etot stul?</i> "May I take this chair?"</p>	<p>Ему уже 18, можно пить алкоголь. <i>Yemu uzhye 18, mozhno pit' alkogol'.</i> "He's already eighteen; he can drink alcohol."</p>
<p>Можно войти? <i>Mozhno voyti?</i> "May I come in?"</p>	<p>Можно я здесь сяду? <i>Mozhno ya zdyes' syadu?</i> "May I sit here?"</p>
<p>Где можно купить сувениры? <i>Gdye mozhno kupit' suvjeniry?</i> "Where can I buy souvenirs?"</p>	<p>Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdyes' mozhno kurit'?</i> "Can I smoke here?"</p>
<p>Можно вам позвонить вечером? <i>Mozhno vam pozvonit' vyechyerom?</i> "May I call you tonight?"</p>	<p>Я не люблю истории о медведях. <i>Ya ne lyublyu istorii a medvedyakh.</i> "I dislike stories about bears."</p>
<p>Это фильм о Второй Мировой Войне. <i>Eto fil'm o Vtoroy Mirovoy Voynye.</i> "This is a movie about World War II."</p>	<p>О чем вы разговаривали? <i>O chyem vy razgovarivali?</i> "What were you talking about?"</p>

<p>О чём эта книга? <i>O chyom eta kniga?</i> "What is this book about?"</p>	<p>Вам нельзя пить алкоголь. <i>Vam nyel'zya pit' alkogol'.</i> "You mustn't drink alcohol." (formal)</p>
<p>Нельзя так делать. <i>Nyel'zya tak dyelat'.</i> "It's forbidden to do so."</p>	<p>В этом районе много галерей и музеев. <i>V etom rayonye mnogo galyeryey i muzyeyev.</i> "This area has lots of galleries and museums."</p>
<p>Ой, извините! <i>Oy, izvinite!</i> "Oh, I'm sorry!"</p>	<p>Извините, я опоздал. <i>Izvinite, ya apazdal.</i> "I'm sorry, I'm late."</p>
<p>Извините, который час? <i>Izvinite, katoryy chas?</i> "Excuse me, what time is it?"</p>	<p>Не спеши, я тебя подожду. <i>Nye spyeshi, ya tyebya podozhdu.</i> "Don't rush; I'll wait for you."</p>
<p>Вы не могли бы подождать в приёмной. <i>Vy nye mogli by podozhdat' v priyomnoy.</i> "Could you please wait in a waiting room?"</p>	<p>К сожалению, автобус уже ушёл. <i>K sozhaleniyu, avtobus uzhe ushyol.</i> "Unfortunately, the bus had gone already."</p>
<p>К сожалению, я не могу Вам помочь. <i>K sozhaleniyu, ya nye mogu Vam pomoch'.</i> "Unfortunately I can't help you."</p>	<p>Не садитесь, здесь мокро. <i>Ne sadites', zdes' mokra.</i> "Don't sit down: it's wet here."</p>
<p>Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdes' mozhna kurit'?</i> "Is it okay (allowed) to smoke here?"</p>	<p>Здесь запрещено курить! <i>Zdes' zapreshcheno kurit'!</i> "Smoking here is prohibited!"</p>
<p>Я бросил курить. <i>Ya brosil kurit'.</i> "I quit smoking."</p>	<p>Во сколько открываются банки? <i>Vo skol'ko otkryvayutsa banki?</i> "What time do the banks open?"</p>

<p>Сейчас, пожалуйста, послушай меня. <i>Sechas, pazhalusta, paslushay menya.</i></p> <p>"Now, please listen to me."</p>	<p>Я сейчас читаю книгу. <i>Ya seychas chitayu knigu.</i></p> <p>I am reading a book now.</p>
<p>Я сейчас не работаю. <i>Ya seychas ne rabotayu.</i></p> <p>"I don't work at the moment."</p>	<p>Ты сейчас занят? <i>Ty seychas zanyat?</i></p> <p>"Are you busy now?"</p>
<p>Я сейчас не могу разговаривать. <i>Ya seychas ne mogu razgovarivat'.</i></p> <p>"I can't talk now."</p>	<p>Во сколько ты придёшь? <i>Vo skol'ko ty pridyosh'?</i></p> <p>What time will you come?</p>
<p>Во сколько ты заканчиваешь работу? <i>Vo skol'ko ty zakanchivayesh' rabotu?</i></p> <p>"What time do you finish your work?"</p>	<p>Во сколько открываются банки? <i>Vo skol'ko otkryvayutsya banki?</i></p> <p>"What time do the banks open?"</p>
<p>Во сколько мы сможем встретиться? <i>Vo skol'ko my smozhem vstretit'sya?</i></p> <p>"What time can we meet?"</p>	<p>Скажите, пожалуйста, который час? <i>Skazhitye, pozhaluysta, kotoryy chas?</i></p> <p>"Excuse me, what time is it?"</p>
<p>Извините, который час? <i>Izvinite, katoryy chas?</i></p> <p>"Excuse me, what time is it?"</p>	<p>Скажите, я смогу дойти пешком до Тверской? <i>Skazhitye, ya smogu doyti pyeshkom do Tverskoy?</i></p> <p>"Excuse me; how can I get to Tverskaya if I go on foot?"</p>
<p>Скажите, пожалуйста, который час? <i>Skazhitye, pozhaluysta, kotoryy chas?</i></p> <p>"Excuse me, what time is it?"</p>	<p>Скажите, как пройти к метро? <i>Skazhitye, kak proyti k myetro?</i></p> <p>"Excuse me, how can I get to the subway?"</p>
<p>Скажите, пожалуйста, какая это станция? <i>Skazhitye, pozhaluysta, kakaya eto stantsiya?</i></p> <p>"Excuse me, what station is this?"</p>	<p>Скажите, это не ваши ключи? <i>Skazhitye, eto nye vashi klyuchi?</i></p> <p>"Excuse me, are these your keys?"</p>

<p>Скажите, пожалуйста, который час? <i>Skazhitye, pozhaluysta, kotoryy chas?</i></p> <p>"Excuse me, what time is it?"</p>	<p>Мне нужно забронировать билеты на самолёт. <i>Mne nuzhno zabronirovat' biletu na samolot.</i></p> <p>"I need to book airplane tickets."</p>
<p>У тебя есть билет на концерт "Rolling Stones"? <i>U tebya yest' bilet na kantsert "Rolling Stones"?</i></p> <p>"Do you have a ticket for the "Rolling Stones" concert?"</p>	<p>Дайте, пожалуйста, два билета на это шоу. <i>Dayte, pazhalusta, dva biletu na eta shou.</i></p> <p>"Please, give me two tickets to this show."</p>
<p>Пять билетов на спектакль, пожалуйста. <i>Pyat' biletov na spektakl', pazhalusta.</i></p> <p>"Five tickets for the show, please."</p>	<p>Мне надо купить билеты на самолёт. <i>Mne nado kupit' biletu na samolyot.</i></p> <p>"I need to buy some plane tickets."</p>
<p>Ваш билет, пожалуйста. <i>Vash bilet, pazhalusta.</i></p> <p>"Your ticket, please." (formal)</p>	<p>Ты был внутри этого замка? <i>Ty byl vnutri etogo zamka?</i></p> <p>"Have you been inside this castle?"</p>
<p>Эта сумка рваная внутри. <i>Eta sumka rvanaya vnutri.</i></p> <p>"This bag is torn inside."</p>	<p>Я не могу тебя сфотографировать, потому что у меня нет фотоаппарата. <i>Ya ne magu tebya sfatografiravat', patamu shto u menya net fataaparata.</i></p> <p>"I can't take a picture of you because I don't have a camera."</p>
<p>Можно с Вами сфотографироваться? <i>Mozhno s Vami sfotografirovat'sya?</i></p> <p>"May I take a picture with you?"</p>	<p>Извините, здесь нельзя фотографировать. <i>Izvinite, zdes' nel'zya fatografiravat'.</i></p> <p>"I'm sorry, you can't (it's not allowed to) take pictures here."</p>

<p>Где можно приобрести эту картину? <i>Gdye mozhno priobryesti etu kartinu?</i></p> <p>"Where can I (is it possible to) purchase this painting?"</p>	<p>Эта книга очень интересная. <i>Eta kniga ochen' interesnaya.</i></p> <p>"This book is very interesting."</p>
<p>О чём эта книга? <i>O chyom eta kniga?</i></p> <p>"What is this book about?"</p>	<p>Я купил книгу на английском языке. <i>Ya kupil knigu na angliyskom yazykye.</i></p> <p>"I bought a book in English."</p>
<p>Я купил книгу на английском языке. <i>Ya kupil knigu na angliyskom yazykye.</i></p> <p>"I bought a book in English."</p>	<p>У нас есть путеводители на английском и немецком языках. <i>U nas yest' putyevodityeli na angliyskom i nyemetskom yazykah.</i></p> <p>"We have travel guides in English and German."</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of Today's Lesson are 1) Permission/Prohibition/Possibility, 2) Reflexive Verbs, and 3) the Prepositional Case.

А внутри можно фотографировать?

"Can I take pictures inside?"

I. Permission, Prohibition, and Possibility

In the first part of this lesson, we'll discuss the words **можно**, meaning "it is possible or permissible" and **нельзя**, meaning "it's impossible or not permissible."

We can use these two words to denote permission and prohibition.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
---------	--------------	-----------

здесь можно курить?	<i>Zdes' mozhno kuri?</i>	"Is it okay to smoke here?"
нет, нельзя.	<i>Net, nel'zya.</i>	"No, it's not."
можно войти?	<i>Mozhno voiti?</i>	"Can I come in?"
да, можно.	<i>Da, mozhno.</i>	"Yes, you can."

Note: We use these expressions with infinitives, so no person is required. We can add a person for the specification, but we should put it into the dative case.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Мне нельзя курить.	<i>Mne nel'zya kuri?</i>	"I am not allowed to (can't, shouldn't) smoke."
Детям нельзя пить алкоголь.	<i>Detyam nel'zya pit' alkogol'.</i>	"Children are not allowed to (can't, shouldn't) drink alcohol."
Ему можно всё.	<i>Emu mozhno vsyo.</i>	"He is allowed to (can) do anything."

We can also use these two words to show possibility and impossibility.

For Example:

1. *Tam mozhno kupit' bilet.*
Там можно купить билеты.
"It's possible (I can, you can, we can...etc.) to buy tickets there."
2. *Zdes' nel'zya naiti anglogovoryasheva cheloveka.*
Здесь нельзя найти англоговорящего человека.
"It's impossible (I can't, we can't, you can't...etc.) to find an English-speaking person here."

II. Reflexive Verbs

We use reflexive verbs in Russian to indicate the concept of "self": in other words, to show that the subject performs an action on itself and not on someone else. For example, in the sentence "I dressed myself," the subject dresses himself or herself.

When this happens in English, we use a reflexive pronoun that ends in "-self" or simply omit the object. In Russian, you simply add **-ся** or **-сь** to the verb.

Compare the sentences in the tables below:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Он ударил Ивана.	<i>On udaril Ivana.</i>	"He hit (hurt) Ivan."
Он ударился.	<i>On udarilsya.</i>	"He hurt himself."
Russian	Romanization	"English"
Лена хочет подстричь собаку.	<i>Lena hochet podstrich sobaku.</i>	"Lena wants to give her dog a haircut."
Лена хочет подстричься.	<i>Lena hochet podstrichsya.</i>	"Lena wants to get a haircut."
Russian	Romanization	"English"
Она искупала ребёнка.	<i>Ona iskupala rebyonka.</i>	"She gave her child a bath."
Она искупалась.	<i>Ona iskupalas'.</i>	"She took a bath."
Russian	Romanization	"English"
Я потеряла очки.	<i>Ya poteryala ochki.</i>	"I lost my glasses."

Forming Reflexive Verbs

We can form reflexive verbs almost the same way as we form all other Russian verbs. The only difference is that you add **-ся** or **-сь**. To conjugate a reflexive verb, you need to drop **-ся** or **-сь**, and then conjugate it according to the usual rules.

Let's look at an example using the verbs *odevat'* (Одевать), meaning "to dress," and *odevat'sya* (Одеваться), meaning "to dress oneself."

For Example:

1. *Ona odevaet rebyonka.*

Она одевает ребёнка.

"She's dressing her child."

2. *Ona odevaetsya.*

Она одевается

"She's dressing herself." ("She's getting dressed.")

Of course, you can't perform certain actions on anyone but yourself due to their very nature. In Russian, these verbs normally use the reflexive form.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
улыбаться	<i>Ulybatsa</i>	"to smile"
смеяться	<i>Smeyatsa</i>	"to laugh"
надеяться	<i>nadeyatsa</i>	"to hope"

Here are some more reflexive verbs and sample sentences using them.

For Example:

Verb	Russian	Romanization	"English"
Открывать(ся), meaning "to open"	Магазин открывается в 9 утра.	<i>Magazeen</i> <i>otkryvaetsa v devyat' utra.</i>	"The store opens at nine o'clock a.m."
Закрывать(ся), meaning "to close"	Дверь не закрывается.	<i>Dver' ne zakryvaetsa.</i>	"The door isn't closing."
Начинать(ся), meaning "to begin"	Когда начинается концерт?	<i>Kogda nachinaetsa koncert?</i>	"When does the concert begin?"
Кончать(ся), meaning "to end"	Фильм уже кончился.	<i>Fil'm uzhe konchilsya.</i>	"The movie has already finished."

Here is the conjugation of the verb **открываться**, meaning "to open":

Present Tense:

Person	Russian	Romanization
Я	открываю(сь)	<i>otkryvayus'</i>
Ты	открываешь(ся)	<i>otkryvaeshsya</i>
Мы	открываем(ся)	<i>otkryvaemysya</i>
Вы	открываете(сь)	<i>otkryvaetes'</i>
Он, она, оно	открывает(ся)	<i>otkryvaetsa</i>
Они	открывают(ся)	<i>otkryvayutsa</i>

Past Tense:

Gender	Russian	Romanization
--------	---------	--------------

Masculine	открывал(ся)	<i>otkryval(sya)</i>
Feminine	открывала(сь)	<i>otkryvalas'</i>
Neuter	открывало(сь)	<i>otkryvalos'</i>
Plural	открывали(сь)	<i>otkryvalis'</i>

Future Tense:

Person	Russian	Romanization
Я	открою(сь)	<i>otkroyus'</i>
Ты	откроешь(ся)	<i>otkroeshsya</i>
Мы	откроем(ся)	<i>otkroemsya</i>
Вы	откроете(сь)	<i>otkroetes'</i>
Он, она, оно	откроет(ся)	<i>otkroetsa</i>
Они	откроют(ся)	<i>otkroyutsa</i>

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Эта банка не открывается.	Eta banka ne otkryvaetsa.	"This can isn't opening." / "I can't open this can.")
Окно не открывалось.	Okno ne otkryvalos'.	"The window wasn't opening." / "I couldn't open the window.")
Она тебе не откроется.	Ona tebe ne otkroetsa.	"She won't open up to you."

Prepositional Case

In Russian, we use the prepositional case after the prepositions **о** ("about"), **в** ("in"), **на** ("at").

Formation

Masculine Nouns:

Noun	Construction	Prepositional Case	Russian Example	"English"
Мичиган	add е	Мичигане	в Мичигане	"in Michigan"
стол	add е	столе	на столе	"on the table"
город	add е	городе	о городе	"about a"/"the city"

Feminine Nouns:

Noun	Construction	Prepositional Case	Russian Example	"English"
Москва	replace а or я with е	Москве	в Москве	"in Moscow"
земля	replace а or я with е	земле	на земле	"on the ground"
страна	replace а or я with е	стране	о стране	"about a/the country"

Feminine Nouns:

Noun	Construction	Prepositional Case	Russian Example	"English"
пиво	replace о with е	пиве	в пиве	"in the beer"
море	don't change е	море	на море	"on the sea"
лето	replace о with е	лете	о лете	"about a/the summer"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #21

Getting the Best Table and Russian Dish in Town

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 8 Grammar

21

RUSSIAN

1. ОФИЦИАНТКА: Здравствуйте, Вы один? Проходите, пожалуйста.
2. ДЖОН: Спасибо. Можно я сяду у окна?
3. ОФИЦИАНТКА: Да, пожалуйста. Что будете заказывать?
4. ДЖОН: А что Вы посоветуете?
5. ОФИЦИАНТКА: Могу посоветовать "свинину по-домашнему", "салат Оливье", "жульен грибной", а на десерт – сладкие блинчики с творогом.
6. ДЖОН: Я возьму свинину и блинчики.
7. ОФИЦИАНТКА: Пить что-нибудь будете?
8. ДЖОН: Чёрный кофе, пожалуйста. Извините, где здесь туалет?
9. ОФИЦИАНТКА: В конце зала.
10. ДЖОН: Спасибо. Счёт пожалуйста.

ROMANIZATION

1. WAITRESS: Zdrastvuite, Vy odin? Prohodite, pozhalusta.
2. JOHN: Spasibo. Mozhno ya syadu u okna?
3. WAITRESS: Da, pozhalusta. Shto budete zakazyvat'?

CONT'D OVER

4. JOHN: A shto Vy posovetuet?
5. WAITRESS: Mogu posovetovat' "svininu po-domashnemu", "salat Olivje", "zhuljen gribnoi", a na desert – sladkie blinchiki s tvorogom.
6. JOHN: Ya voz'mu svininu ee blinchiki..
7. WAITRESS: Pit' shto-nibud' budete?
8. JOHN: Chornyi kofe, pozhalusta. Izvinite, gde zdes' tualet?
9. WAITRESS: V konce zala.
10. JOHN: Spaseebo. Schot, pozhalusta.

ENGLISH

1. WAITRESS: Hello, are you by yourself? This way, please.
2. JOHN: Thank you. May I sit by the window?
3. WAITRESS: Yes, go ahead. What will you have?
4. JOHN: What will you recommend?
5. WAITRESS: I can recommend you a home-style pork, Olivier salad, mushroom julienne, and for the dessert – sweet pancakes with cottage cheese.
6. JOHN: I'll have pork and pancakes.

CONT'D OVER

7. WAITRESS: Will you have any drinks?
8. JOHN: Black coffee, please. Excuse me, where's a bathroom?
9. WAITRESS: In the end of the hall.
10. JOHN: Thank you. A bill, please.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
грибы	griby	mushrooms	noun	
в конце	v kontsye	at the end, in the end	phrase	
блинчики	blinchiki	pancakes	noun	
окно	okno	window	noun	neutral
свинина	svinina	pork	noun	feminine
салат	salat	a salad	noun	masculine
Десерт	desert	dessert	noun	
у	u	at, by	preposition	
посоветовать	posovetovat'	to advise, to give advice	verb (perfective)	
Сесть	syest'	to sit down	verb	
мочь	moch'	can; to be able to	verb	

проходитъ	prohodit'	to come through; to come in	verb
по-домашнему	po- domashnemu	home-style	adverb
сладкий	sladkiy	sweet	adjective
творог	tvorog	cottage cheese	noun
взять	vzyat'	take	verb (perfective)
пить	pit'	drink	verb
что-нибудь	chto-nibud'	something, anything	pronoun
черный	cherniy	black	adjective
туалет	tualyet	bathroom, toilet	noun
зал	zal	hall, parlor, room, auditorium	noun
счет	shyot	bill, check; account	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Это съедобные грибы?

Eto s'yedobnie griby?

"Are these mushrooms edible?"

У меня аллергия на грибы.

U menya alergiya na griby.

"I'm allergic to mushrooms."

<p>Где ты был в конце концов! <i>Gdye ty byl v kontsyе kontsov!</i> "Where on Earth have you been!"</p>	<p>В конце фильма главного героя убивают. <i>V kontsyе fil'ma glavnogo gyeroya ubivayut.</i> "In the end of the movie, the main character gets killed."</p>
<p>Она весь день смотрела в окно и ждала его. <i>Ona ves' den' smotrela v okno i zhdala yego.</i> "She was looking out of the window and waiting for him all day."</p>	<p>У нас хороший вид из окна. <i>U nas horoshiy vid iz okna.</i> "We have a nice view from the window."</p>
<p>Посмотри в окно! <i>Posmotri v okno!</i> "Look out the window!"</p>	<p>Окно закрыто. <i>Okno zakryto.</i> "The window is closed."</p>
<p>Я купила салат. <i>Ya kupila salat.</i> "I bought some salad."</p>	<p>Ты хочешь салата? <i>Ty hochesh' salata?</i> "Would you like some salad?"</p>
<p>Салат очень вкусный. <i>Salat ochyen' vkusniy.</i> "The salad is delicious."</p>	<p>Давай возьмём мороженое на десерт. <i>Davay voz'myom morozhyenoye na desert.</i> "Let's have ice cream for dessert."</p>
<p>Подожди меня у метро. <i>Podozhdi menya u metro.</i> "Wait for me by the subway."</p>	<p>У нас хороший вид из окна. <i>U nas khoroshiy vid iz okna.</i> "We have a nice view from the window."</p>
<p>Я не советую Вам это пить. <i>Ya ne sovyetuyu Vam eto pit'.</i> "I wouldn't recommend you to drink it."</p>	<p>Посоветуйте мне что-нибудь легкое и неострое. <i>Posovyetuite mne chto-nibud' lyegkoe i neostroye.</i> "Could you please recommend me something light and not spicy?"</p>

<p>Что они тебе посоветовали? <i>Chto oni tebe posovetovali?</i> "What did they advise you?"</p>	<p>Пожалуйста посоветуйте мне, что делать. <i>Posovetuy mne, chto delat'.</i> "Please, advise me on what to do."</p>
<p>Маша посоветовала мне идти к врачу. <i>Masha posovetovala mne poyti k vrachu.</i> "Masha advised me to go to the doctor."</p>	<p>Не садись сюда, здесь покрашено. <i>Nye sadis' syuda, zdyes' pokrasheno.</i> "Don't sit down here, it's painted."</p>
<p>Иван любит ходить на разные семинары. <i>Ivan lyubit khodit' na raznyye seminary.</i> "Ivan likes to go to different workshops."</p>	<p>Мы не можем так работать. <i>My ne mozhyem tak rabotat'.</i> "We can't work like this."</p>
<p>Ты можешь мне помочь? <i>Tu mozhyesh' mne pomoch'?</i> "Can you help me?" (informal)</p>	<p>Проходите, пожалуйста. <i>Prohodite, pozhaluysta.</i> "Come in, please."</p>
<p>Почему этот шоколад не сладкий? <i>Pochyemu etot shokolad ne sladkiy?</i> "Why is this chocolate not sweet?"</p>	<p>Творог лучше есть со сметаной. <i>Tvorog luchshye yest' so smyetanoy.</i> "Cottage cheese is best with sour cream."</p>
<p>Ты всё взял? <i>Tu vsyo vzyal?</i> "Have you taken everything?"</p>	<p>Возьми сумку, пожалуйста. <i>Voz'mi sumku, pozhaluysta.</i> "Take the bag, please."</p>
<p>Я не пью. <i>Ya ne p'yu.</i> "I don't drink." (alcohol)</p>	<p>Я не советую Вам это пить. <i>Ya ne sovetuyu Vam eto pit'.</i> "I wouldn't recommend you to drink it."</p>
<p>Что вы будете пить? <i>Chto vy budete pit'?</i> "What would you like to drink?"</p>	<p>Давай закажем что-нибудь крепкое. <i>Davay zakazhem chto-nibud' krepkoye.</i> "Let's order something strong."</p>

<p>Мне нужно купить что-нибудь жене и сыну.</p> <p><i>Mne nuzhno kupit' chto-nibud' zhene i synu.</i></p> <p>"I need to buy something for my wife and son."</p>	<p>Посоветуйте мне что-нибудь легкое и неострое.</p> <p><i>Posovetuyte mne chto-nibud' legkoye i neostroye.</i></p> <p>"Could you please recommend me something light and not spicy?"</p>
<p>Я купил черную куртку.</p> <p><i>Ya kupil chernuyu kurtku.</i></p> <p>"I bought a black jacket."</p>	<p>Туалет занят.</p> <p><i>Tualyet zanyat.</i></p> <p>"The toilet is occupied."</p>
<p>Ваш счёт, пожалуйста.</p> <p><i>Vash schyot, pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>"Here's your bill."</p>	<p>У него на счету - сто тысяч евро.</p> <p><i>U nyego na schyetu - sto tysyach yevro.</i></p> <p>"He's got one hundred thousand euros in his account."</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Learning How to Order Food in Russian Restaurants.

А что Вы посоветуете?

"What will you recommend?"

In this lesson, we will discuss some Russian words that will make ordering your food in Russian restaurants a lot easier: the preposition **У** (*u*), the preposition **В** (*v*), and the conjugation of the verb "can" (**Мочь**). Let's begin with the preposition **У** (*u*).

The Preposition У (*u*)

We have already learned this preposition as an indicator of a person-possessor.

For Example:

1. У меня есть собака

Umenya yest' sobaka

"I have a dog."

2. У него нет денег

U nego net deneg

"He doesn't have money."

Today, we'll learn another meaning of this particle: BY. The noun that goes after it is obviously a location. Besides, we should put this noun into the genitive case (just like the pronouns in the first case).

With masculine nouns: (add -a)

1. у стола

u stola

"by the table"

2. у выхода

u vuhoda

"by the exit"

With feminine nouns: (change -а/-я into -ы/-и)

1. у реки

u rekii

"by the river"

2. у стены

u steny

"by the wall"

With neuter nouns: (change -е/-о into -я/-а)

1. **у здания**

u zdaniya

"by the building"

2. **у окна**

u okna

"by the window"

With plural nouns: (change -ы/-и into -ов)

1. **у стендов**

u stendov

"by the stands"

2. **у киосков**

u kioskov

"by the kiosks"

The Preposition В (v)

We'd like to remind you of the meanings and usage of this preposition.

First, use it to indicate **direction** and it means "to." In this case, we should use the noun that goes after this preposition in the **accusative case** (check lesson 5):

в ("to")	ресторан,	<i>restoran,</i>	"restaurant,"
	банк,	<i>bank,</i>	"bank,"
	конец,	<i>konec,</i>	"end,"
	туалет	<i>tualet</i>	"toilet"

в ("to")	Россию,	<i>Rosiyu,</i>	"Russia,"
	Америку,	<i>Ameriku,</i>	"America,"
	компанию,	<i>kompaniyu,</i>	"company,"
	комнату	<i>komnatu</i>	"room"

	Колорадо, море, здание, место	N	Kolorado, more, zdanie, miesto	"Colorado," "sea," "building," "place"
--	--	---	---	---

We also use it to indicate **location** in the meaning of "in" or "at," in which case we should use the noun after it in the **prepositional case** (check lesson 4):

	ресторане, банке, конце, туалете	M	restorane, banke, konce, tualet	"restaurant," "bank," "end," "toilet"
в ("to")	России, Америке, компании, комнате	F	Rosiji, Amerike, kompaniji, komnate	"Russia," "America," "company," "room"
в ("to")	Колорадо, море, зданий, месте	N	Kolorado, more, zdaniji, mieste	"Colorado," "sea," "building," "place"

So, because in the Russian language we express the direction and location with the same preposition, you should pay close attention to the proper usage of cases, otherwise you can be easily misunderstood.

The Conjugation of the Verb "can" - Мочь

Present Tense

Person	Conjugated Verb	Romanization
Я	МОГУ	<i>mogoo</i>

Мы	можем	<i>mozhem</i>
Ты	можешь	<i>mozhesh</i>
Вы	можете	<i>mozhete</i>
Он, она, оно	может	<i>mozhet</i>
Они	могут	<i>mogut</i>

Future Tense

Person	Conjugated Verb	Romanization
Я	смогу	<i>smogoo</i>
Мы	сможем	<i>smozhem</i>
Ты	сможешь	<i>smozhesh</i>
Вы	сможете	<i>smozhete</i>
Он, она, оно	сможет	<i>smozhet</i>
Они	смогут	<i>smogut</i>

Past Tense

Gender	Conjugated Verb	Romanization
Feminine	могла	<i>mogla</i>
Masculine	мог	<i>mog</i>
Neuter	могло	<i>moglo</i>

Sample Sentences

Russian	Romanized	"English"
Ты можешь прийти пораньше?	<i>Ty mozhesh priytee poran'she?</i>	"Can you come a little earlier?"
Мы не сможем приехать в пятницу.	<i>My ne smozhem priyehat' v ryatnicu.</i>	"We won't be able to come on Friday."
Они не могли этого сделать.	<i>Oni ne moglee etogo sdelat'.</i>	"They couldn't have done it."

Note: You can't use the verb **МОЧЬ** when talking about skills! In a sentence like, "Can you play the piano?" you should use the verb **уметь** instead:

- ты умеешь играть на пианино?
Ty umeesh igrat' na pianino?



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #22

You Paid What? The Best Place to Shop in Russia

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 6 Sample Sentences
- 9 Grammar

22

RUSSIAN

1. УЛИЧНЫЙ
ТОРГОВЕЦ 1: Подходите, покупайте, русские матрёшки, хохлома, шкатулки, деревянные поделки, украшения...
2. УЛИЧНЫЙ
ТОРГОВЕЦ 2: Портреты, карикатуры...
3. УЛИЧНЫЙ
ТОРГОВЕЦ 3: Пирожки с капустой, с грибами, с картошкой...
4. ДЖОН: Сколько стоит та матрёшка на верхней полке?
5. УЛИЧНЫЙ
ТОРГОВЕЦ 1: 2000 рублей
6. ДЖОН: Ого... Это почти 70 долларов...
7. УЛИЧНЫЙ
ТОРГОВЕЦ 1: Это ручная работа, к тому же, внутри есть ещё 7 маленьких матрёшек.
8. ДЖОН: Покажите, пожалуйста. Хорошо, я возьму. Оо! А это что?
9. УЛИЧНЫЙ
ТОРГОВЕЦ 2: Это сувенирная балалайка. 5.000 рублей.

ROMANIZATION

1. STREET
VENDOR 1: Podhodeete, pokupaite, ruskie matryoshki, hohloma, shkatooolki, derevyannye podelki, ukrasheniya...

CONT'D OVER

2. STREET Portrety, karikatury...
- VENDOR 2:
3. STREET Piroshki s kapoostoi, s gribami, s kartoshkoj...
- VENDOR 3:
4. JOHN: Skol'ko stoit ta matryoshka na verhnej polke?
5. STREET dvesti rublei
- VENDOR 1:
6. JOHN: Ogo... Eto pochtee sem'desyat dolarov...
7. STREET Eto ruchnaya rabota, k tomu zhe, vnutree jest' jescho sem' malen'kih matryoshek.
- VENDOR:
8. JOHN: Pokazhite, pozhalusta. Horosho, ya voz'mu. Ooh! A eto shto?
9. STREET Eto suvenирnaya balalaika. Pyat' tysyach rublei.
- VENDOR:

ENGLISH

1. STREET Come and buy, Russian matryoshka-dolls, khokhloma, caskets, wooden handicrafts, jewelry...
- VENDOR 1:
2. STREET Portraits, caricatures...
- VENDOR 2:
3. STREET Cabbage pies, mushroom pies, potato pies...
- VENDOR 3:

CONT'D OVER

4. JOHN: How much is that doll on the upper shelf?
5. STREET Two thousand rubles
- VENDOR 1:
6. JOHN: Jeez... That's almost seventy dollars...
7. STREET It's handmade; besides, there are another seven little dolls inside.
- VENDOR:
8. JOHN: May I see it a little closer? Okay, I'll take it. Oh, and what's this?
9. STREET It's a souvenir balalaika, five thousand rubles.
- VENDOR:

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
карикатура	karikatura	caricature	noun	
внутри	vnutri	inside	adverb	
грибы	griby	mushrooms	noun	
хохлома	hohloma	khokhloma (traditional wooden articles decorated in red, gold, and black)	noun	
поделки	podyelki	handicrafts	noun	
портрет	portryet	portrait	noun	

пирожки	pirozhki	patty cakes, small pies, patties	noun
матрёшка	matryoshka	matryoshka (Russian doll)	noun
шкатулка	shkatulka	casket	noun
покупать	pokupat'	to buy	verb
деревянный	derevyaniy	wooden	adjective
подходить	podhodit'	to come up	verb (imperfective)
украшение	ukrasheniye	jewelry	noun
Капуста	Kapusta	cabbage	noun
картошка	kartoshka	potatoes	noun
верхний	vyerhniy	upper	adjective
полка	polka	shelf	noun
почти	pochti	almost	adverb
ручная работа	ruchnaya rabota	handmade	phrase
к тому же	k tomu zhye	besides, moreover	phrase
маленький	malen'kiy	small	adjective
показывать	pokazat'	to show	verb (perfective)
сувенирный	suvenirniy	souvenir (for presents, but not real)	adjective

балалайка	balalaika (Russian traditional musical instrument)	balalaika (Russian traditional musical instrument)	noun
-----------	--	--	------

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Он нарисовал карикатуру на учителя. <i>On narisoval karikaturu na uchityelya.</i> "He drew a teacher's caricature."	Ты был внутри этого замка? <i>Ty byl vnutri etogo zamka?</i> "Have you been inside this castle?"
Эта сумка рваная внутри. <i>Eta sumka rvanaya vnutri.</i> "This bag is torn inside."	Это съедобные грибы? <i>Eto s'yedobnie griby?</i> "Are these mushrooms edible?"
У меня аллергия на грибы. <i>U menya alergiya na griby.</i> "I'm allergic to mushrooms."	Давай сходим на выставку детских поделок. <i>Davay shodim na vystavku dyetskih podyelok.</i> "Let's go to the children's handicrafts exhibition."
На стене висит портрет президента России. <i>Na stenye visit portret pryezidyenta Rossii.</i> "There's a portrait of a Russian President on the wall."	Я испекла пирожки с мясом, попробуй. <i>Ya ispyekla pirozhki s myasom, poprobuy.</i> "I baked meat pies; have a bite."
Пирожки с мясом - мои любимые. <i>Pirozhki s myasom - moi lyubimyye.</i> "Patty cakes with meat are my favorite."	Какая интересная матрёшка! <i>Kakaya intyeryesnaya matryoshka!</i> "What an interesting matryoshka!"

<p>Это очень старая музыкальная шкатулка. <i>Eto ochyen' staraya muzykal'naya shkatulka.</i> "It's a very old musical box."</p>	<p>Это моя шкатулка с украшениями. <i>Eto moya shkatulka s ukrašyeniymi.</i> "This is my jewelry box."</p>
<p>Я не собираюсь это покупать. <i>Ya nye sobirayus' eto pokupat'.</i> "I'm not going to buy it."</p>	<p>Пара покупала одежду. <i>Para pokupala odyezhdu.</i> "A couple bought clothes."</p>
<p>Этот стол деревянный или пластмассовый? <i>Etot stol derevyaniy ili plastmasoviy?</i> "Is this table made of wood or plastic?"</p>	<p>Не подходи ко мне. <i>Nye podhodi ko mnye.</i> "Don't come close to me."</p>
<p>Она не носит украшений. <i>Ona nye nosit ukrašyeni.</i> "She doesn't wear jewelry."</p>	<p>Это моя шкатулка с украшениями. <i>Eto moya shkatulka s ukrašyeniymi.</i> "This is my jewelry box."</p>
<p>Продавщица показала украшения. <i>Prodavschitsa pokazala ukrašyeniya.</i> "The saleswoman showed jewelry."</p>	<p>Квашенная капуста - одно из традиционных русских блюд <i>Kvashyennaya kapusta - odno iz traditsionnyh russkih blyud</i> "Sour cabbage is one of the traditional Russian dishes."</p>
<p>Я поужинал жареной картошкой. <i>Ya pouzhinal zharyenoy kartoshkoy.</i> "I had fried potatoes for dinner."</p>	<p>Мы живём на самом верхнем этаже. <i>My zhivyom na samom vyerhnyem etazhye.</i> "We live on the top floor."</p>
<p>Дайте мне словарь с полки, пожалуйста. <i>Dayte mnye slovar' s polki, pozhaluysta.</i> "Give me a dictionary from the shelf, please."</p>	<p>Возьми ключи с полки. <i>Voz'mi klyuchi s polki.</i> "Take the keys from the shelf."</p>

<p>Мы почти в Москве. <i>My pochti v Moskve.</i> "We're almost in Moscow."</p>	<p>Я прожил в Москве почти 10 лет. <i>Ya prozhil v Moskve pochti 10 lyet.</i> "I lived in Moscow almost ten years."</p>
<p>Моему сыну почти 5 лет. <i>Moymu synu pochti 5 lyet.</i> "My son is almost five years old."</p>	<p>Уже почти полночь. <i>Uzhye pochti polnoch'.</i> "It's almost midnight."</p>
<p>Я почти уснул в аэропорту. <i>Ya pochti usnul v aeroportu.</i> "I almost fell asleep in the airport."</p>	<p>Уже почти 10, пора выходить. <i>Uzhye pochti 10, pora vyhodit'.</i> "It's almost 10 o'clock, time to head off."</p>
<p>Я почти ничего не ел сегодня. <i>Ya pochti nichyego nye yel syegodnya.</i> "I ate almost nothing today."</p>	<p>Москве почти девятьсот лет. <i>Moskve pochti dyevyat'sot lyet.</i> "Moscow is almost nine hundred years old."</p>
<p>Это сумка ручной работы. <i>Eto sumka ruchnoy raboty.</i> "This is a handmade bag."</p>	<p>Я устал, к тому же, мне рано вставать. Пойдём домой. <i>Ya ustal, k tomu zhye, mnye rano vstavat'.</i> <i>Poydyom domoy.</i> "I'm tired; besides, I have to wake up early. Let's go home."</p>
<p>У меня есть маленькая шоколадка, хочешь? <i>U myenya yest' malyen'kaya shokoladka, hochyesh'?</i> "I have a small chocolate, want some?"</p>	<p>Этот пиджак слишком маленький. <i>Etot pidzhak slishkom malyen'kiy.</i> "This jacket is too small."</p>
<p>Я никому не показывал свои стихи. <i>Ya nikomu nye pokazyval svoi stihi.</i> "I haven't shown my poems to anyone."</p>	<p>Покажи мне свой новый телефон. <i>Pokazhi mnye svoy novyy tyelyefon.</i> "Show me your new phone."</p>

Я покажу тебе Москву. <i>Ya pokazhu tyebye Moskvu.</i> "I'll show Moscow to you."	Продавщица показала украшения. <i>Prodavschitsa pokazala ukrashyeniya.</i> "The saleswoman showed jewelry."
За углом есть сувенирный магазин. <i>Za uglom yest' suvenirniy magazin.</i> "There's a souvenir shop around the corner."	Мой дед умел играть на балалайке. <i>Moy dyed umyel igrat' na balalaikye.</i> "My granddad could play balalaika."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson are the Adjectives That Made from the Nouns.

Подходите, покупайте, русские матрёшки, хохлома, шкатулки, деревянные поделки, украшения...

"Come and buy Russian matryoshka-dolls, khokhloma, caskets, wooden handicrafts, jewelry..."

Nouns in English may be modified by adjectives ("big park") or by nouns ("city park"). In Russian, only adjectives may modify nouns, which means that we must convert nouns and verbs to adjectives before they can modify nouns. In English, for example, one may say "*souvenir balalaika*," but in Russian, we must first convert the word **сувенир** ("souvenir") to an adjective, **сувенирная**, before this phrase is possible: **сувенирная балалайка**.

The important point to remember is that adjectives, whatever their origin, must agree with the noun they modify. They do this with the endings, which are associated with the same cases and genders that nouns reflect in their endings. So if a noun has feminine gender and is in the genitive case, the adjective must be feminine and in its genitive case form, too.

The phrase above, **сувенирная балалайка**, is in the nominative case. But if "on balalaika" is **на балалайке** in Russian, then "on **souvenir** balalaika" must be **на сувенирной балалайке**. And if "about balalaika" is **о балалайке**, then "about **souvenir** balalaika" must be **о сувенирной балалайке**. Notice that the adjective endings, which correspond to the noun endings, are not identical, and so must be memorized independently.

In our lesson, we have two adjectives that come from the nouns:

1. **ручная** ("handmade")
comes from **рука** ("hand")
2. **сувенирная** ("souvenir," "not for use")
comes from **сувенир**, ("souvenir")

Just like any other adjectives we've learned before, they must agree with nouns in number, gender, and case.

Let's take all adjectives from our lesson and see what endings they would have in the nominative case, singular and plural numbers.

Russian	"English"
деревянные поделки	"wooden handicrafts"
на верхней полке	"on the upper shelf"
ручная работа	"hand work"
маленьких матрёшек	"(of) little dolls"
сувенирная балалайка	"souvenir balalaika"

Singular	Plural		
Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Any Gender
-ый, -ий -ой	-ое, -ее	-ая, -яя	-ые, -ие
деревянный верхний ручной маленький сувенирный	Деревянное верхнее ручное маленькое сувенирное	деревянная верхняя ручная маленькая сувенирная	деревянные верхние ручные маленькие сувенирные

Examples:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
---------	--------------	-----------

деревянная ложка	<i>derevyannaya loshka</i>	"wooden spoon"
верхняя одежда	<i>verhnyaya odezhda</i>	"upper clothes" (coat, jacket, etc)
ручное животное	<i>ruchnoe zhivotnoe</i>	"hand" (tame, domestic) animal"
маленькая девочка	<i>malen'kaya devochka</i>	"little girl"
сувенирные монеты	<i>suvenirnye monety</i>	"souvenir (commemorative) coins"

Below is a table of a very common ending, which many adjectives take according to the case:

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative	-ый, ий	-ая, яя	-ое, ее	-ые, ими
Accusative	Nom. or Gen.	-ую, юю	Nom or Gen	Nom or Gen
Genitive	-ого, его	ой, ей	-ого, его	ых, их
Dative	-ому, ему	-ой, ей	-ому, ему	-ым, им
Prepositional	-ом, ем	-ой, ей	-ом, ем	-ых, их
Instrumental	-ым, им	-ой, ей	-ым, им	-ыми, ими

Note! The masculine and neuter agreement patterns are identical except for the nominative and accusative cases. However, the neuter nominative and accusative endings are identical, as are the masculine ones, if the noun they modify is inanimate.

Sample Sentences

1. Я ем деревянной ложкой
Ya jem derevyannoj loshkoj
"I eat with a wooden spoon." (Instrumental case)
2. На ней нет верхней одежды
Na nej net verhnej odezhdy
"She doesn't have any coat (jacket) on." (Genitive case)
3. Я люблю ручных животных
Ya lyublyu ruchnyh zhivotnyh
"I like tame animals." (Genitive case)
4. Она дала конфету маленькой девочке
Ona dala konfetu malen'koj devochke
"She gave a candy to a little girl." (Dative case)
5. Он купил альбом для сувенирных монет
On kupil al'bom dlya suvenirnyh monet
"He bought an album for souvenir coins." (Genitive case)



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #23

Take Charge of the Situation Using Your Russian

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 8 Grammar

23

RUSSIAN

1. ОБЪЯВЛЕНИЕ В МЕТРО: Следующая станция – Тверская.
2. ДЖОН: Извините, Вы выходите?
3. ПАССАЖИР: Да, выхожу.
4. ДЖОН: Извините, Вы не подскажите, как пройти к отелю Голден Эпл?
5. ПРОХОЖИЙ: Это недалеко. Идите прямо по Тверской, потом поверните направо, на Настасьинский переулок. Идите до конца, потом поверните налево, на улицу Малая Дмитровка. Отель будет по левой стороне через метров сто.
6. ДЖОН: Большое спасибо.

ROMANIZATION

1. SUBWAY ANNOUNCEMENT: Sleduyuschaya stantsiya - Tverskaya.
2. JOHN: Izvinite, Vy vyhoditye?
3. PASSENGER: Da, vyhozhu.
4. (on the street)i JOHN: Izvinite, Vy ne podskazhite, kak proyti k otelyu Golden Apple?

CONT'D OVER

6. PASSERBY: Eto nedaleko. Idite pryamo po Tverskoy, potom povernite napravo, na Nastas'inskiy pereulok. Idite do kontsa, potom povernite nalevo, na ulitsu Malaya Dmitrovka. Otel' budet po levoy storone cherez metrov sto.
7. JOHN: Bol'shoe spasibo.

ENGLISH

1. SUBWAY Next station is Tverskaya.
ANNOUNCEMENT:
T:
2. JOHN: Excuse me, are you getting off?
3. PASSENGER: Yes, I am.
4. JOHN: Excuse me, how can I get to the Golden Apple Hotel?
5. PASSERBY: It's not far. Go straight down the Tverskaya street, then turn right to the Nastasjinskij lane. Go straight 'til the end, then turn left to the Malaya Dmitrovka Street. The hotel will be on your left in about one hundred meters.
6. JOHN: Thank you very much.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
---------	--------------	---------	-------	--------

ПОТОМ	потом	then, later, after that	adverb
метр	метр	meter (3.3 feet)	noun
переулок	пereulok	lane	noun
подсказывать	подсказывать	to give a hint, to give a clue; to prompt	verb (imperfective)
недалеко	nedaleko	near, not far, approximately	adverb
прямо	прямо	frankly, directly, straight (on)	adverb
повернуть	пoyerнуть	to turn	verb
выходить	выходить	to go out, to come out, to get off	verb
Вы не подскажите...	Вы не подскажите...	would you please tell me...	phrase
станция	станция	station	noun
пройти	пройти	to pass through; to get to	verb (perfective)
следующий	следующий	next	present participle, adjective
идти	идти	to go (on foot)	verb
направо	направо	to the right	adverb
до конца	до конца	to the end, until the end	phrase
налево	налево	to the left	adverb

улица	ulitsa	street	noun	feminine
левый	lyeviy	left	adjective	
сторона	storona	side	noun	
через	cherez	across; in (about time, distance), through	preposition, adverb	
большой	bol'shoy	big, large	adjective	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Я потом тебе напишу, хорошо?

Ya potom tyebye napishu, horoshoo?

"I'll write to you later, okay?"

Он пригласил меня, а потом сказал,

что занят.

On priglasil myenya, a potom skazal, chto zanyat.

"He invited me and then said he was busy."

Что мне потом следует сделать?

Chto mne potom sleduyet sdelat'?

"What should I do after that?"

Он почти 2 метра ростом.

On pochti 2 myetra rostom.

"He's almost two meters tall."

В этом переулке почти нет магазинов.

V etom pereulke pochti net magazinov.

"There are almost no stores on this lane."

Не подсказывай, я сам отгадаю.

Nye podskazyvay, ya sam otgadayu.

"Don't give me any hints; I'll guess myself."

Я живу недалеко от метро.

Ya zhivu nedaleko ot metro.

"I live not far from the subway."

Недалеко отсюда есть хорошее кафе.

Nedaleko otsyuda yest' horosheye kafe.

"There's a nice café not far from here."

Иди прямо до светофора.

Idi pryamo do svyetofora.

"Go straight until the crossroads."

Стой прямо, не горбись.

Stoy pryamo, nye gorbis'.

"Stay straight, don't stop."

<p>Иди прямо. <i>Idi pryamo.</i> "Go straight on." (informal).</p>	<p>Скажи мне прямо. <i>Skazhi mnye pryamo.</i> "Tell me frankly." (informal)</p>
<p>Поверните направо здесь, пожалуйста. <i>Povyertye napravo zdyes', pozhaluysta.</i> "Turn right here, please." (to a taxi driver)</p>	<p>Нам нужно повернуть налево на светофоре. <i>Nam nuzhno povyernut' nalyevo na svyetofore.</i> "We have to turn left at the crossroad."</p>
<p>Нам пора выходить. <i>Nam pora vyhodit'.</i> "It's time, we should head off."</p>	<p>Я боюсь выходить вечером на улицу одна. <i>Ya boyus' vyhodit' vecherom na ulitsu odna.</i> "I'm scared to go out on the street in the evening on my own."</p>
<p>Вы не подскажите, где ближайшая автобусная остановка? <i>Vy ne podskazhite, gde blizhaishaya avtobusnaya ostanovka?</i> "Could you please tell me where the nearest bus stop is?"</p>	<p>Какая это станция? <i>Kakaya eto stantsiya?</i> "What station is it?"</p>
<p>Я буду ждать тебя на станции. <i>Ya budu zhdat' tyebya na stantsii.</i> "I'll be waiting for you at the station."</p>	<p>Скажите, пожалуйста, где ближайшая станция метро? <i>Skazhitye, pozhaluysta, gdye blizhayshaya stantsiya myetro?</i> "Could you tell me where the nearest metro station is?"</p>
<p>Как нам пройти к метро? <i>Kak nam proйти k myetro?</i> "How can we get to the subway?"</p>	<p>Разрешите пройти. <i>Razryeshitye proyti.</i> "Let me pass through please."</p>

<p>Младшеклассница прошла тест. <i>Mladshyeklassnitsa proshla tyest.</i></p> <p>"The elementary school student passed the test."</p>	<p>Когда следующий автобус? <i>Kogda slyeduyuschiy avtobus?</i></p> <p>"When is the next bus?"</p>
<p>Кто следующий? <i>Kto slyeduyuschiy?</i></p> <p>"Who's next?"</p>	<p>На следующий день мы пошли в кино. <i>Na slyeduyuschiy dyen' my poshli v kino.</i></p> <p>"The next day, we went to a movie."</p>
<p>Следующий автобус в пять. <i>Slyeduyuschiy avtobus v pyat'.</i></p> <p>"The next bus is at five."</p>	<p>Кто следующий? <i>Kto slyeduyuschiy?</i></p> <p>"Who's the next?"</p>
<p>В следующем году мы поедем в Америку. <i>V slyeduyuschiem godu my poyedyem v Amyeriku.</i></p> <p>"Next year, we are going to America."</p>	<p>Ну что, идём? <i>Nu chto, idyom?</i></p> <p>"Well, are we going?"</p>
<p>Идём в кино! <i>Idyom v kino!</i></p> <p>"Let's go to the movie theater!"</p>	<p>Вы пойдете на дискотеку? - Конечно. <i>Vi poide na diskoteku? - Konechno.</i></p> <p>"Are you going to the disco? - Sure."</p>
<p>Поверните направо здесь, пожалуйста. <i>Povyemtye napravo zdyes', pozhaluysta.</i></p> <p>"Turn right here, please." (to a taxi driver)</p>	<p>Идите до конца улицы. <i>Iditye do kontsa ulitsy.</i></p> <p>"Go to the end of the street."</p>
<p>Мы не досмотрели фильм до конца. <i>My nye dosmotryeli fil'm do kontsa.</i></p> <p>"We didn't watch the movie to the end."</p>	<p>Нам нужно повернуть налево на светофоре. <i>Nam nuzhno povyernut' nalyevo na svyetofore.</i></p> <p>"We have to turn left at the crossroad."</p>
<p>Машина поворачивала налево. <i>Mashina poverachivala nalyevo.</i></p> <p>"A car turned left."</p>	<p>Идите до конца улицы. <i>Iditye do kontsa ulitsy.</i></p> <p>"Go to the end of the street."</p>

<p>На какой улице ты живёшь? <i>Na kakoy ulitsye ty zhivyosh'?</i> "What street do you live on?"</p>	<p>Он правша, но умеет писать и левой рукой. <i>On pravsha, no umyeyet pisat' i lyevoy rukoy.</i> "He's right-handed, but he can write with his left hand, too."</p>
<p>Левая сторона дороги - для велосипедистов. <i>Lyevaya storona dorogi - dlya velosipedistov.</i> "The left side of the road is for cyclists."</p>	<p>Он шёл по другой стороне улицы. <i>On shyol po drugoy storonye ulitsy.</i> "He was walking on the other side of the road."</p>
<p>Левая сторона дороги - для велосипедистов. <i>Lyevaya storona dorogi - dlya velosipedistov.</i> "The left side of the road is for cyclists."</p>	<p>Давай встретимся через час. <i>Davay vstryetimsya cherez chas.</i> "Let's meet in an hour."</p>
<p>Как нам пройти через эту толпу? <i>Kak nam proyti cherez etu tolpu?</i> "How can we get through this crowd?"</p>	<p>Через год мне будет двадцать лет. <i>Cherez god mne budyet dvadtsat' lyet.</i> "I'll be twenty in a year."</p>
<p>Аэропорт "Шереметьево" очень большой. <i>Aeroport "Sheremet'yovo" ochen' bol'shoy.</i> "The Airport 'Sheremetyevo' is very big."</p>	<p>Это слишком большой размер для тебя. <i>Eto slishkom bol'shoy razmer dlya tebya.</i> "This size is too big for you."</p>
<p>Аляска – самый большой штат в Америке. <i>Alyaska – samyy bol'shoy shtat v Amerike.</i> "Alaska is the biggest state in America."</p>	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Telling Directions in Russian.

Извините, Вы не подскажите, как пройти к отелю Голден Эпл?

"Excuse me, how can I get to the Golden Apple Hotel?"

When asking about the directions, any place you name should go with the preposition **К**, which indicates the direction and we can translate it as "towards." The places themselves should be put into the dative case:

Как пройти к...

("How can I get to...")

Russian	Romanization	"English"
магазине	<i>magazinu</i>	"store"
банку	<i>banku</i>	"bank"
ресторану	<i>restoranu</i>	"restaurant"
музею	<i>muzeyu</i>	"museum"
станции	<i>stancii</i>	"station"
остановке	<i>ostanovke</i>	"bus stop"

When giving directions, you start with the word "go" (e.g. "go straight").

*If you are giving directions to a pedestrian, you should say **идите** (*idite*), which is a polite command form of "go on foot."

*If it is a driver you are explaining the road to, you should start with **езжайте** (*ezhaite*), which is a polite command form of "go by transport."

Examples:

1. Идите прямо, потом направо
Idite pryamo, potom napravo
"Go straight, then left."

2. Езжайте до конца улицы
Ezhaite do konca ulicy
"Go (drive) till the end of the street"

The words "right" and "left" differ according to the grammatical class they belong to.

In the context of "to the right" and "to the left," they are adverbs; therefore, they sound as:

1. **направо** (*napravo*) - "to the right"
2. **налево** (*nalevo*) - "to the left"

When they are adjectives, as in "right side," or "left side," they sound as:

1. **правый** (*praviy*) - "right"
2. **левый** (*leviy*) - "left"

The word "side" in Russian has feminine gender, therefore the adjectives "right" and "left" change according to it:

1. **правая сторона** (*pravaya storona*) - "right side"
2. **левая сторона** (*levaya storona*) - "left side"

When you say that something is "on your right" or "on your left," you put the words "side," "right," and "left," into the dative case and use them with the preposition **по** (*po*).

Sample Sentences

1. Магазин будет по правой стороне дороги
Magazeen boodet po pravoj storone dorogi
"The store will be on the right side of the road."

2. По левой стороне будет банк
Po levoj storone boodet bank
"There will be a bank on your left."

The Preposition ПО (po)

This preposition plays a significant role in telling directions. It has different meanings, except for the one mentioned above.

For Example:

1. "down" (as in "down the road")
2. "along" (as in "along the road")
3. "around" (as in "drive around the country")

Very often, it's not translated in English.

For Example:

1. **идти по улице**
idti po ulice
"walk the street/go down the street"
2. **ехать по городу**
ehat' po gorodu
"to go down the city/to drive in the city"
3. **идти по берегу**
idti po beregu
"go along the river"

The Way to Express an Approximate Value

To express the exact number, length, weight, or any other measurement, we put a noun after a number.

For Example:

1. 100 метров
sto metrov
"one hundred meters"

2. 10 лет
desyat' let
"ten years"

3. 3 килограмма
tri kilogramma
"three kilos"

If we switch the number and the noun around, we'll get an approximate value.

For Example:

1. метров 100
metrov sto
"about one hundred meters"

2. лет 10
let desyat'
"about ten years"

3. килограмма 3
kilogramma tri
"about three kilos"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #24

A Brush with Destiny - Two Strangers Reunited in Russia

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 8 Grammar

24

RUSSIAN

1. ЕЛЕНА: Джон! Я не могу поверить! Что Вы здесь делаете?
2. ДЖОН: Простите?
3. ЕЛЕНА: Это я, Лена!
4. ДЖОН: Лена! Вот это да! Я немного заблудился, ищу свой отель. А Вы что здесь делаете?
5. ЕЛЕНА: Я работаю недалеко отсюда. Ну, как Вам Москва?
6. ДЖОН: Очень нравится, мне будет жаль улетать.
7. ЕЛЕНА: Давайте как-нибудь встретимся, пообщаемся.
8. ДЖОН: С удовольствием! Как насчёт завтра?
9. ЕЛЕНА: Отлично.
10. ДЖОН: Хорошо, я Вам позвоню!

ROMANIZATION

1. ELENA: John! Ya ne mogu poverit! Chto Vy zdes' delayete?
2. JOHN: Prostite?
3. ELENA: Eto ya, Lena!

CONT'D OVER

4. JOHN: Lena! Vot eto da! Ya nemnogo zabludilsya, ischu svoi otel'. A Vy chto zdes' delayete?
5. ELENA: Ya rabotayu nedaleko otsyuda. Nu, kak Vam Moskva?
6. JOHN: Ochen' nraovitsya, mne budet zhal' uletat'.
7. ELENA: Davayte kak-nibud' vstrechimsya, poobschaemsya.
8. JOHN: S udovol'stviem! Kak naschot zavtra?
9. ELENA: Otlichno.
10. JOHN: Horosho, ya Vam pozvonyu!

ENGLISH

1. ELENA: John! I can't believe it! What are you doing here?
2. JOHN: Pardon me?
3. ELENA: It's me, Lena!
4. JOHN: Lena! Holy cow! I'm a bit lost here, looking for my hotel. And what are you doing here?
5. ELENA: I work not far from here. So what do you think of Moscow?
6. JOHN: I like it a lot, it'll be a pity to leave.

CONT'D OVER

7. ELENA: Let's meet and have a chat sometime.
8. JOHN: With pleasure! How about tomorrow?
9. ELENA: Sounds great.
10. JOHN: Okay, I'll call you!

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
улетать	ulyetat'	to fly away	verb (imperfective)
Общаться	Obschat'sya	to communicate, talk, intermingle	verb
заблудиться	zabludit'sya	to get lost	verb
Отсюда	Otsyuda	from here	adverb
жаль	zhal'	it's a pity; sorry; unfortunately	adverb
как-нибудь	kak-nibud'	sometime, somehow	adverb
вот это да!	vot eto da!	an exclamation of great surprise	exclamation
искать	iskat'	to look for, search	verb
простить	prostit'	to forgive; to pardon	verb
Свой	Svoy	here: my	pronoun
Верить	Vyerit'	to believe	verb
как Вам...	kak Vam...	what do you think of..., how do you like...	phrase

встретиться	vstretil'sya	to meet (with each other)	verb (perfective)
с удовольствием!	s udovol'stviyem!	with pleasure	phrase
как насчёт...	kak naschyon...	how about...	phrase
отлично	otlichno	great, perfectly, very well	adverb
звонить	zvonit'	to call	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Когда Вы улетаете? <i>Kogda Vy ulyetayetye?</i> "When are you leaving? ("flying away")"	Во сколько ты улетаешь? <i>Vo skol'ko ty ulyetayesh'?</i> "What time are you leaving?" (by plane)
С ней интересно общаться. <i>S nyey intyeryesno obschat'sya.</i> "She's interesting to talk to."	Мы с ним часто общаемся. <i>My s nim chasto obschayemsya.</i> "We see each other often."
Я с ним больше не общаюсь. <i>Ya s nim bol'shye nye obschayus'.</i> "I don't see him anymore."	Вы не заблудились? <i>Vy nye zabludilis'?</i> "Are you lost?"
Я заблудился в центре Москвы. <i>Ya zabludilsya v tsyentrye Moskvy.</i> "I got lost in the center of Moscow."	Я живу недалеко отсюда. <i>Ya zhivu nyedalyeko otsyuda.</i> "I live not far from here."
Уходи отсюда. <i>Uhodi otsyuda.</i> "Get away from here."	Ему никого не жаль. <i>Yemu nikogo nye zhal'.</i> "He is not sympathetic to anyone."

<p>Мне жаль её. <i>Mnye zhal' yevo.</i> "I feel sorry for her."</p>	<p>Жаль, что мне уже нужно уезжать. <i>Zhal', chto mnye uzhye nuzhno uyezzhat'.</i> "It's a pity I have to leave already."</p>
<p>Как-нибудь разберёмся. <i>Kak-nibud' razbyeryomsya.</i> "We'll figure it out somehow."</p>	<p>Я как-нибудь зайду. <i>Ya kak-nibud' zaydu.</i> "I'll stop by sometime."</p>
<p>Давай сходим в кино как-нибудь. <i>Davay shodim v kino kak-nibud'.</i> "Let's go to the movies sometime."</p>	<p>Я тебе как-нибудь позвоню. <i>Ya tyebye kak-nibud' pozvonyu.</i> "I'll call you sometime."</p>
<p>Что ты ищешь? <i>Chto ty ishchesh'?</i> "What are you looking for?"</p>	<p>Он уже 2 года ищет себе девушку. <i>On uzhye 2 goda ischyet syebye dyevushku.</i> "He's been looking for a girlfriend for two years already."</p>
<p>Я ищу свой кошелёк. <i>Ya ischu svoy koshelyok.</i> "I'm looking for my wallet."</p>	<p>Что ты ищешь в моей комнате? <i>Chto ty ischyesh' v moyey komnatye?</i> "What are you looking for in my room?"</p>
<p>Я ищу квартиру в Москве. <i>Ya ischu kvartiru v Moskve.</i> "I'm looking for a flat in Moscow."</p>	<p>Что ты ищешь? <i>Chto ty ischyesh'?</i> "What are you looking for?"</p>
<p>Простите, как пройти к банку? <i>Prostite, kak proyti k banku?</i> "Excuse me, how can I get to a bank?"</p>	<p>Прости меня за всё. <i>Prosti menya za vsyo.</i> "Forgive me for everything."</p>
<p>Ты пригласишь своих друзей? <i>Ty priglasish' svoih druzey?</i> "Will you invite your friends?"</p>	<p>Он мне много рассказал о своей семье. <i>On mnye mnogo rasskazal o svoyey syem'ye.</i> "He told me a lot about his family."</p>

<p>Дай мне свой адрес. <i>Day mnye vsoy adryes.</i> "Give me your address."</p>	<p>Я не верю своим глазам! <i>Ya nye vyeryu svoim glazam!</i> "I can't believe my eyes!"</p>
<p>Я ему не верю. <i>Ya yemti nye vyeryu.</i> "I don't believe him."</p>	<p>Как Вам наша выставка? <i>Kak Vam nasha vystavka?</i> "How do you like our exhibition?"</p>
<p>Как тебе моя причёска? <i>Kak tyebye moya prichyoska?</i> "What do you think of my hairstyle?"</p>	<p>Давай встретимся в воскресенье. <i>Davay vstryetimsya v voskryesen'ye.</i> "Let's meet on Sunday."</p>
<p>Мы случайно встретились на улице. <i>My sluchayno vstryetilis' na ulitsye.</i> "We bumped into each other on the street."</p>	<p>Где мы можем встретиться? <i>Gdye my mozhym vstryetit'sya?</i> "Where can we meet?"</p>
<p>Завтра я встречаюсь с Олегом. <i>Zavtra ya vstryechayus' s Olyegom.</i> "Tomorrow, I'm meeting Oleg."</p>	<p>Я с удовольствием к тебе приду. <i>Ya s udovol'stviem k tyebye pridu.</i> "I'll come to you gladly."</p>
<p>Как насчёт погулять по ночной Москве? <i>Kak naschytot pogulyat' po nochnoy Moskvye?</i> "How about we walk around Moscow at night?"</p>	<p>Как насчёт ужина завтра? <i>Kak naschytot uzhina zavtra?</i> "How about dinner tomorrow?"</p>
<p>Она учится на "отлично." <i>On uchitsya na "otlichno."</i> "She's a straight-A student."</p>	<p>Я тебе позвоню часов в 10. <i>Ya tyebye pozvonyu chasov v 10.</i> "I will call you around ten."</p>
<p>Он мне не звонит уже неделю. <i>On mnye nye zvonit uzhye nyedyelyu.</i> "He hasn't called me for a week already."</p>	<p>Можно я тебе позвоню? <i>Mozhno ya tyebye pozvonyu?</i> "Can I call you?"</p>

Позвони мне утром.

Pozvoni mnye utrom.

"Call me in the morning."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Possessive and Reflexive Pronouns in Russian.

Я немножко заблудился, ищу свой отель. А Вы что здесь делаете?

"I'm a bit lost here, looking for my hotel. And what are you doing here?"

Here's a quick reminder: just like in any other language, Russian has simple (personal) pronouns and possessive pronouns, the latter of which indicate ownership:

Personal Pronouns

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Я	<i>ya</i>	"I"
Мы	<i>my</i>	"we"
Ты	<i>ty</i>	"you" (informal)
Вы	<i>vy</i>	"you" (formal, plural)
Он	<i>on</i>	"he"
Она	<i>ona</i>	"she"
Оно	<i>ono</i>	"it"
Они	<i>oni</i>	"they"

Possessive Pronouns

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Мой	<i>moi</i>	"my"
Наш	<i>nash</i>	"our"
Твой	<i>tvoi</i>	"your"
Ваш	<i>vash</i>	"your" (formal, plural)
Его	<i>ievo</i>	"his"
Её	<i>jeyo</i>	"her"
Его	<i>jevo</i>	"its"
Их	<i>ih</i>	"their"

Unlike the English pronoun "my," the Russian pronoun **мой** changes its form depending on gender or number of the modified noun, as the chart below shows:

Construction	Russian	"English"
Masculine singular	Это мой паспорт.	"It is my passport."
Feminine singular	Это моя лампа.	"It is my passport."
Plural	Это мои билеты.	"These are my tickets."

In Russian, there is also a particular pronoun, *svoi* (СВОЙ), called a reflexive possessive pronoun, which means "one's own." This pronoun can replace all possessive pronouns (singular and plural) if the **subject** of the sentence is the **owner** of the object (in other words, if the possessor and the subject are in the same phrase).

English has no correlate of the possessive reflexive pronoun: in English, we use the regular possessive pronoun regardless of whether the reference is identical to the subject.

Generally, the reflexive possessive pronoun can replace any possessive pronoun, but its use

is **required in the third person** ("he," "she," "it") and **optional in the first and second** ("you"). However, we almost always use it if the subject is **ты**.

For Example:

Construction	Russian	"English"
First person (optional)	Я забыл мой телефон. or Я забыл свой телефон.	"I forgot my (own) phone."
Second person (required)	Ты забыл свой телефон?	"Did you forget your (own) phone?"
Third person (required)	Он забыл свой телефон.	"He forgot his (own) phone."

We use **СВОЙ** like **Мой** ("my"). It has the same forms, which the chart below shows:

Construction	Russian	Romanization
Masculine	СВОЙ	<i>Svoi</i>
Feminine	СВОЯ	<i>Svoya</i>
Neuter	СВОЁ	<i>Svoyo</i>
Plural	СВОИ	<i>Svoee</i>

For Example:

Noun	Russian	Romanization	"English"
собака ("dog") (feminine)	Он любит свою собаку.	<i>On lyubit svoyu sobaku.</i>	"He loves his dog."
дом ("house") (masculine)	Они продали свой дом.	<i>Onee prodali svoi dom.</i>	"They sold their house."

Дело ("business") (neuter)	Она открыла своё дело.	<i>Ona otkryla svoyo delo.</i>	"She started her own business."
ботинки ("shoes") (plural)	Папа выбросил свои старые ботинки.	<i>Papa vybrosil svoee starye botinki.</i>	"Dad threw away his old shoes."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #25

Get Treated like an Emperor in Russia

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar

25

RUSSIAN

1. ДЕНИС: Наконец-то, Джон! Проходи в комнату.
2. ДЖОН: Спасибо.
3. ДЕНИС: Познакомься, это мои родители, Владимир и Ольга, и сестра Маша.
4. ДЖОН: Здравствуйте, я Джон.
5. ОТЕЦ: Здравствуйте, Джон, очень рады с Вами познакомиться.
6. МАТЬ: Мы столько слышали о Вас.
7. ДЖОН: И я очень рад с вами познакомиться. А, вот, это сувениры из Америки.
8. МАТЬ: Спасибо большое! Садитесь, Джон, угощайтесь.
9. ОТЕЦ: А где Ваша семья?
10. ДЖОН: Родители живут в Колорадо, сестра в Калифорнии, брат в Нью-Йорке. Ну, а я в Мичигане.
11. МАТЬ: О, у Вас большая семья.
12. ДЖОН: Да, у меня есть фотография, вот.

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. DENIS: Nakonyets-to, John, prohodi v komnatu.
2. JOHN: Spasibo.
3. DENIS: Poznakom'sya, eto moi roditeli, Vladimir ei Ol'ga, i sestra Masha.
4. JOHN: Zdravstvuyte, ya John.
5. FATHER: Zdravstvuyte, John, ochen' rady s Vami poznakomitsya.
6. MOTHER: My stol'ko slyshali o Vas.
7. DENIS: I ya ochen' rad s vami poznakomitsya. A, vot, eto suveniry iz Ameriki.
8. MOTHER: Spasibo bol'shoe! Sadites', John, ugoschaytes'.
9. FATHER: A gde Vasha semya?
10. JOHN: Roditeli zhivut v Kolorado, sestra v Kalifornii, brat v N'yu-Yorke. Nu, a ya v Michigane.
11. MOTHER: Oh, u Vas bol'shaya semya.
12. JOHN: Da, u menya yest' fotografiya, vot.

ENGLISH

1. DENIS: Finally, John! Come into the room.
2. JOHN: Thank you.

CONT'D OVER

3. DENIS: Let me introduce you to my parents, Vladimir and Olga, and my sister, Masha.
4. JOHN: Hello, I'm John.
5. FATHER: Hello, John, we are very glad to meet you.
6. MOTHER: We've heard so much about you.
7. DENIS: I'm very glad to meet you, too. Oh, here are some souvenirs from America.
8. MOTHER: Thank you very much! John, sit down and help yourself.
9. FATHER: And where's your family?
10. JOHN: My parents live in Colorado, my sister is in California, and my brother is in New York. Well, and I live in Michigan.
11. MOTHER: Oh, you have a big family.
12. JOHN: Yes, I have a picture here.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
угощаться	Ugoschatsa	to help yourself (to food and drink)	verb (reflexive)	
фотография	Fotografiya	photo	noun	

сестра	sestra	sister	noun
столько	stol'ko	so many, so much; this many, this much	adverb
угощать	ugoschat'	to treat with; to wine and dine	verb
семья	sem'ya	family	noun
родители	roditeli	parents	noun
брать	brat	brother	noun
познакомиться	poznakomit'sa	to meet, to get acquainted, to get to know (someone)	verb
рад	Rad	glad, pleased	adjective
комната	komnata	room	noun
слушать	slyshat'	to hear	verb
жить	zhit'	to live, to stay	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Угощайся, не стесняйся. <i>Ugoschaisya, ne stesnyaisya.</i> "Help yourself; don't be shy."	У меня есть фотография сестры. <i>U menya jest' fotografiya sestry.</i> "I have a picture of my sister."
Познакомься, это моя сестра, Катя. <i>Poznakom'sya, eto moya sestra, Katya.</i> "Meet my sister, Katya."	У меня есть фотография сестры. <i>U menya jest' fotografiya sestry.</i> "I have a picture of my sister."

<p>У него очень красивая сестра. <i>U nego ochen' krasivaya sestra.</i> "He has a very beautiful sister."</p>	<p>Ты столько съешь? <i>Ty stol'ko sjesh?</i> "Can you eat this much?"</p>
<p>Неужели он столько зарабатывает? <i>Neuzheli on stol'ko zarabatyvaet?</i> "Does he really earn that much?"</p>	<p>Он тебя чем-нибудь угощал? <i>On tebya chem-nibud' ugoschal?</i> "Did he treat you to anything?"</p>
<p>Он угостил меня кофе. <i>On ugosteet menya kofe.</i> "He treated me to a coffee."</p>	<p>Разрешите угостить Вас ужином. <i>Razresheete ugosteet' Vas uzhinom.</i> "Let me treat you to a dinner."</p>
<p>Где твоя семья? <i>Gde tvoya semja?</i> Where's your family?</p>	<p>У меня маленькая семья. <i>U menya malen'kaya semja.</i> "I have a small family."</p>
<p>У меня большая семья. <i>U menya bol'shaya sem'ya.</i> "I have a big family."</p>	<p>Мои родители уже на пенсии. <i>Moi roditeli uzhye na ryensii.</i> "My parents have already retired."</p>
<p>У тебя такие молодые родители. <i>U tyebya takiye molodyye roditeli.</i> "You have such young parents."</p>	<p>У меня есть старший брат. <i>U menya yest' starshiy brat.</i> "I have an older brother ."</p>
<p>Я приехал в Москву с братом. <i>Ya priyekhal v Moskvu s bratom.</i> "I came to Moscow with my brother."</p>	<p>Приятно познакомиться. <i>Priyatno poznakomit'sya.</i> "Nice to meet you."</p>
<p>Рад с Вами познакомиться, наконец! <i>Rad s Vami poznakomit'sa, nakonyets!</i> "I'm glad to finally meet you!"</p>	<p>Познакомься, это моя сестра, Катя. <i>Poznakom'sya, eto moya sestra, Katya.</i> "Meet my sister, Katya."</p>

<p>Я так рад тебя видеть! <i>Ya tak rad tebya veedet!</i> "I'm so glad to see you!"</p>	<p>Он не очень рад её приеду. <i>On ne ochen' rad eyo priezdu.</i> "He's not very happy about her visit."</p>
<p>Рад с Вами познакомиться, наконец! <i>Rad s Vami poznakomitsa!</i> "I'm glad to finally meet you!"</p>	<p>В этой квартире четыре комнаты. <i>V etoy kvartere chetyre komnaty.</i> "There are four rooms in this apartment."</p>
<p>Я забыла очки в комнате. <i>Ya zabyala ochki v komnatye.</i> "I forgot my glasses in the room."</p>	<p>Это твоя комната? <i>Eto tvoya komnata?</i> "Is this your room?"</p>
<p>Я много о Вас слышал. <i>Ya mnogo o Vas slyshal.</i> "I've heard a lot about you."</p>	<p>Приятно слышать. <i>Priyatno slyshat'.</i> "Nice to hear." (e.g., a compliment)</p>
<p>Где ты живёшь? <i>Gdye ty zhivyosh'?</i> "Where do you live?"</p>	<p>Она хотела бы здесь жить. <i>Ona hotyela by zdyes' zhit'.</i> "She'd like to live here."</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Declension of Russian Pronouns.

И я очень рад с вами познакомиться. А, вот, это сувениры из Америки.
 "I'm very glad to meet you, too. Oh, here are some souvenirs from America."

In the previous lesson, we learned the basics of Russian pronouns: personal and possessive pronouns in the nominative case.

BUT each of the Russian pronouns decline according to their case, just like nouns. In today's lesson, we had the following pronouns: **с Вами, о Вас, у Вас, and у меня**. Luckily, as often happens in the Russian language, pronouns often decline according to certain patterns.

Most of the Russian language materials give long tables of pronouns according to every grammatical case. But we offer you a different approach: remember the pronouns together with the prepositions or in a context, so they have some strong associations in your head.

First, we'll give you the declensions of the pronouns with some of the common prepositions.

Genitive Case

The preposition we'll use with the genitive case is *u* (У), meaning "at (somebody's)." We most frequently use it in sentences that express possession ("I have...") or location ("at a friend's").

Russian	Romanization	"English"
У меня	<i>u menya</i>	"I have"; "at my (place)"
У нас	<i>u nas</i>	"we have"; "at our..."
У тебя	<i>u tebya</i>	"you have"; "at your..."
У Вас	<i>u Vas</i>	"you have"; "at your" (formal, plural)
У него	<i>u nevo</i>	"he/it has"; "at his/its..."
У неё	<i>u neyo</i>	"she has"; "at her..."
У них	<i>u nih</i>	"they have"; "at their..."

Here are some examples of how you can use these pronouns in the genitive case.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
У меня болит живот.	<i>u menya boleet zhivot.</i>	"I have a stomachache."
У тебя есть собака?	<i>u tebya jest' sobaka?</i>	"Do you have a dog?"

Сегодня будет вечеринка у них дома.	<i>Sevodnya boodet vecherinka u nih doma.</i>	"There will be a party at their home tonight."
Я вчера был у неё.	<i>Ya vchera byl u neyo.</i>	"I was at her (place) yesterday."

Prepositional Case

Here are the prepositions we will use in the examples with the pronouns in this section:

1. *o (O)* - "about"
2. *v (B)* - "in," "inside"
3. *na (Ha)* - "on"

Here are the declensions of the pronouns using these prepositions:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Обо/во/на мне	<i>obo mne</i>	"about/in/on me"
О/в/на нас	<i>o nas</i>	"about/in/on us"
О/в/на тебе	<i>o tebe</i>	"about/in/on you"
О/в/на Вас	<i>o Vas</i>	"about/in/on you" (formal, plural)
О/в/на нём	<i>o nyom</i>	"about/in/on him/it"
О/в/на ней	<i>o nej</i>	"about/in/on her"
О/в/на них	<i>o nih</i>	"about/in/on them"

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Мы ничего о нём не знаем.	<i>My nichenko o nyom ne znaem.</i>	"We know nothing about him."
В нём есть что-то особенное.	<i>V nyom jest' shto-to osobennoe.</i>	"There's something special about him" (literally, "in him").
На ней было красное платье.	<i>Na nej bylo krasnoe platje.</i>	"She was wearing a red dress."
На них можно положиться.	<i>Na nih mozhno polozhitsa.</i>	"They are reliable (people)."/"You can rely on them."

Instrumental Case

The preposition we'll use with the instrumental case is *s* (C), meaning "with."

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Со мной	<i>So mnoi</i>	"with me"
С нами	<i>S nami</i>	"with us"
С тобой	<i>S toboi</i>	"with you"
С Вами	<i>S Vami</i>	"with you" (formal, plural)
С ним	<i>S nim</i>	"with him"
С ней	<i>S nei</i>	"with her"
У них	<i>U nih</i>	"with them"

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Ты пойдёшь со мной?	<i>Ty poidyosh so mnoi?</i>	"Will you go with me?"
Я с ними не общаюсь.	<i>Ya s nimi ne obschayus'.</i>	"I don't see them/talk to them."
Кто это с тобой?	<i>Kto eto s toboi?</i>	"Who's that with you?"

Language Expansion

As you already know, in Russian there are fewer prepositions than in English, and we express meaning only through modified words, including the pronouns. For example, the phrase "to me" in Russian would sound just like "**мне.**"

Here are some common declensions of pronouns that you should remember.

Dative Case

The most common situations to use the dative case include:

I. Giving and receiving

For Example:

1. **Дай мне яблоко.**

"Give me an apple."

II. To represent the concept of sending or communicating something, as with the English word "to" (for example, "write to," "bring to," "call (by telephone) to")

III. With **Нравиться**, meaning "to like"

For Example:

1. Ему нравится лето.
"He likes summer."

IV. When using the word **Нужен**, meaning "to need"

For Example:

1. Ей нужен телефон.
"She needs a phone."

V. Talking about conditions or emotions

For Example:

1. Мне холодно.
"I'm cold."

Here is the declension of the pronouns in the dative case:

Russian	<i>Romanization</i>	"English"
Мне	<i>Mne</i>	"to me"
Нам	<i>Nam</i>	"to us"
Тебе	<i>Tebe</i>	"to you"
Вам	<i>Vam</i>	"to you" (formal, plural)
Ему	<i>Yemu</i>	"to him/it"
Ей	<i>Yey</i>	"to her"
Им	<i>Im</i>	"to them"

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Я дала ему свой телефон.	<i>Ya dala yemu svoi telefon.</i>	"I gave him my phone (number)."
Ты сказал ей о вечеринке?	<i>Ty skazal yey o vecherinke?</i>	"Have you told her about the party?"
Им не нравится Москва.	<i>Im ne nrauitsa Moskva.</i>	"They don't like Moscow."
Нам нужен милиционер.	<i>Vam nuzhen milicioner.</i>	"We need a policeman."
Вам не скучно?	<i>Vam ne skuchno?</i>	"Aren't you bored?"

Genitive Case

The genitive case is almost identical to the usage with Y above. We commonly use the genitive case after negation, as in **Его там нет**, meaning "He's not there."

Here is the declension of the pronouns in the genitive case:

Russian	Romanization
меня	<i>menya</i>
нас	<i>nas</i>
тебя	<i>tebya</i>
Вас	<i>Vas</i>
его	<i>yeyo</i>
её	<i>yeyo</i>
их	<i>ih</i>

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Не беспокой его.	<i>Ne bespokoy yevo.</i>	"Don't bother him."
Их нет дома.	<i>Ih net doma.</i>	"They are not at home."
Как её зовут?	<i>Kak yeyo zovut?</i>	"What's her name?"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #26

Your Home-Cooked Russian Meal Away from Home

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar

26

RUSSIAN

1. МАТЬ ДЕНИСА: Ну, всё готово. Джон, Вы едите мясо?
2. ДЖОН: Да, ем.
3. МАТЬ ДЕНИСА: Очень хорошо. Я приготовила своё фирменное блюдо – пельмени в грибном соусе.
4. ДЕНИС: Бери, пока горячие.
5. ДЖОН: Ммм, очень вкусно!
6. МАТЬ ДЕНИСА: Давайте, я Вам ещё положу.
7. ДЖОН: Ой, нет, спасибо, я уже наелся.
8. ОТЕЦ ДЕНИСА: Ну, как Вам Москва?
9. ДЖОН: В целом, очень понравилась.
10. МАТЬ ДЕНИСА: Приезжайте ещё, мы всегда будем рады Вас видеть!

ROMANIZATION

1. DENIS'S MOTHER: Nu, vsyo gotovo. John, Vy yedite myaso?
2. JOHN: Da, yem.

CONT'D OVER

3. DENIS'S MOTHER: Ochen' horosho. Ya prigotovila svoyo firmennoye blyudo – pel'meni v gribnom souse.
4. DENIS: Beri, poka goryachie.
5. JOHN: Mmm, ochen' vkusno!
6. DENIS'S MOTHER: Davaite ya Vam escho polozhu.
7. JOHN: Oj, net, spasibo, ya uzhe nayelsya.
8. DENIS'S FATHER: Nu, kak Vam Moskva?
9. JOHN: V tselom, ochen' ponravilas'.
10. DENIS'S MOTHER: Priezhayte escho, my vsegda budem rady Vas videt'!

ENGLISH

1. DENIS'S MOTHER: Okay, everything's ready. John, do you eat meat?
2. JOHN: Yes, I do.
3. DENIS'S MOTHER: Very good. I cooked my specialty, dumplings in mushroom sauce.
4. DENIS: Have them while they are hot.

CONT'D OVER

5. JOHN: Mmm, very tasty!
6. DENIS'S MOTHER: Let me give you some more.
7. JOHN: Oh, no thank you, I'm already full.
8. DENIS'S FATHER: So what do you think of Moscow?
9. JOHN: Generally, I really liked it.
10. DENIS'S MOTHER: Come again. We will always be happy to see you!

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
горячий	goryachiy	hot	adjective	
наесться	nayest'sya	to be full	verb	
готовить	gotovit'	to cook	verb	
соус	sous	sauce	noun	masculine
Пока	Poka	while; still	adverb	
положить	polozhit'	to put, put down	verb (perfective)	
мясо	myaso	meat	noun	neutral
фирменное блюдо	firmyennoye blyudo	specialty, signature dish	phrase	neuter
есть	yest'	to eat	verb	

		Russian style	
пельмени	pelmeni	ravioli filled with meat, dumplings	noun
готовый	gotoviy	ready	adjective
брать	brat'	to take	verb
уже	uzhe	already, yet	adverb
в целом	v tsyelom	in general, altogether	phrase
приезжать	priyezzhat'	to come, to arrive	verb (imperfective)
всегда	vsegda	always	adverb
видеть	vidyet'	to see	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Кофе слишком горячий. <i>Kofye slishkom goryachiy.</i> "The coffee is too hot."	Я так наелась, что не могу дышать. <i>Ya tak nayelas', chto nye mogu dyshat'.</i> "I'm so full that I can't breathe."
Ты наелся? Может, ещё супа? <i>Ty nayelsya? Mozhyet, yeschyo supa?</i> "Are you full? Some more soup maybe?"	Я ещё не наелся. <i>Ya yeschyo nye nayelsya.</i> "I'm not full yet/still hungry."
Сегодня не все девушки умеют готовить. <i>Segodnya ne vse devushki umeyut gotovit'.</i> "Nowadays not all girls can cook."	Я не умею готовить. <i>Ya ne umeyu gotovit'.</i> "I can't cook."

<p>Моя мама хорошо готовит. <i>Moya mama khorosho gotovit.</i> "My mom cooks well."</p>	<p>Я пока не готов к таким переменам. <i>Ya poka nye gotov k takim pyeremenam.</i> "I'm not ready for such changes yet."</p>
<p>Бери салат, пока я не доел. <i>Byeri salat, poka ya nye doyel.</i> "Have some salad before I finish it."</p>	<p>Положи мои вещи на место. <i>Polozhi moi vyeschi na myesto.</i> "Put my things back to where they belong."</p>
<p>Вы любите блинчики с мясом? <i>Vy lyubitye blinchiki s myasom?</i> "Do you like pancakes with meat?"</p>	<p>Этот ресторан славится своим фирменным блюдом - фуагра. <i>Etot restoran slavitsya svoim firmennym blyudom - fuagra.</i> "This restaurant is famous for its signature dish, foie gras."</p>
<p>У моей мамы есть фирменное блюдо – пирог с вишнями. <i>U moyey mamy yest' firmennoye blyudo – pirog s vishnyami.</i> "My mom has a specialty: a cherry pie."</p>	<p>Эти йогурты старые. Не ешь их. <i>Eti yogurty staryye. Nye yesh' ih.</i> "These yogurts are old. Don't eat them."</p>
<p>Что вы ели на обед? <i>Chto vy yeli na obed?</i> "What did you eat for lunch?"</p>	<p>Я часто ем салат. <i>Ya chasto yem salat.</i> "I often eat salad."</p>
<p>Я пока не готов к таким переменам. <i>Ya poka ne gotov k takim peremenam.</i> "I'm not ready for such changes yet."</p>	<p>Суп ёщё не готов. <i>Sup yeshyo ne gotov.</i> "The soup is not ready yet."</p>
<p>Не мешай ему, он готовится к экзамену. <i>Ne myeshay yemu, on gotovitsya k ekzamenu.</i> "Don't bother him, he's getting ready for his exam."</p>	<p>Я готова, идём. <i>Ya gotova, idyom.</i> "I'm ready, let's go."</p>

<p>Он часто берёт взятки. <i>On chasto byeryot vzyatki.</i> "He often takes bribes."</p>	<p>Люди брали клубнику. <i>Lyudi brali klubniku.</i> "People took strawberries."</p>
<p>Ты уже был в Париже? <i>Ty uzhye byl v Parizhye?</i> "Have you already been to Paris?"</p>	<p>Ты уже была в Америке? <i>Ty uzhye byla v Amyerikye?</i> "Have you already been to America?"</p>
<p>Я уже написал письмо. <i>Ya uzhye napisal pis'mo.</i> "I've already written the letter."</p>	<p>Как ты себя чувствуешь в целом? <i>Kak ty syebya chuvstvuyesh' v tsyelom?</i> "How do you feel in general?"</p>
<p>В целом, встреча прошла успешно. <i>V tsyelom, vstryecha proshla uspyeshno.</i> "In general, the meeting went successfully."</p>	<p>Он всегда приходит вовремя. <i>On vsyegda prihodit vovremya.</i> "He always comes on time."</p>
<p>Приезжайте к нам почаще. <i>Priyezzhaytye k nam pochaschye.</i> "Come and visit us more often."</p>	<p>Я приеду в воскресенье. <i>Ya priyedu v voskryesyen'ye.</i> "I'll come on Sunday."</p>
<p>Здесь всегда так шумно? <i>Zdes' vsegda tak shumno?</i> "Is it always so noisy here?"</p>	<p>Он всегда приходит вовремя. <i>On vsegda prihodit vovremya.</i> "He always comes on time."</p>
<p>Я так рад Вас снова видеть! <i>Ya tak rad Vas snova vidyet'!</i> "I'm so glad to see you again!"</p>	<p>Я плохо вижу. <i>Ya ploho vizhu.</i> "I can't see well."</p>
<p>Мы будем рады Вас видеть. <i>My budyem rady Vas vidyet'.</i> "We'll be glad to see you."</p>	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Phrases to use When You are a Guest in Someone's House.

Ну, всё готово. Джон, Вы едите мясо?
"Okay, everything's ready. John, do you eat meat?"

We've learned about the Russian adverbs already, but here's another usage of them we should talk about. In the dialogue, we use the following example: *vsyo gotovo* (всё готово) meaning "everything is ready."

We used an adverb, **готово**, not an adjective, **готовый**, because when we talk about things in general, not specifying the gender or number of what we are talking about, we usually use adverbs.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
всё было прекрасно.	<i>vsyo bylo prekrasno.</i>	"Everything was wonderful."
очень вкусно.	<i>ochen' vkusno.</i>	"(It's) very tasty."
будет весело.	<i>budet veselo.</i>	"(It) will be fun."

Russian Adjectives: "ready"

gotoviy (Готовый) "ready"

When you want to use this adjective to describe a person or a thing (for example, "I'm ready"), you should use a short form of it according to the gender and number:

Construction	Noun	Russian	Romanization	"English"
Masculine	он	готов	<i>gotov</i>	"He's ready."

Feminine	каша	готова	gotova	"The porridge is ready."
Neuter	задание	готово	gotovo	"The task is ready."
Plural	мы	готовы	gotovy	"We are ready."

Russian Adverbs: "while," "yet"

poka (ПОКА) "while" or "yet"

You might know this word in the meaning of "bye." Yes, these words are homonyms (they share the same spelling and the same pronunciation but have different meanings), just like the word *yest'*(есть), which also has two different meanings: one is "there is" or "there are" and the other one is "to eat."

Just like in English, we can place *poka* either at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle of it.

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
Пока он спал, я готовила завтрак.	<i>Poka on spal, ya gotovila zavtrak.</i>	"While he was sleeping, I was cooking breakfast."
Давай посмотрим фильм, пока он не	<i>Davai posmotrim fil'm, poka on ne prishol.</i>	"Let's watch a movie while he hasn't come yet."
Я должен с ним встретиться, пока я в Москве.	<i>Ya dolzhen s nim vstrechitsa, poka ya v Moskve.</i>	"I have to meet him while I'm in Moscow."
Он пока не пришёл.	<i>On poka ne prishol.</i>	"He hasn't come yet (still)."
Я пока не знаю.	<i>Ya poka ne znayu.</i>	"I don't know yet."

Conjugations of Some of the Verbs from This Lesson

Russian:		
Pronoun	есть ("eat")	Romanization
Я	ем	<i>yem</i>
Мы	едим	<i>yedeem</i>
Ты	ешь	<i>yesh</i>
Вы	едите	<i>yedite</i>
Он/она/оно	ест	<i>yest</i>
Они	едят	<i>yedyat</i>

Russian:		
Pronoun	готовить ("cook"; "prepare")	Romanization
Я	ГОТОВЛЮ	<i>gotovlyu</i>
Мы	ГОТОВИМ	<i>gotovim</i>
Ты	ГОТОВИШЬ	<i>gotovish</i>
Вы	ГОТОВИТЕ	<i>gotovite</i>
Он/она/оно	ГОТОВИТ	<i>gotovit</i>
Они	ГОТОВЯТ	<i>gotovyat</i>

For Example:

Russian	Romanization	"English"
----------------	---------------------	------------------

Я не ем хлеб.	Ya ne yem hleb.	"I don't eat bread."
Он мало ест.	On malo yest.	"He eats little."
Обычно я сама готовлю.	Obychno ya sama gotovlyu.	"Usually, I cook myself."
Как ты готовишь это блюдо?	Kak ty gotovish eto blyudo?	"How do you cook this dish?"
Они готовятся к соревнованиям.	Oni gotovyatsa k sorevnovaniyam.	"They are preparing for the competition."

We most often use the verb *nayestsa* (наестся), meaning "to be full," in the past tense; therefore, we'll only conjugate it in the past tense:

Gender	Russian	Romanization	"English"
Masculine	наелся	<i>nayelsya</i>	"(he) is full"
Feminine	наелась	<i>nayelas'</i>	"(she) is full"
Neuter	наелось	<i>nayelos'</i>	"(it) is full"
Plural	наелись	<i>nayelis'</i>	"(they) are full"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #27

Reliving the Past in Russia - The Trip Recap

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar

27

RUSSIAN

1. ЕЛЕНА: Джон, давайте перейдём на "ты"
2. ДЖОН: Давайте, конечно.
3. ЕЛЕНА: Ты уже скоро улетаешь... Какие у тебя впечатления о России в целом?
4. ДЖОН: Смешанные. С одной стороны, всё такое новое и необычное, с другой стороны, я очень устал от работы.
5. ЕЛЕНА: Ммм... Понятно. А где ты был в Москве?
6. ДЖОН: Я был в Третьяковской Галерее, на Красной Площади, на Арбате. А ещё я заходил к другу, познакомился с его семьёй.
7. ЕЛЕНА: Правда? Так у тебя была возможность немного отдохнуть.
8. ДЖОН: Да, но у меня в планах есть ещё кое-что!

ROMANIZATION

1. ELENA: John, davayte pereidyom na "ty"
2. JOHN: Davaite, koneshno.
3. ELENA: Ty uzhe skoro uletaesh... Kakiye u tebya vpechatleniya o Rossii v tselom?

CONT'D OVER

4. JOHN: Smeshannyye. S odnoy storony, vsyo takoe novoe i neobychnoe, s drugoi storony, ya ochen' ustal ot raboty...
5. ELENA: Mmm... Ponyatno. A gde ty byl v Moskve?
6. JOHN: Ya byl v Tretjakovskoi galereye, na Kkrasnoy ploschadi, na Arbate. A escho ya zahodil k drugu, poznakomilsya s ego semyoy.
7. ELENA: Pravda? Tak u tebya byla vozmozhnost' nemnogo otdohnut'.
8. JOHN: Da, no u menya v planah yest' escho koe-chto!

ENGLISH

1. ELENA: John, let's be less formal with each other.
2. JOHN: Yes, sure.
3. ELENA: You are leaving soon...what impressions have you got of Russia in general?
4. JOHN: Mixed impressions. From one side, everything is so new and unusual, from another side, I got really tired of work.
5. ELENA: Mmm...I get it. Where have you been in Moscow?
6. JOHN: I've been to Tretjakov Gallery, Red Square, Arbat. And also I dropped by on a friend's house, got to know his family.
7. ELENA: Really? So you had a chance to have fun a little.

CONT'D OVER

8. JOHN: Yes, but I have something else in my plans!

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
работа	rabota	work, job	noun	
немного	nemnogo	a little, not much	adverb	
впечатление	vpyechatlyeniye	impression	noun	neutral
новый	noviy	new	adjective	masculine
устать	ustat'	be tired, to get tired	verb	
заходить	zahodit'	to drop by (in); to come in	verb	
скоро	skoro	soon	adverb	
смешанный	smyeshanniy	mixed	adjective	
конечно	konechno	of course, certainly	adverb	
С одной стороны..., с другой стороны...	S odnoi storony..., s drugoi storony...	On the one hand.../On another hand...	structure	
перейти на	pereyti na	to change from formal way of speaking to each other (Вы) to informal (ты)	phrase	
необычный	neobychniy	unusual	adjective	

возможность	vozmozhnost'	chance, opportunity; possibility	noun
отдохнуть	otdohnut'	to take a rest; to have fun	verb
кое-что	koye-chto	something, somewhat	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Я люблю свою работу.

Ya lyublyu svoyu rabotu..

"I love my job."

У меня интересная работа, но я очень устаю к вечеру.

U myenya intyeryesnaya rabota, no ya ochyen' ustayu k vyechyeru.

"I have an interesting job, but I get really tired by the evening."

Я немного устал.

Ya nyemnogo ustal.

"I'm a little tired."

Он немного говорит по-русски.

On nyemnogo govorit po-russki.

"He speaks a little Russian."

Я хочу немного сыра.

Ya hochu nyemnogo syra.

"I'd like a little cheese."

Этот город произвёл на меня негативное впечатление.

Etot gorod proizvol na myenya nyegativnoye vryechatlyeniye.

"This city had a negative impression on me."

У меня осталось много приятных впечатлений.

U myenya ostalos' mnogo priyatnyh vryechatlyeniy.

"I have lots of nice impressions left."

Это новый фильм?

Eto noviy fil'm?

"Is it a new movie?"

<p>Это новая модель телефона. <i>Eto novaya modyel' tyelyefona.</i> "This is a new telephone model."</p>	<p>У меня интересная работа, но я очень устаю к вечеру. <i>U myenya intyeryesnaya rabota, no ya ochyen' ustayu k vyechyeru.</i> "I have an interesting job, but I get really tired by the evening."</p>
<p>Если ты устала, пойдём домой. <i>Yesli ty ustala, poydyom domoy.</i> "If you are tired, let's go home."</p>	<p>Я очень устал сегодня. <i>Ya ochyen' ustal syegodnya.</i> "I am very tired today."</p>
<p>Ты заходил в банк сегодня? <i>Ty zahodil v bank syegodnya?</i> "Did you stop by a bank today?"</p>	<p>Заходи ко мне вечером. <i>Zahodi ko mnye vyechyerom.</i> "Drop by on me in the evening."</p>
<p>Нужно покупать подарки, потому что скоро Рождество. <i>Nuzhno pokupat' podarki, potomu chto skoro Rozhdestvo.</i> "We need to buy presents because Christmas is coming soon."</p>	<p>Очень скоро. <i>Ochen' skoro.</i> "Very soon."</p>
<p>Он должен скоро прийти. <i>On dolzen skoro priyti.</i> "He should come soon."</p>	<p>Скоро стемнеет. <i>Skoro stemneyet.</i> "It will get dark soon."</p>
<p>Не смешивай водку с пивом. <i>Nye smyeshivay vodku s pivom.</i> "Don't mix vodka with beer."</p>	<p>Конечно, приходи! <i>Konechno, prihodi!</i> "Of course you should come!"</p>
<p>Они, конечно, правы. <i>Oni, konechno, pravy.</i> "They are certainly right."</p>	<p>Вы пойдете на дискотеку? - Конечно. <i>Vi poidete na diskoteku? - Konechno.</i> "Are you going to the disco? - Sure."</p>

<p>Может, пора перейти на "ты"? <i>Mozhyet, pora pereyti na "ty"?</i> "Maybe it's time to become less formal with each other?"</p>	<p>У него очень необычное имя. <i>U nego ochen' neobychnoye imya.</i> "He has a very unusual name."</p>
<p>Не упусти возможности познакомиться с ним. <i>Nye upusti vozmozhnosti poznakomit'sya s nim.</i> "Don't lose the opportunity to get to know him."</p>	<p>У меня нет возможности приезжать часто. <i>U myenya nyet vozmozhnosti priyekhat' chasto.</i> "I don't have a possibility to come often."</p>
<p>Я хорошо отдохнул на Гаваях. <i>Ya horosho otdochnul na Gavayah.</i> "I had lots of fun in Hawaii."</p>	<p>У меня есть кое-что для тебя. <i>U myenya yest' koye-cto dlya tyebya.</i> "I have something for you."</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Russian Prepositions.

**Ты уже скоро улетаешь... Какие у тебя впечатления о России в целом?
 "You are leaving soon...what impressions have you got of Russia in general?"**

There are some words and expressions in every language that are better memorized together with the prepositions we most frequently use them with. In that case, you'll get a better understanding of the usage of the words and the grammar they require in the sentences. Here are some of those words:

I. впечатление

vprechatlenie

"impression"

Most often, we use this word with two prepositions, **О** ("about") and **На** ("on").

With the preposition **О**, we often use this word in the plural form, **впечатления**, ("impressions").

These are the stable expressions with this word:

1. **оставить впечатления о**
ostavit' vpechatleniya o
"to leave the impressions about"
2. **произвести впечатление на**
proizvestee vpechatlenie na
"to make an impression on"

For Example:

1. У меня остались хорошие впечатления о нём
Oo menya ostalis' horoshie vpechatleniya o nyom
"He left good impressions on me."
2. Он произвёл хорошее впечатление на меня
On proizvyol horosheje vpechatlenie na menya
"He made a good impression on me."

II. устать

ustat'

"get tired"

Of course, you can just say **Я устал** without specifying what exactly you are tired of. But if you want to make that specification, you should use the pronoun **ОТ**, ("from;" "of"), with the word **устать**.

For Example:

1. **Я устала от тебя**
Ya ustal ot tebya
"I'm tired of you."
2. **Я устал от этой работы**
Ya ustal ot etoj raboty
"I'm tired of this job."

III. зайти

zajtee

"to drop by, to stop by, to come by, to make a short visit"

You can use this word when talking about both people and places. The only difference is, when you use it with people, you should use the preposition **К** (к indicates direction, and we can translate it in English as "to," "towards"). When you use it with places, you should use the preposition **В**, which can also mean "to."

For Example:

1. Давай зайдём к Лене ненадолго

Davai zaidyom k Lene nenadolgo

"Let's drop by Lena's for a little."

2. Я заходил к нему утром

Ya zahodil k nemu utrom

"I came by him in the morning."

3. Я заходила в магазин сегодня

Ya zahodila v magazin sevodnya

"I dropped by the store today."

4. Я заходил в офис, но тебя там не было

Ya zahodil v ofis, no tebya tam ne bylo

"I stopped by the office today, but you weren't there."

Grammar Structure

С одной стороны..., с другой стороны

S odnoi storony..., s drugoi storony

"From one side..."/"From another side..."("On the one hand..."/"On another hand...")

Just like in English, we use it to give two opposite facts or opinions that should be weighed and considered in the conversation.

For Example:

1. С одной стороны, я хочу поехать в Италию, с другой стороны, мне нужно копить деньги.

S odnoi storony, ya hochu poyehat' v Italiyu, s drugoi storony, mne nuzhno kopit' den'gi.

"On the one hand, I want to go to Italy, but on the other hand, I have to save up money."

And just like in English, you can drop the first part of this structure, (On the one hand...).

1. Я хочу поехать в Италию, но с другой стороны, мне нужно копить деньги.

Ya hochu poehat' v Italiyu, no s drugoi storony, mne nuzhno kopit' den'gi.

"I want to go to Italy, but on the other hand, I have to save up money."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #28

If You're Touring Russia

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar

28

RUSSIAN

1. ПРОДАВЕЦ Следующий!
БИЛЕТОВ:

2. ДЖОН: Добрый день! Скажите, пожалуйста, какие экскурсии у Вас есть?

3. ПРОДАВЕЦ Есть обзорные экскурсии, тематические, VIP экскурсии...
БИЛЕТОВ:

4. ДЖОН: А какую Вы посоветуете?

5. ПРОДАВЕЦ Если Вы первый раз в Москве, возьмите обзорную. Наш гид расскажет об истории и архитектуре города.
БИЛЕТОВ:

6. ДЖОН: А гид говорит по-английски?

7. ПРОДАВЕЦ Да, конечно.
БИЛЕТОВ:

8. ДЖОН: Дайте 2 билета на обзорную, пожалуйста.

ROMANIZATION

1. TICKET AGENT: Sleduyuschiy!
 2. JOHN: Dobryy den'! Skazhite, pozhaluysta, kakiye ekskursii u Vas yest'?
 3. TICKET AGENT: Yest' obzornye ekskursii, tematiceskie, VIP ekskursii...

CONT'D OVER

4. JOHN: A kakuyu Vy posovyetuyete?
5. TICKET AGENT: Yesli Vy pervyy raz v Moskve, voz'mite obzornuyu. Nash gid rasskazhet ob istorii i arhitekture goroda.
6. JOHN: A gid govorit po-angliski?
7. TICKET AGENT: Da, konechno.
8. JOHN: Daytye dva bilet na obzornuyu, pozhaluysta.

ENGLISH

1. TICKET AGENT: Next!
2. JOHN: Good day! Excuse me, what tours do you have?
3. TICKET AGENT: We have standard sight-seeing tours, thematic tours, VIP tours...
4. JOHN: Which one would you recommend?
5. TICKET AGENT: If it's your first time in Moscow, take the standard one. Our guide will tell you about the history and architecture of the city.
6. JOHN: Does the guide speak English?
7. TICKET AGENT: Yes, of course.
8. JOHN: Give me two tickets to the standard tour, please.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
архитектура	arhityektura	architecture	noun	
обзорный	obzorniy	general	adjective	
гид	gid	a guide	noun	
история	istoriya	history	noun	feminine
конечно	konechno	of course, certainly	adverb	
экскурсия	ekskursiya	excursion, sightseeing tour	noun	
тематический	tematicheskiy	thematic	adjective	
добрый день	dobriy dyen'	good day	phrase	
первый раз	perviy raz	first time	phrase	
следующий	sleduyuschiy	next	present participle, adjective	
рассказать	rasskazat'	to tell	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Мне нравится западная архитектура.

Mnye nrauitsya zapadnaya arhityektura.

"I like Western architecture."

Обзорные экскурсии дешевле, чем

тематические.

*Obzornie ekskursii deshevle, chem
tematicheskiye.*

"The general sightseeing tours are cheaper than
the thematic ones."

<p>Наш гид говорит на пяти языках. <i>Nash gid govorit na pyati yazykah.</i> "Our guide speaks five languages."</p>	<p>Она работает гидом. <i>Ona rabotayet gidom.</i> "She works as a tour guide."</p>
<p>Я знаю много реальных историй о привидениях. <i>Ya znayu mnogo real'nykh istoriy o privideniyakh.</i> "I know a lot of true stories about ghosts."</p>	<p>Что ты знаешь об истории Москвы? <i>Chto ty znayesh' ob istorii Moskvy?</i> "What do you know about the history of Moscow?"</p>
<p>Конечно, приходи! <i>Konechno, prihodi!</i> "Of course you should come!"</p>	<p>Они, конечно, правы. <i>Oni, konechno, pravy.</i> "They are certainly right."</p>
<p>Вы пойдете на дискотеку? - Конечно. <i>Vi poideete na diskoteku? - Konechno.</i> "Are you going to the disco? - Sure."</p>	<p>Обзорные экскурсии дешевле, чем тематические. <i>Obzornyye ekskursii dyeshyevlye, chyem tyematischeyeskiye.</i> "The general sightseeing tours are cheaper than the thematic ones."</p>
<p>Где можно заказать экскурсию на теплоходе? <i>Gdye mozhno zakazat' ekskursiyu na tyeplohodye?</i> "Where can I order a tour on a motor ship?"</p>	<p>У Вас есть экскурсии по городу? <i>U Vas yest' ekskursii po gorodu?</i> "Do you have city tours?"</p>
<p>Обзорные экскурсии дешевле, чем тематические. <i>Obzornie ekskursii deshevle, chem tematicheskiye.</i> "The general sightseeing tours are cheaper than the thematic ones."</p>	<p>Добрый вечер, я Оксана. <i>Dobryy vyechyer, ya Oksana.</i> "Good evening; I'm Oksana."</p>

<p>Доброе утро, Наташа. <i>Dobroye utro, Natasha.</i> "Good morning, Natasha."</p>	<p>Добрый день, как вы себя чувствуете? <i>Dobryy dyen', kak vy syebya chuvstvuyetye?</i> "Good day; how do you feel?" (asking condition)</p>
<p>Когда следующий автобус? <i>Kogda slyeduyuschiy avtobus?</i> "When is the next bus?"</p>	<p>Кто следующий? <i>Kto slyeduyuschiy?</i> "Who's next?"</p>
<p>На следующий день мы пошли в кино. <i>Na slyeduyuschiy dyen' my poshli v kino.</i> "The next day, we went to a movie."</p>	<p>Следующий автобус в пять. <i>Slyeduyuschiy avtobus v pyat'.</i> "The next bus is at five."</p>
<p>Кто следующий? <i>Kto slyeduyuschiy?</i> "Who's the next?"</p>	<p>В следующем году мы поедем в Америку. <i>V slyeduyuschiem godu my poyedyem v Amyeriku.</i> "Next year, we are going to America."</p>
<p>Он рассказал мне страшную историю. <i>On rasskazal mnye strashnuyu istoriyu.</i> "He told me a scary story."</p>	<p>Расскажи мне о себе. <i>Rasskazhi mnye o syebye.</i> "Tell me about yourself."</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of Today's Lesson is the "If"-Clause.

Если Вы первый раз в Москве, возьмите обзорную.

"If it's your first time in Moscow, take the standard one."

In this lesson, we will learn the simplest usage of the word **Если** ("if"). This conjunction indicates the conditions that are required for the action to take place. In our dialogue, it was "if it's your first time in Moscow." Just like in English, after mentioning the condition, you can offer

the appropriate action to take.

For Example:

возьмите обзорную (экскурсию) - "Take a general sightseeing (tour)."

All you have to focus on is the command forms of the verbs we've learned before. Here are some more examples:

1. Если хочешь - оставайся
Yesli hochesh - ostavaisya
"Stay if you want."
2. Если ты закончил, иди спать
Yesli ty zakonchil, idi spat'
"Go to bed if you are finished."
3. Если будет скучно - позвони
Yesli boodet skuchno - pozvoni
"Give me a call if you are bored."

You can use the verbs in any tense after "if" according to the situation. In the examples above, we used the present, past, and future, respectively.

You can also use если with the negation particle не (*ne*, "not").

For Example:

1. Если ты не устал, оставайся ещё на час
Yesli ty ne ustal, ostavaisya escho na chas
"If you are not tired, stay for another hour."
2. Если ты не сможешь прийти - позвони
Yesli ty ne smozhesh priyti - pozvoni
"If you can't come, give me a call."

The Possessive Pronoun **наш**, ("our")

In lesson 13 we learned the pronouns for "my," "your," "his," and "her" in singular number.

Here's a quick reminder:

Pronoun	w/Masculine Nouns	w/Feminine Nouns	w/Neuter Nouns
"my"	мой moy	мо́я maya	мо́ё mayo
"your" - <i>formal</i>	Ваш Vash	Ваша Vasha	Ваше Vashe
"your" - <i>informal</i>	твой tvoi	твоя tvaya	твоё tvayo
"his"	его Yeyo	его Yeyo	его Yeyo
"her"	её Yeyo	её Yeyo	её Yeyo

Let's add another pronoun to what we've learned:

Pronoun	w/Masculine Nouns	w/Feminine Nouns	w/Neuter Nouns
"our"	наш nash	наша nasha	наше nashe

For Example:

1. наш дом
nash dom
"our house"
2. наша страна
nasha strana
"our country"
3. наше окно
nashe okno
"our window"



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #29

Tour de Moscow - All the Sights and Sounds

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar

29

RUSSIAN

1. ГИД: Справа от вас находится знаменитый храм Христа Спасителя.
2. ДЖОН: Я слышал, что у этого храма тяжёлая история.
3. ЕЛЕНА: Да, его разрушили в Советские времена, а потом опять отстроили.
4. ДЖОН: А почему его разрушили?
5. ЕЛЕНА: Я тебе потом расскажу. Посмотри налево!
6. ДЖОН: О, как красиво! Мы можем здесь остановиться и погулять?
7. ЕЛЕНА: Я не знаю, давай спросим гида.

ROMANIZATION

1. TOUR GUIDE: Sprava ot vas nahoditsya znamenityy hram Hrista Spasitelya.
2. JOHN: Ya slyshal, chto u etogo hrama tyazholaya istoriya.
3. ELENA: Da, yevo razrushili v sovetskie vremena, a potom opyat' otstroili.
4. JOHN: A pochemu ego razrushili?
5. ELENA: Ya tebe potom raskazhu. Posmotri nalevo!
6. JOHN: Oh, kak krasivo! My mozhem zdes' ostanovitsya i pogulyat'?

CONT'D OVER

7. ELENA: Ya ne znayu, davay sprosim gida.

ENGLISH

- TOUR GUIDE: On your right is the famous St. Basil Cathedral.
- JOHN: I've heard that this cathedral has a tough history.
- ELENA: Yes, it was destroyed during the Soviet times and then rebuilt again.
- JOHN: Why was it destroyed?
- ELENA: I'll tell you later. Look left!
- JOHN: Oh, so beautiful! Can we stop here and take a walk?
- ELENA: I don't know, let's ask the guide.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
потом	potom	then, later, after that	adverb	
почему	pochemu	why	pronoun	
знаменитый	znamyenitiy	famous, well-known	adjective	masculine
разрушить	razrushit'	to destroy	verb	
времена	vremena	times	noun	

опять	opyat'	again	adverb
находиться	nahodit'sya	to be located, situated	verb
храм	hram	cathedral	noun
слева от	slyeva ot	to the left of; on the left of; on someone or something's left	preposition, phrase
тяжёлый	tyazhyolyy	heavy; difficult, tough	adjective
справа от	sprava ot	to the right of; on someone or something's right	preposition, phrase
Советский	Sovyetskiy	Soviet	adjective
строить	stroit'	to build (a house)	verb
остановиться	ostanovit'sya	to stop, to stay	verb
погулять	pogulyat'	to take a walk	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Я потом тебе напишу, хорошо?

Ya potom tyebye napishu, horosh?

"I'll write to you later, okay?"

Он пригласил меня, а потом сказал,

что занят.

On priglasil myenya, a potom skazal, chto zanyat.

"He invited me and then said he was busy."

<p>Что мне потом следует сделать? <i>Chto mne potom sleduyet sdelat'?</i> "What should I do after that?"</p>	<p>Почему ты ещё не дома? <i>Pochyemu ty yeschyo nye doma?</i> "Why aren't you home yet?"</p>
<p>Почему у вас нет паспорта? <i>Pochyemu u vas nyet pasporta?</i> "Why don't you have a passport?"</p>	<p>Почему вы так думаете? <i>Pochyemu vy tak dumayetye?</i> "Why do you think so?"</p>
<p>Майкл Джексон - знаменитый певец. <i>Maykl Dzhekson - znamenityy pevets.</i> "Michael Jackson is a famous singer."</p>	<p>Я не знал, что он знаменитый актёр. <i>Ya ne znal, chto on znamenityy aktyor.</i> "I didn't know he was a famous actor."</p>
<p>Он уже не так знаменит, как раньше. <i>On uzhye ne tak znamyenit, kak ran'shye.</i> "He's not as famous as he used to be before."</p>	<p>Разрушить легче, чем построить. <i>Razrushit' lyegchye, chyem postroit'.</i> "It's easier to destroy than to build."</p>
<p>Я бы хотел родиться в царские времена. <i>Ya by hotyel rodit'sya v tsarskiye vremena.</i> "I'd like to have been born in the Tsar times."</p>	<p>Да, хорошие были времена. <i>Da, horoshiye byli vremena.</i> "Yes, those were good times."</p>
<p>Опять пошёл дождь. <i>Opyat' poshyol dozhd'.</i> "It started raining again."</p>	<p>У нас опять нет денег. <i>U nas opyat' nyet dyenyeg.</i> "We don't have any money again."</p>
<p>Где находится центральный банк? <i>Gdye nahoditsya tsentral'nyy bank?</i> "Where's the central bank situated?"</p>	<p>Мы посетили много храмов и церквей. <i>My posyetili mnogo hramov i tsyerkvyey.</i> "We visited a lot of cathedrals and churches."</p>
<p>У него ужасно тяжёлый характер! <i>U nyego uzhasno tyazhyolyy haraktyer!</i> "He has a terrible character!"</p>	<p>У этого человека тяжёлая судьба. <i>U etogo chyelovskyaka tyazhyolaya sud'ba.</i> "This man has a tragic lot."</p>

<p>Помоги мне, у меня очень тяжёлый багаж.</p> <p><i>Pomogi mnye, u myenya ochyen' tyazhyolyy bagazh.</i></p> <p>"Help me, I have very heavy luggage."</p>	<p>Садись справа от меня.</p> <p><i>Sadis' sprava ot myenya.</i></p> <p>"Sit on my right."</p>
<p>Справа от кресла стоит стол.</p> <p><i>Sprava ot kryesla stoit stol.</i></p> <p>"To the right of the armchair there is a table."</p>	<p>Булгагов – мой любимый советский писатель.</p> <p><i>Bulgakov – moy lyubimyy sovyetskiy pisatyal'.</i></p> <p>"Bulgakov is my favorite Soviet writer."</p>
<p>Разрушить легче, чем построить.</p> <p><i>Razrushit' lyegchye, chyem postroit'.</i></p> <p>"It's easier to destroy than to build."</p>	<p>Я не могу остановить машину!</p> <p><i>Ya nye mogu ostanovit' mashinu!</i></p> <p>"I can't stop the car!"</p>
<p>Я остановился у друзей.</p> <p><i>Ya ostanovilsya u druzey.</i></p> <p>"I stopped at my friends' house."</p>	<p>Ты не хочешь погулять со мной в парке?</p> <p><i>Tu nye hochyesh' pogulyat' so mnoy v parkye?</i></p> <p>"Would you like to take a walk in the park with me?"</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of Today's Lesson is Learning About the Directions, (Including the Review of Lesson 23), As Well As Learning About How to Express the Action Performed by Unknown People.

Справа от вас находится знаменитый храм Христа Спасителя.

"On your right is the famous St. Basil Cathedral."

In lesson 23, we learned the following expressions to indicate directions:

1. **прямо**
pryamo
"straight"
2. **направо**
napravo
"to the right"
3. **налево**
nalevo
"to the left"
4. **правая сторона**
pravaya storona
"right side"
5. **левая сторона**
levaya storona
"left side"
6. **по правой стороне**
po pravoy storone
"on the right side"
7. **по левой стороне**
po levoy storone
"on the left side"

Today, we'll add more phrases to enrich your vocabulary on locations and directions.

1. **справа**
sprava
"on the right"
2. **слева**
sleva
"on the left"

Very often, we use them with the preposition **-от**, which means "from," but can be translated into English as "of," as in "to the right of...."

1. **справа от**

sprava ot

"on (somebody's/something's) right; to the right of"

2. **слева от**

sleva ot

"on (somebody's/something's) left; to the left of"

For Example:

1. Справа от станции - банк

Sprava ot stancii - bank

"There is a bank to the right of the station."

2. Он стоял слева от памятника

On stoyal sleva ot pamyatnika

"He was standing to the left of the monument."

3. Справа от меня

Sprava ot menya

"on my right"

4. Слева от тебя

Sleva ot tebya

"on your left"

The nouns and pronouns, (станция, памятник, я, ты), should be used in the genitive case.

Passive Voice

"They destroyed it," NOT "It was destroyed."

Russians use the passive voice far less than we do in English. The reason is that Russians prefer third person indefinite clauses like, "They destroyed it and then rebuilt," rather than the

actual passive voice, "It was destroyed and then rebuilt." The prior is more indefinite since in Russian, we may omit the indefinite "they,"

его разрушили, а потом отстроили.

So, to express the action that was performed by the indefinite persons you can just say the action (verb) in the form suitable for the third person plural ("they").

For Example:

1. Этот дом построили в прошлом году

Etot dom postroili v proshlom godu

Literally: "(They) built this house last year."

Meaning: "This house was built last year."

2. Его избили на улице

Ego izbili na ulice

Literally: "(They) beat him up on the street."

Meaning: "He was beaten up on the street."

3. Её повысили в должности

Eyo povysili v dolzhnosti

Literally: "(They) promoted her."

Meaning: "She was promoted."



LESSON NOTES

Gengo Russian S1 #30

Parting in Russia is Sweet and Sour

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar

30

RUSSIAN

1. ЕЛЕНА: Джон, спасибо за экскурсию и за прекрасный день.
2. ДЖОН: Ну что ты, тебе спасибо за компанию!
3. ЕЛЕНА: В Москве ещё столько красивых мест...
4. ДЖОН: Да, жаль, что я завтра улетаю.
5. ЕЛЕНА: Ты ещё приедешь?
6. ДЖОН: Конечно! У меня же здесь бизнес. Я буду скучать по Москве...
7. ЕЛЕНА: И Москва будет скучать по тебе. Ну, пиши, звони, не пропадай...
8. ДЖОН: Обязательно. До связи и до встречи!
9. ЕЛЕНА: Удачи, пока!

ROMANIZATION

1. ELENA: John, spasibo za ekskursiyu i za prekrasnyi den'.
2. JOHN: Nu shto ty, tebe spasibo za kompaniyu!
3. ELENA: V Moskve escho stol'ko krasivyh mest...
4. JOHN: Da, zhal', shto ya zavtra uletayu.
5. ELENA: Ty escho priedesh?

CONT'D OVER

6. JOHN: Konechno! U menya zhe zdes' biznes. Ya budu skuchat' po Moskve...
7. ELENA: I Moskva budet skuchat' po tebe. Nu, pishi, zvoni, ne propaday...
8. JOHN: Obyazatel'no! Do svyazi i do vstrechi!
9. ELENA: Udachi, poka!

ENGLISH

1. ELENA: John, thank you for the tour and a wonderful day.
2. JOHN: What are you talking about, thank you for your company!
3. ELENA: Moscow has so many more beautiful places...
4. JOHN: Yes, too bad I'm leaving tomorrow.
5. ELENA: Will you come again?
6. JOHN: Of course! I have a business here after all. I'll miss Moscow...
7. ELENA: Moscow will miss you, too. Well, write me, call me, stay in touch...
8. JOHN: Of course! Talk to you soon and see you soon!
9. ELENA: Good luck, bye!

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
пропадать	propadat'	to disappear; to be lost	verb	
удачи!	udachi!	good luck!	exclamation	
компания	kompaniya	company	noun	feminine
скучать	skuchat'	to miss	verb	
звонить	zvonit'	to call	verb	
обязательно	obyazatel'no	sure(ly), definitely, certainly	adverb	
ну что ты	nu chto ty	what are you talking about	phrase	
место	myesto	seat, place	noun	
прекрасный	pryekrasnyi	beautiful, wonderful, excellent	adjective	
приехать	priyehat'	to arrive, to come (by transport)	verb	
спасибо за	spasibo za	thank you for	phrase	
писать	pisat'	to write	verb	
связь	svyaz'	connection	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Куда ты пропал на 2 месяца! <i>Kuda ty propal na 2 myesyatsa!</i> "Where have you disappeared to for two months!"</p>	<p>У нас пропала собака. <i>U nas propala sobaka.</i> "Our dog is lost."/"We lost our dog."</p>
<p>Пожелай мне удачи, она мне пригодится. <i>Pozhyelai mnye udachi, ona mnye prigoditsya.</i> "Wish me luck: I'll need it."</p>	<p>Он всегда душа компании. <i>On vsyegda dusha kompanii.</i> "He's always the life and soul of the party."</p>
<p>Я себя неуютно чувствую в незнакомой компании. <i>Ya syebya nyeyuyutno chuvstvuyu v nyeznakomoi kompanii.</i> "I feel uncomfortable in unknown company."</p>	<p>Это представитель американской компании. <i>Eto pryedstaviteyl' amyerikanskoy kompanii.</i> "This is an American company representative."</p>
<p>Он совсем не скучает по своей семье. <i>On sovsyem nye skuchayet po svoyey syem'ye.</i> "He doesn't miss his family at all."</p>	<p>Я так по тебе скучаю! <i>Ya tak po tyebye skuchayu!</i> "I miss you so much!"</p>
<p>Я так скучаю по университетским годам! <i>Ya tak skuchayu po univyersityetskim godam!</i> "I miss university years so much!"</p>	<p>Я тебе позвоню часов в 10. <i>Ya tyebye pozvonyu chasov v 10.</i> "I will call you around ten."</p>
<p>Он мне не звонит уже неделю. <i>On mnye nye zvonit uzhye nyedyelyu.</i> "He hasn't called me for a week already."</p>	<p>Можно я тебе позвоню? <i>Mozhno ya tyebye pozvonyu?</i> "Can I call you?"</p>
<p>Позвони мне утром. <i>Pozvoni mnye utrom.</i> "Call me in the morning."</p>	<p>Обязательно надень свитер, на улице холодно. <i>Obyazatel'no naden' sviter, na ulitse holodno.</i> "You should definitely put a sweater on: it's cold outside."</p>

<p>Я обязательно приду, сто процентов! <i>Ya obyazatel'no pridu, sto protsentov!</i></p> <p>"I will definitely come, one hundred percent."</p>	<p>Ну что ты, я этого не заслужил! <i>Nu chto ty, ya etogo nye zasluzhil!</i></p> <p>"What are you talking about?"/"Oh no, I don't deserve it!"</p>
<p>Положи мой блокнот на место. <i>Polozhi moy bloknot na myesto.</i></p> <p>"Put my notepad back where it belongs."</p>	<p>Это самое красивое место на земле. <i>Eto samoye krasivoye myesto na zyemlye.</i></p> <p>"This is the most beautiful place on Earth."</p>
<p>Садитесь на моё место. <i>Sadityes' na moyo myesto.</i></p> <p>"Take my seat."</p>	<p>Прошу прощения, но это место занято. <i>Proshu proschyeniya, no eto myesto zanyato.</i></p> <p>"I'm sorry, but this seat is occupied."</p>
<p>О Боже, какое грязное место! <i>O Bozhye, kakoye gryaznoye myesto!</i></p> <p>"Oh God, what a dirty place!"</p>	<p>Сегодня прекрасная погода. <i>Syegodnya pryekrasnaya pogoda.</i></p> <p>"The weather is beautiful today."</p>
<p>Я приеду к тебе вечером. <i>Ya priyedu k tyebye vyechyerom.</i></p> <p>"I'll come to you in the evening."</p>	<p>Он приехал в Москву в пятницу. <i>On priyehal v Moskvu v pyatnitsu.</i></p> <p>"He came to Moscow on Friday."</p>
<p>Папа приехал вчера. <i>Papa priyehal vchyera.</i></p> <p>"Dad arrived yesterday."</p>	<p>Приехали! <i>Priyehali!</i></p> <p>"We have arrived!"</p>
<p>Большое спасибо за поддержку. <i>Bol'shoye spasibo za poddyerzhku.</i></p> <p>"Thank you very much for your support."</p>	<p>Спасибо за всё. <i>Spasibo za vsyo.</i></p> <p>"Thank you for everything."</p>
<p>Напиши мне письмо, когда сможешь. <i>Napishi mnye pis'mo, kogda smozhyesh'.</i></p> <p>"Write me a letter when you can."</p>	<p>Он пишет стихи и музыку. <i>On pishyet stihi i muzyku.</i></p> <p>"He writes poetry and music."</p>

<p>Мы не поддерживаем связь. <i>My nye poddyerzhivayem svyaz'.</i> "We don't keep in touch."</p>	<p>Я не повесил трубку, просто связь оборвалась. <i>Ya nye povyesil trubku, prosto svyaz' oborvalas'.</i> "I didn't hang up; it's just the connection got cut off."</p>
---	--

GRAMMAR

The Focus of Today's Lesson are Some Farewell Phrases in Russian.

И Москва будет скучать по тебе. Ну, пиши, звони, не пропадай...

"Moscow will miss you, too. Well, write me, call me, stay in touch..."

I. Спасибо ЗА... (*Spasibo za...*) - "Thank you for..."

We know the word "спасибо" already, which means "thank you." Now it's time to learn about how to give thanks for something specific.

спасибо + за + the accusative case

Masculine nouns in the accusative: Don't change

1. Спасибо за подарок
spasibo za podarok
 "Thank you for the present"
2. Спасибо за прекрасный ужин
spasibo za prekrasnyj oozhin
 "Thank you for the wonderful dinner."

Feminine nouns in the accusative:

1. Replace -a with -y
2. Replace -я with -ю

3. Does not change if a soft sign

For Example:

1. Спасибо за помощь
spasibo za pomosch
"Thank you for your help."
2. Спасибо за интересную экскурсию
spasibo za interesnuyu ekskursiyu
"Thank you for the interesting tour."

Neuter nouns in the accusative: Don't change

1. Спасибо за внимание
spasibo za vnimanie
"Thank you for your attention."
2. Спасибо за тёплое письмо
spasibo za tyoploie pis'mo
"Thank you for the warm letter."

II. Скучать ПО... (*skuchat' po*) - "miss" (something/somebody)

Unlike in English, the word скучать ("to miss") in Russian needs the preposition -по to go after it. This preposition has no corresponding preposition in English, so just remember it as a part of the structure:

скучать + по + dative case

Note: You should conjugate the word скучать according to the person.

Masculine nouns in the dative: If the noun ends in a consonant, add -y.

1. Я скучаю по дому
Ya skuchayu po domu
"I miss home."

2. Ты скучаешь по нему?

Ty skuchaesh po nemu?

"Do you miss him?"

Feminine nouns in the dative: Replace -a and -я with -e.

1. Он/она скучает по русской кухне

On/ona skuchает по ruskoy kuhne

"He/she misses Russian food."

2. Вы скучаете по ней?

Vy skuchаете по domu?

"Do you miss her?"

Neuter nouns in the dative:

1. Replace -o with -y

2. Replace -e with -ю

For Example:

1. Мы скучаем по морю

My skuchаем по moryu

"We miss the sea."

Neuter nouns in the dative: Replace the last letter with -ам.

1. Они скучают по старым временам

Onee skuchayut po starym vremenam

"They miss the old times."

III. До связи (do svyazi) - literally: "until the connection"

До встречи (do vstrechi) - literally: "until the meeting"

До literally means "until." The phrases like до связи and до встречи imply "talk to you soon" and "see you soon." There are lots of other words you can use with до to make farewell phrases.

For Example:

1. **До звонка**
do zvonka
literally: "until the call" ("talk to you soon on the phone")
2. **До письма**
do pis'ma
literally: "until the letter" ("talk to you soon by mail")
3. **До завтра**
do zavtra
literally: "until tomorrow" ("see you tomorrow")
4. **До вечера**
do vechera
literally: "until the evening" ("see you tonight")



RussianPod101.com

RussianPod101.com



3 MINUTE RUSSIAN

innovative LANGUAGE.COM

innovative LANGUAGE.COM



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #1

Self Introduction

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

1

RUSSIAN

1. Привет, я Катя.
2. Здравствуйте, меня зовут Катя.
3. Приятно с Вами познакомиться.
4. Очень приятно.

ROMANIZATION

1. Privet, ya Katya.
2. Zdrastvuyte, menya zavut Katya.
3. Priyatna s vami paznakomitsa.
4. Ochen' priyatna.

ENGLISH

1. Hi I'm Katya.
2. Hello, my name is Katya.
3. Nice to meet you.
4. Pleased to meet you.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
привет	privet	Hello, Hi	interjection
я	ya	I	pronoun
Катя	Katya	Katya	proper name
здравствуйте	Zdrastvuyte	hello	interjection
меня	menya	me	pronoun
зовут	zavut	called	verb
приятно	priyatna	nice; nicely, pleasantly	adverb
с	s	with	preposition
вами	vami	you	pronoun
познакомиться	paznakomitsa	to meet, to get acquainted, to get to know (someone)	verb
очень	ochen'	very	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."</p>	<p>Меня зовут Катя. <i>Menya zovut Katya.</i> "My name is Katya."</p>
<p>Здравствуйте, могу я поговорить с Анной? <i>Zdrastvuyte, magu ya pagavarit' s Annay ?</i> "Hello, can I speak to Anna?"</p>	<p>Здравствуйте, давно не виделись! <i>Zdrastvuyte, davno ne videlis'!</i> "Hello, long time no see!"</p>

<p>Здравствуйте, Вы откуда? <i>Zdrastvuyte, Vy atkuda?</i> "Hello, where are you from?"</p>	<p>Здравствуйте, Вы - Павел Иванович? <i>Zdrastvuyte, Vy - Pavel Ivanovich?</i> "Hello, are you Pavel Ivanovich?"</p>
<p>Меня зовут Александр. <i>Menya zovut Aleksandr.</i> "My name is Alexandr."</p>	<p>Желаю приятного полёта! <i>Zhelayu priyatnava palyota!</i> "Wish you a nice flight!"</p>
<p>Очень приятно познакомиться! <i>Ochen' priyatna paznakomitsa!</i> "Very nice to meet you (get to know you)!"</p>	<p>Как приятно! <i>Kak priyatna!</i> "How nice!"/"What a pleasure!"</p>
<p>Приятно слышать. <i>Priyatna slyshat'.</i> "Nice to hear." (e.g., a compliment)</p>	<p>Приятно познакомиться. <i>Priyatna paznakomitsa.</i> "Nice to meet you."</p>
<p>Ты пойдёшь со мной в кино? <i>Tu paydyosh' sa mnoy f kino?</i> "Will you go to the movies with me?"</p>	<p>Приятно познакомиться. <i>Priyatna paznakomitsa.</i> "Nice to meet you."</p>
<p>Рад с Вами познакомиться, наконец! <i>Rat s Vami paznakomitsa, nakanets!</i> "I'm glad to finally meet you!"</p>	<p>Познакомься, это моя сестра, Катя. <i>Paznakom'sya, eta maya sestra, Katya.</i> "Meet my sister, Katya."</p>
<p>Вы очень хорошо говорите по-русски. <i>Vy ochen' kharasho gavarite pa-russki.</i> "You speak Russian very well." (formal)</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to introduce yourself.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes

Phrase 1	informal	<i>Привет, я Катя.</i>	Hi I'm Katya.
Word 1		<i>привет</i>	Hi
Word 2		<i>я</i>	I
Word 3		<i>Катя</i>	Katya
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Здравствуйте, меня зовут Катя.</i>	Hello, my name is Katya.
Word 1		<i>здравствуйте</i>	Hello
Word 2		<i>меня</i>	me
Word 3		<i>зовут</i>	called conjugated
Word 4		<i>Катя</i>	Katya
Phrase 3	formal	<i>Приятно с Вами познакомиться я.</i>	Nice to meet you.
Word 1		<i>приятно</i>	nice
Word 2		<i>с</i>	with
Word 3		<i>вами</i>	you instrumental case
Word 4		<i>познакомиться я</i>	to meet, to get acquainted
Phrase 4	informal	<i>Очень приятно.</i>	Pleased to meet you.
Word 1		<i>очень</i>	very

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The typical greeting between men is a firm handshake while saying "Hello". The men can also shake hands with women, but it shouldn't be strong. Female typically greet each other just by giving the appropriate greeting. Friends can greet each other by kissing on the cheek. While shaking hands it is better to remove your gloves.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #2

Greetings

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

2

RUSSIAN

1. Привет.
2. Добрый день.
3. Пока.
4. До свидания.

ROMANIZATION

1. Privet.
2. Dobryy den`.
3. Paka.
4. Da svidaniya.

ENGLISH

1. Hi.
2. Good day.
3. See you.
4. Goodbye.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Привет.	Privet.	Hi.	expression	
добрый	dobryy	good	adjective	masculine
день	den'	day	noun	masculine
Пока.	Poka.	Bye. See you later.	interjection	
до	do	till	preposition	
свидания	svidaniya	meeting (next)	noun	neuter
здравствуйте	Zdrastvuyte	hello	interjection	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Какой сегодня день? <i>Kakoy sevodnya den'?</i> "What day is it today?"	В течение дня я работаю в аптеке. <i>F techeniye dnya ya rabotayu v apteke.</i> "During the day, I work at a pharmacy."
Я убираю в своей комнате каждый день. <i>Ya ubirayu f svayey komnate kazhdyy den'.</i> "I clean my room every day."	Он весь день сидит дома. <i>On ves' den' sidit doma.</i> "He's been sitting at home all day."
Какой странный день! <i>Kakoy stranny den'!</i> "What a strange day!"	До моего дня рождения осталось 3 дня. <i>Da mayevo dnya razhdeniya astalas' 3 dnya.</i> "3 days left till my birthday."
Здравствуйте, могу я поговорить с Анной? <i>Zdrastvuyte, magu ya pagavarit' s Annay ?</i> "Hello, can I speak to Anna?"	Здравствуйте, давно не виделись! <i>Zdrastvuyte, davno ne videlis'!</i> "Hello, long time no see!"

Здравствуйте, Вы откуда? <i>Zdrastvuyte, Vy atkuda?</i> "Hello, where are you from?"	Здравствуйте, Вы - Павел Иванович? <i>Zdrastvuyte, Vy - Pavel Ivanovich?</i> "Hello, are you Pavel Ivanovich?"
---	---

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to greet someone .

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Привет.</i>	Hi.	
Word 1		<i>привет.</i>	Hi	
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Добрый день.</i>	Good day.	
Word 1		<i>добрый</i>	good	
Word 2		<i>день</i>	day	
Phrase 3	informal	<i>Пока.</i>	See you.	
Word 1		<i>Пока.</i>	see you.	
Phrase 4	formal	<i>До свидания.</i>	Goodbye.	
Word 1		<i>до</i>	till	
Word 2		<i>свидания</i>	meeting (next)	genitive case

CULTURAL INSIGHT

There are many greetings in Russian language. If you are not sure which one to choose you can just say [здравствуйте (zdrastvuyte)], which means "hello". It is polite greeting which is appropriate at any time of the day.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #3

Manners

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

3

RUSSIAN

1. Спасибо.
2. Большое спасибо.
3. Спасибо, с удовольствием.
4. Спасибо за всё.

ROMANIZATION

1. Spasiba.
2. Bal'shoye spasiba.
3. Spasiba, s udavol'stviem.
4. Spasiba za fpsy.

ENGLISH

1. Thank you.
2. Thank you very much.
3. Thank you, gladly.
4. Thanks for everything.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
большое	bol'shoye	big, great	adjective	neuter
спасибо	spasiba	thank you	interjection	
с	s	with	preposition	
удовольствием	udavol'stviyem	pleasure	noun	neuter
всё	vsyo	all, everything	pronoun	
За	za	behind, for	preposition	none

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Спасибо за приглашение. <i>Spasiba za priglasheniye.</i> "Thanks for the invitation."	Ты пойдёшь со мной в кино? <i>Ty paydyosh' sa mnoy f kino?</i> "Will you go to the movies with me?"
Это всё. <i>Eto vsyo.</i> "That's all."	Всё будет хорошо. <i>Vsyo budyet horosho.</i> "Everything will be okay."

Большое спасибо за поддержку.

Bol'shoye spasibo za poddyerzhku.

"Thank you very much for your support."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to thank other people in various ways.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	Спасибо.	Thank you.	

Word 1	спасибо.	thank you.
Phrase 2	<i>Большое спасибо.</i>	Thank you very much.
Word 1	большое	big
Word 2	спасибо	thank you
Phrase 3	<i>Спасибо, с удовольствие м.</i>	Thank you, gladly.
Word 1	спасибо	thank you
Word 2	с	with
Word 3	<i>удовольствие м</i>	instrumental pleasure case
Phrase 4	<i>Спасибо за всё.</i>	Thanks for everything.
Word 1	спасибо	thanks
Word 2	за	for
Word 3	всё	everything

CULTURAL INSIGHT

[спасибо] (spasiba) on its own works very well, but if you add the word [большое (bal'shoye)], which means "big" you will impress Russians.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #4

How are you?

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

4

RUSSIAN

1. Как дела?
2. Как у Вас дела?
3. Спасибо. Хорошо.
4. Не очень.

ROMANIZATION

1. Kak dela?
2. Kak u vas dela?
3. Spasiba. Kharasho.
4. Ne ochen`.

ENGLISH

1. How are you? (informal)
2. How are you? (formal)
3. I'm fine. Thank you.
4. Not so well.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
не	ne	not	conjunction	
очень	ochen'	so	adverb	
дела	dela	things	noun	neuter
как	kak	how	pronoun	
у вас	u vas	your	preposition plus pronoun	
спасибо	spasiba	thanks	interjection	
хорошо	horosho	fine/good	adverb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Как у тебя дела? <i>Kak u tebya dela?</i> "How are you?"	Я - хорошо. <i>Ya - khorosho.</i> I'm fine.
---	--

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask how somebody is.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	Как дела ?	How are you?
Word 1		как	how
Word 2		дела	things plural

Phrase 2	formal	<i>Как у Вас дела?</i>	How are you?
Word 1		<i>как</i>	how
Word 2		<i>у вас</i>	your
Word 3		<i>дела</i>	things plural
Phrase 3	informal	<i>Спасибо. Хорошо.</i>	I'm fine. Thank you.
Word 1		<i>спасибо</i>	thanks
Word 2		<i>хорошо</i>	good
Phrase 4	formal	<i>Не очень.</i>	Not so well.
Word 1		<i>не</i>	not
Word 2		<i>очень</i>	so

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Russia, when you ask your friend a question "How are you", you will hear the detail information about someone's current situation. In Russia when people ask this question they really care about how someone is. However, in formal situations it is better just to answer "I am Ok and you?".



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #5

Making Apologies

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

5

RUSSIAN

1. Извини.
2. Извините.
3. Это моя вина!
4. Простите.

ROMANIZATION

1. Izvini.
2. Izvinite.
3. Eta maya vina.
4. Prastite.

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me. (informal)
2. Excuse me. (formal)
3. My bad!
4. I'm sorry.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
вина	vina	fault	noun	feminine
простите	prastite	I'm sorry.	interjection or verb	
Извини.	Izvini.	Excuse me.	interjection	
Извините.	Izvinite.	Excuse me.	interjection	
это	eta	this	demonstrative pronoun	neutral
моя	moya	my, mine	possessive pronoun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Моя бабушка дала мне это. <i>Maya babashka dala mne eta.</i> "My grandmother gave me this."</p>	<p>Что это? <i>Shто eta?</i> "What is it?"</p>
<p>Моя мама - русская, а папа - украинец. <i>Moja mama - russkaya, a papa - ukrainets.</i> "My mom is Russian, and my dad is Ukrainian."</p>	<p>Моя первая поездка в Россию запомнится мне на всю жизнь. <i>Maya pervaya paezdka v Rasiyu zapomnitsa mne na vsyu zhizn.</i> "I will remember my first trip to Russia for the rest of my life."</p>

Моя мама живёт в Москве.

Moja mama zhivyat v Moskve.

"My mom lives in Moscow."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to apologise yourself.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1 informal	<i>Извини.</i>	Excuse me.	
Word 1	<i>Извини.</i>	Excuse me.	
Phrase 2 formal	<i>Извините.</i>	Excuse me.	
Word 1	<i>Извините.</i>	Excuse me.	
Phrase 3 formal	<i>Это моя вина!</i>	My bad!	
Word 1	<i>Это</i>	this	
Word 2	<i>моя</i>	my	
Word 3	<i>вина</i>	fault	
Phrase 4 formal	<i>Простите.</i>	I'm sorry.	
Word 1	<i>простите</i>	I'm sorry.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Making apologies in Russian is really very simple. You can use the words [извините] (izvinite) or [простите] (prastite). These words are also commonly used to catch someone's attention.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #6

Refusing politely

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

6

RUSSIAN

1. Нет, спасибо.
2. Нет, спасибо большое.
3. Извините, но у меня уже есть планы.
4. Извини, но у меня уже есть планы.

ROMANIZATION

1. Net, spasiba.
2. Net, spasiba bal`shoye.
3. Izvinite, no u menya uzhe yest` plany.
4. Izvini, no u menya uzhe yest` plany.

ENGLISH

1. No, thank you.
2. No, thanks a lot.
3. Sorry, but I already have plans. (formal)
4. Sorry, but I already have plans. (informal)

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
нет	net	no	particle	
спасибо	spasiba	thank you	interjection	
большое	bal'shoye	big, great	adjective	neuter
извините	izvinite	sorry	interjection	
но	no	but	conjunction, preposition	
у меня	u menya	I	preposition + pronoun	
уже	uzhe	already, yet	adverb	
есть планы	yest` plany	have plans	phrase	
извини	izvini	sorry, i am sorry	phrase	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Нет, спасибо. <i>Net, spasiba.</i> "No, thank you."	Нет, я не устал. <i>Net, ya ne ustal.</i> "No, I'm not tired."
Спасибо за вашу помощь! <i>Spasiba za vashu pomashch'</i> "Thank you for your help!"	Спасибо за гостеприимство. <i>Spasiba za gastepriiimstva.</i> "Thanks for your hospitality."
Большое спасибо! <i>Bal'shoye spasiba!</i> "Thank you very much!"	Мне хочется спать, но я должен закончить этот отчёт сегодня. <i>Mne khochetsa spat', no ya dolzhen zakonchit' etat atchyot sevodnya.</i> "I'm sleepy but I have to finish this report tonight."

<p>Я знаю, что вы заняты, но не могли бы вы приехать?</p> <p>Ya znayu, shto vy zanyaty, no ne mogli by vy priyekhat' ?</p> <p>"I know you're busy, but could you come?"</p>	<p>Я хочу пойти, но у меня нет времени.</p> <p>Ya khachu payti, no u menya net vremeni.</p> <p>"I want to go, but I don't have time."</p>
<p>Ты уже был в Париже?</p> <p>Ty uzhye byl v Parizhye?</p> <p>"Have you already been to Paris?"</p>	<p>Ты уже была в Америке?</p> <p>Ty uzhye byla v Amyerikye?</p> <p>"Have you already been to America?"</p>
<p>Я уже написал письмо.</p> <p>Ya uzhye napisal pis'mo.</p> <p>"I've already written the letter."</p>	<p>Извини, я не могу пойти с тобой.</p> <p>Izvini, ya ne magu payti s taboy.</p> <p>"Sorry, I can't go with you."</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to refuse politely an invite..

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Нет, спасибо.</i>	No, thank you.	
Word 1		<i>нет</i>	no	
Word 2		<i>спасибо</i>	thank you	
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Нет, спасибо большое.</i>	No, thanks a lot.	
Word 1		<i>нет</i>	no	
Word 2		<i>спасибо</i>	thank you	
Word 3		<i>большое</i>	big	

Phrase 3	formal	<i>Извините, но у меня уже есть планы.</i>	Sorry, but I already have plans.
Word 1		<i>ИЗВИНИТЕ</i>	<i>sorry</i>
Word 2		<i>НО</i>	<i>but</i>
Word 3		<i>у меня</i>	<i>I</i>
Word 4		<i>уже</i>	<i>already</i>
Word 5		<i>есть планы</i>	<i>have plans</i>
Phrase 4	informal	<i>Извини, но у меня уже есть планы.</i>	Sorry, but I already have plans.
Word 1		<i>ИЗВИНИ</i>	<i>sorry</i>
Word 2		<i>НО</i>	<i>but</i>
Word 3		<i>у меня</i>	<i>I</i>
Word 4		<i>уже</i>	<i>already</i>

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If your Russian friend invites you somewhere, you can refuse politely by saying that you have plans. But in this case make sure to suggest another day and time for the meeting, or you will sound rude and show that you are not interested in the person who invited you.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #7

Do you speak English?

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

7

RUSSIAN

1. Вы говорите по-английски?
2. Ты говоришь по-английски?
3. Да, я говорю по-английски.
4. Нет, я не говорю по-английски.

ROMANIZATION

1. Vy gavarite pa-angliski?
2. Ty gavarish pa-angliski?
3. Da, ya gavaru pa-angliski.
4. Net, ya ne gavaru pa-angliski.

ENGLISH

1. Do you speak English? (formal)
2. Do you speak English? (informal)
3. Yes, I speak English.
4. No, I don't speak English.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
вы	vy	you	pronoun
говорите	gavarite	speak	verb (imperative)
по-английски	pa-angliski	in English	adverb
ты	ty	you	pronoun
говоришь	gavarish	speak	verb
да	da	yes	expression
я	ya	I	pronoun
говорю	gavaryu	speak	verb
нет	net	no	particle
не	ne	not, don't	conjunction

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Вы приглашены. <i>Vy priglasheny.</i> "You are invited."	Вы из России? <i>Vy iz Rasii?</i> "Are you from Russia?"
Вы студент? <i>Vy student?</i> "Are you a student?"	Вы устали? <i>Vy ustali?</i> "Are you tired?"
Не говорите ему, что я приходил. <i>Ne gavarite emu, shto ya prikhadil.</i> "Don't tell him that I've come."	Мы не говорим по-английски. <i>My ne gavarim pa-angliski.</i> "We don't speak English."
Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eta ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"	Ты откуда? <i>Ty atkuda?</i> "Where are you from?"

<p>Ты говоришь по-русски? <i>Ty gavarish' pa-ruski?</i> "Do you speak Russian?"</p>	<p>Да, это мой паспорт. <i>Da, eta moy paspart.</i> <i>Da eta moy pasport.</i> "Yes, it's my passport."</p>
<p>Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."</p>	<p>Да, я говорю немного. <i>Da, ya gavaryu nemnoga.</i> "Yes, I speak a little."</p>
<p>Нет, спасибо. <i>Net, spasiba.</i> "No, thank you."</p>	<p>Нет, я не устал. <i>Net, ya ne ustal.</i> "No, I'm not tired."</p>
<p>В Москве сейчас не жарко? <i>V Maskve sechas ne zharka?</i> "Isn't it hot in Moscow now?"</p>	<p>Я сейчас не работаю. <i>Ya sechas ne rabotayu.</i> "I don't work at the moment."</p>
<p>Как Ваш чай, не холодный? <i>Kak Vash chay, ne kholodnyy?</i> "How's your tea, not cold?" ("warm enough?")</p>	<p>Вам не холодно? <i>Vam ne kholadna?</i> "Aren't you cold?"</p>
<p>Он не голодный. <i>On ne galodnyy.</i> "He's not hungry."</p>	<p>Я не русский. <i>Ya ne ruskiy.</i> "I'm not Russian."</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer the question.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1 formal	<i>Вы говорите по-английски?</i>	Do you speak English?	

Word 1	<i>вы</i>	you	
Word 2	<i>говорите</i>	speak	conjugated
Word 3	<i>по-английски</i>	English	
Phrase 2	informal	<i>Ты говоришь по-английски?</i>	Do you speak English?
Word 1	<i>ты</i>	you	
Word 2	<i>говоришь</i>	speak	conjugated
Word 3	<i>по-английски</i>	English	
Phrase 3		<i>Да, я говорю по-английски.</i>	Yes, I speak English.
Word 1	<i>да</i>	yes	
Word 2	<i>я</i>	I	
Word 3	<i>говорю</i>	speak	conjugated
Word 4	<i>по-английски</i>	English	
Phrase 4		<i>Нет, я не говорю по-английски.</i>	No, I don't speak English.
Word 1	<i>нет</i>	no	
Word 2	<i>я</i>	I	
Word 3	<i>не</i>	dont	
Word 4	<i>говорю</i>	speak	conjugated

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you go to Moscow or any famous tourist destination you will probably find someone that can help you in English. You should try first asking younger people. English is taught at every school so plenty of young people can speak English nowadays.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #8

Talking about your age

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

8

RUSSIAN

1. Сколько тебе лет?
2. Сколько вам лет?
3. Мне 17 лет.
4. Я предпочитаю не говорить.

ROMANIZATION

1. Skol'ka tebe let?
2. Skol'ka vam let?
3. Mne semnadtsat` let.
4. Ya pretpachitayu ne gavarit`.

ENGLISH

1. How old are you? (informal)
2. How old are you? (formal)
3. I am 17.
4. I prefer not to say.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
сколько	skol'ka	how	adverb
тебе	tebe	you	pronoun
лет	let	years old	noun
вам	vam	you	pronoun
мне	mne	me	pronoun
семнадцать	semnadtsat'	seventeen	numeral
я	ya	I	pronoun
предпочитаю	pretpachitayu	prefer	verb
не	ne	not	conjunction
говорить	gavarit'	to say, to speak	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Тебе нравится русская кухня? <i>Tebe nraivitsya russkaya kukhnya?</i> "Do you like Russian food?"	Сколько тебе лет? <i>Skol'ka tebe let?</i> "How old are you?"
Мне восемнадцать лет. <i>Mne vasemnadtsat' let.</i> "I'm 18 years old."	Ей семнадцать лет <i>Yey semnadtsat' let.</i> "She's 17 years old."

Я из Японии.

Ya iz Yaponii.

"I'm from Japan."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask someone's age and to say yours.

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	Сколько тебе лет?	How old are you?	
Word 1		СКОЛЬКО	how	
Word 2		тебе	you	dative case
Word 3		лет	years	plural
Phrase 2	formal	Сколько вам лет?	How old are you?	
Word 1		СКОЛЬКО	how	
Word 2		вам	you	dative case
Word 3		лет	years	plural
Phrase 3		Мне 17 лет.	I am 17.	
Word 1		мне	me	dative case
Word 2		семнадцать	seventeen	
Word 3		лет	years	plural
Phrase 4		Я предпочитаю не говорить.	I prefer not to say.	
Word 1		я	I	
Word 2		предпочитаю	prefer	conjugated
Word 3		не	not	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Basically in Russia it is okay to ask someone's age. However, if it is a female person, it is considered to be a good manner to tell her that she looks younger, make sure to never give her her real age.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #9

Talking about Nationalities

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

9

RUSSIAN

1. Я кореец.
2. Я кореянка.
3. Мы американцы.
4. Ты китаец.

ROMANIZATION

1. Ya kareyets.
2. Ya kareyanka.
3. My amerikantsy.
4. Ty kitayets.

ENGLISH

1. I am Korean. (male)
2. I am Korean. (female)
3. We are American.
4. You are Chinese.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
китаец	kitayets	Chinese	noun	masculine
я	ya	I	pronoun	
кореец	kareyets	Korean	noun	masculine
мы	my	we	pronoun	
американцы	amerikantsy	American	noun	
ты	ty	you	pronoun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."	Мы едем во Владивосток на шесть дней. <i>My edem va Vladivastok na shest' dney.</i> "We are going to Vladivostok for six days."
Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eta ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"	Ты откуда? <i>Tu atkuda?</i> "Where are you from?"

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to talk about nationalities in simple sentences.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	Я кореец.	I am Korean.	
Word 1	я	I	

Word 2	кореец	Korean
Phrase 2	Я кореянка.	I am Korean.
Word 1	Я	I
Word 2	кореянка	Korean
Phrase 3	Мы американцы.	We are American.
Word 1	мы	we
Word 2	американцы	American
		plural
Phrase 4	Ты китаец.	You are Chinese.
Word 1	ты	you
Word 2	китаец	Chinese

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Russia is considered to be home of people belonging to over 160 ethnic groups. Along with Russian, there are 35 different official languages in various regions of Russia.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #10

Asking how much

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

10

RUSSIAN

1. Сколько это стоит?
2. Сколько то стоит?
3. Хорошо, я возьму это.
4. Нет, спасибо. Это слишком дорого.

ROMANIZATION

1. Skol`ka eta stoit?
2. Skol`ka to stoit?
3. Kharasho, ya vaz`mu eta.
4. Net, spasiba. Eta slishkam doraga.

ENGLISH

1. How much does this cost?
2. How much does that cost?
3. OK, I'll take it.
4. No, thanks. It's too expensive.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
СКОЛЬКО	skol'ka	how much, how many, how long	adverb
СТОИТ	stoit	cost, costs	verb
ТО	to	that	demonstrative pronoun
хорошо	kharasho	OK	adverb
я	ya	I	pronoun
ВОЗЬМУ	vaz`mu	will take	verb
нет	net	no	particle
спасибо	spasiba	thank you	interjection
слишком	slishkam	too, too much	adverb
дорого	doraga	expensive	adverb
СКОЛЬКО СТОИТ	skol'ka stoit	how much (price)	phrase
ЭТО	eto	this , it	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

СКОЛЬКО вам лет? <i>Skol'ka vam let?</i> "How old are you?"	Сколько у тебя осталось денег? <i>Skol'ka u tebya astalas' denek?</i> "How much money do you have left?"
Сколько сувениров ты купил? <i>Skol'ka suveniraf ty kupil?</i> "How many souvenirs did you buy?"	Или то, или это. <i>Ili to, ili eta.</i> "Either that or this."
Хорошо, я пойду. <i>Kharasho, ya paydu .</i> "OK, I'll go."	Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."

<p>Нет, спасибо. <i>Net, spasiba.</i> "No, thank you."</p>	<p>Нет, я не устал. <i>Net, ya ne ustal.</i> "No, I'm not tired."</p>
<p>Спасибо за вашу помощь! <i>Spasiba za vashu pomashch'</i> "Thank you for your help!"</p>	<p>Спасибо за гостеприимство. <i>Spasiba za gasteprimstva.</i> "Thanks for your hospitality."</p>
<p>Большое спасибо! <i>Bal'shoye spasiba!</i> "Thank you very much!"</p>	<p>Он купил слишком много молока. <i>On kupil slishkam mnoga malaka.</i> "He bought too much milk."</p>
<p>Эта книга слишком скучная. <i>Eta kniga slishkam skuchnaya.</i> "This book is too boring."</p>	<p>Сегодня слишком холодно. <i>Sevodnya slishkam kholadna.</i> "It's too cold today."</p>
<p>В Токио жить дорого. <i>F Tokio zhyt' doraga.</i> "It is expensive to live in Tokyo."</p>	<p>Это не дорого. <i>Eta ne doraga.</i> "It isn't expensive."</p>
<p>Как дорого! <i>Kak doraga!</i> "How expensive!"</p>	<p>Сколько стоит доехать до Тверской? <i>Skol'ka stoit dayekhat' da Tverskoy?</i> "How much is it to Tverskaya?" (asking a taxi driver)</p>
<p>Сколько стоит этот бутерброд? <i>Skol'ka stoit etat buterbrot?</i> "How much is this sandwich?"</p>	<p>Это чьё? <i>Eto ch'yo?</i> "Whose is this?"</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask how much something costs.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	Сколько это стоит?	How much does this cost?	
Word 1	СКОЛЬКО	how much	
Word 2	ЭТО	this	
Word 3	СТОИТ	costs	conjugated
Phrase 2	Сколько то стоит?	How much does that cost?	
Word 1	СКОЛЬКО	how much	
Word 2	ТО	that	
Word 3	СТОИТ	costs	
Phrase 3	Хорошо, я возьму это.	OK, I'll take it.	
Word 1	хорошо	ok	
Word 2	я	I	
Word 3	возьму	will take	conjugated
Word 4	это	this	
Phrase 4	Нет, спасибо. Это слишком дорого.	No, thanks. It's too expensive.	
Word 1	нет	no	

Word 2	<i>спасибо</i>	thank you
Word 3	<i>это</i>	this
Word 4	<i>слишком</i>	too

CULTURAL INSIGHT

A faster way to ask about the price of something is [сколько стоит (skol'ka stoit)] meaning, "how much?" Feel free to use this phrase in any kind of situation and setting.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #11

Master the currency

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

11

RUSSIAN

1. Один рубль.
2. Десять рублей.
3. Пятьдесят пять рублей десять копеек.
4. Двадцать шесть рублей и семидесят копеек.

ROMANIZATION

1. Adin rubl'.
2. Desyat' rubley.
3. Pyat'desyat pyat' rubley desyat' kapeyek.
4. Dvadtsat' shest' rubley semdesyat kapeyek.

ENGLISH

1. One ruble.
2. Ten rubles.
3. Fifty-five rubles ten cents.
4. Twenty-six rubles seventy cents.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
семидесят	semdesyat	seventy	numeral	
шесть	shest'	six	numeral	
один	adin	one	numeral	masculine
рубль	rubl'	ruble	noun	masculine
десять	desyat'	ten	numeral	
пятьдесят	pyat'desyat	fifty	numeral	
пять	pyat'	five	numeral	
рублей	rubley	rubles	noun	plural
копеек	kapreyek	cents	noun	plural
двадцать	dvadtsat'	twenty	numeral	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Один кофе, пожалуйста. <i>Adin kofe, pazhalusta.</i> "One coffee, please."	У меня осталось 100 рублей. <i>U menya astalas' sto rubley.</i> "I have 100 rubles left."
Они женаты пятьдесят лет. <i>Ani zhenaty pyat'desyat let.</i> "They've been married for fifty years."	Пять плюс пять равно десять. <i>Pyat' plus pyat' ravno desyat'.</i> "Five plus five equals ten."
Он провёл в аэропорту пять часов. <i>On pravyol v aerapartu pyat' chasof.</i> "He spent five hours in the airport."	Сто рублей. <i>Sto rubley.</i> "It's 100 rubbles."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to read prices.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	Один рубль.	One ruble.	
Word 1	один	one	
Word 2	рубль	ruble	
Phrase 2	десять рублей.	Ten rubles.	
Word 1	десять	ten	
Word 2	рублей	rubles	genitive case
Phrase 3	пятьдесят пять рублей десять копеек.	Fifty-five rubles ten cents.	
Word 1	пятьдесят	fifty	
Word 2	пять	five	
Word 3	рублей	rubles	genitive case
Word 4	десять	ten	
Word 5	копеек	cents	genitive case
Phrase 4	двадцать шесть рублей и семьдесят копеек.	Twenty-six rubles seventy cents.	
Word 1	двадцать	twenty	

Word 2	<i>шесть</i>	six	
Word 3	<i>рублей</i>	rubles	genitive case
Word 4	<i>семьдесят</i>	seventy	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The national currency of Russia is the ruble. It was also the currency of the Russian Empire and the Soviet Union before their dissolution. It is said that the ruble has been the Russian unit of currency for more than 500 years.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #12

What are you doing?

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

12

RUSSIAN

1. Что ты делаешь?

2. Что вы делаете?

3. Я учуся.

4. Ничего.

ROMANIZATION

1. Shto ty delaesh?

2. Shto vy delayete?

3. Ya uchus`.

4. Nichevo.

ENGLISH

1. What are you doing? (informal)

2. What are you doing? (formal)

3. I am studying.

4. Nothing.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
учусь	uchus`	am studying	verb
Ничего.	nichevo	Nothing.	pronoun
Ничего особенного, а что?	Nichevo asobennava. A shto?	"Nothing special. Why?"	sentence
что	shto	what	interrogative, pronoun
ты	ty	you	pronoun
делаешь	delaesh	are doing	verb
вы	vy	you	pronoun
делаете	delayete	are doing	verb
я	ya	I	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Что это? <i>Shto eta?</i> "What's this?"	Что случилось? <i>Shto sluchilas`?</i> "What's wrong?"
Что они говорят? <i>Shto ani gavaryat?</i> "What are they saying?"	Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eta ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"
Ты откуда? <i>Ty otkuda?</i> "Where are you from?"	Вы приглашены. <i>Vy priglasheny .</i> "You are invited."
Вы из России? <i>Vy iz Rossii?</i> "Are you from Russia?"	Вы студент? <i>Vy student?</i> "Are you a student?"

Вы устали? <i>Vy ustali?</i> "Are you tired?"	Женщина улыбнулась вам. <i>Zhenschina ulybnulas' vam.</i> "A woman smiled at you."
У него обширные планы на будущее. <i>U nevno obshirnye plany na budusheye.</i> "He has extensive plans for the future."	Прошу прощения, я Вас не заметил. <i>Proshu proshcheniya, ya vas ne zamelil.</i> "I'm sorry, I didn't notice you."

Я из Японии.

Ya iz Yaponii.

"I'm from Japan."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask what someone is doing.

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	Что ты делаешь?	What are you doing?	
Word 1		Что	what	
Word 2		ты	you	
Word 3		делаешь	are doing	conjugated
Phrase 2	formal	Что вы делаете?	What are you doing?	
Word 1		Что	what	
Word 2		вы	you	
Word 3		делаете	are doing	conjugated

Phrase 3	Я учусь.	I am studying.
Word 1	Я	I
Word 2	учусь	am studying conjugated
Phrase 4	Ничего.	Nothing.
Word 1	Ничего.	Nothing.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you don't feel like giving explanations about what you are doing, you can just say: **Ничего особенного, а что?** (Nichevo asobennava. A shto?) which means "Nothing special. Why?" (why are you asking). It is Ok to use this phrase with friends and people whom you know. This phrase is quiet polite.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #13

Who is it?

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

13

RUSSIAN

1. Кто это?
2. Кто они?
3. Это я.
4. Они мои друзья.

ROMANIZATION

1. Kto eta?
2. Kto ani?
3. Eta ya.
4. Ani mai druz'ya.

ENGLISH

1. Who is it?
2. Who are they?
3. It's me.
4. They are my friends.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
кто	kto	who	pronoun
они	ani	they	pronoun
я	Ya	I, me	personal pronoun
друзья	druz'ya	friends	noun
мои	mai	my	pronoun
это	eto	this , it	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Кто это? <i>Kto eta?</i> "Who is this?"	Алло? Кто это? <i>Allo? Kto eta?</i> "Hello? Who is this?"
Я украинка, а он американец. <i>Ya ukrainka, a on amyerikanyets.</i> "I'm Ukrainian, and he's American."	Я из Денвера, а Вы? <i>Ya iz Dyenvyera, a Vy?</i> "I'm from Denver, and you?"
Я занимаюсь. <i>Ya zanimayus'.</i> "I'm occupied."	В трудную минуту мои друзья всегда рядом. <i>F trudnuyu minutu mai druz'ya fsegda ryadam.</i> "My friends are always there (for me) during hard times. "
Это чьё? <i>Eto ch'yo?</i> "Whose is this?"	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask who it is.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	<i>Кто это?</i>	Who is it?	
Word 1	<i>Кто</i>	who	
Word 2	<i>это</i>	this	
Phrase 2	<i>Кто они?</i>	Who are they?	
Word 1	<i>Кто</i>	who	
Word 2	<i>они</i>	they	
Phrase 3	<i>Это я.</i>	It's me.	
Word 1	<i>Это</i>	this	
Word 2	<i>я</i>	me	
Phrase 4	<i>Они мои друзья.</i>	They are my friends.	
Word 1	<i>они</i>	they	
Word 2	<i>мои</i>	my	plural
Word 3	<i>друзья</i>	friends	plural

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If someone knocks at your door, the most common expression we use in Russian is [Кто это? Kto eta] - who is it? If you are the one knocking, just answer with your name, unless they are familiar with your voice already, then just say - It's me - [Это я. (eta ya)]



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #14

When are you leaving?

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

14

RUSSIAN

1. Когда ты уезжаешь?
2. Когда вы уезжаете?
3. Я уезжаю через два часа.
4. Я уезжаю на следующей неделе.

ROMANIZATION

1. Kagda ty uyezzhayesh'?
2. Kagda vy uyezzhaete?
3. Ya uyezzhayu cheres dva chasa.
4. Ya uyezzhayu na sledushchey nedele.

ENGLISH

1. When are you leaving? (informal)
2. When are you leaving? (formal)
3. I am leaving in two hours.
4. I am leaving next week.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
когда	kagda	when	adverb, conjunction	
ты	ty	you	pronoun	
уезжаешь	uyezzhayesh'	leave	verb	
уезжаете	uyezzhaete?	leave	verb	
я	ya	I	pronoun	
уезжаю	uyezzhayu	am leaving	verb	
через	cheres	in	preposition	
два	dva	two	numeral	
часа	chasa	hours	noun	masculine
на	na	on	preposition	
следующей	sledushchey	next	adjective	feminine
неделе	nedele	week	noun	feminine
Вы	vy	you	pronoun (1. plural/2. polite)	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Когда начнётся футбол?

Kagda nachnoytsa futbol?

"When does the football game start?"

Когда твой день рождения?

Kagda tvoy den' razhdeniya?

"When is your birthday?"

<p>Когда ты закончишь эту работу? - На следующей неделе.</p> <p><i>Kagda ty zakonchish' etu rabotu? - Na sleduyushchey nedele.</i></p> <p>"When will you finish the job? - Next week."</p>	<p>Алла, это ты?</p> <p><i>Alla, eta ty?</i></p> <p>"Alla, is that you?"</p>
<p>Ты откуда?</p> <p><i>Ty atkuda?</i></p> <p>"Where are you from?"</p>	<p>Я из Японии.</p> <p><i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i></p> <p>"I'm from Japan."</p>
<p>Вы откуда?</p> <p><i>Vy otkuda?</i></p> <p>"Where are you from?"</p>	<p>Вы из России?</p> <p><i>Vy iz Rossii?</i></p> <p>"Are you from Russia?"</p>
<p>Вы студент?</p> <p><i>Vy student?</i></p> <p>"Are you a student?"</p>	<p>Вы устали?</p> <p><i>Vy ustali?</i></p> <p>"Are you tired?"</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask when someone is leaving.

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Когда ты уезжаешь?</i>	When are you leaving?	
Word 1		<i>когда</i>	when	
Word 2		<i>ты</i>	you	
Word 3		<i>уезжаешь</i>	leave	conjugated

Phrase 2	formal	Когда вы уезжаете ?	When are you leaving?
Word 1		когда	when
Word 2		вы	you
Word 3		уезжаете	leave conjugated
Phrase 3		Я уезжаю	
		через два часа.	I am leaving in two hours.
Word 1	я		I
Word 2	уезжаю	am leaving	conjugated
Word 3	через	in	
Word 4	два	two	
Word 5	часа	hours	genitive case
Phrase 4		Я уезжаю на	
		следующей неделе.	I am leaving next week.
Word 1	я		I
Word 2	уезжаю	am leaving	conjugated
Word 3	на	on	
Word 4	следующей	next	Dative case

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Use these phrases to ask when someone is leaving for somewhere, as well as in case of

leaving country or city. But be aware that you can use this phrase talking about leaving by car, bus or train. If you leave by foot or plane the verb will be different.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #15

Where are you going?

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

15

RUSSIAN

1. Куда ты идешь?
2. Куда вы идёте?
3. Я иду в супермаркет.
4. Я иду на работу.

ROMANIZATION

1. Kuda ty idyosh?
2. Kuda vy idyote?
3. Ya idu f supermarket.
4. Ya idu na rabotu.

ENGLISH

1. Where are you going? (informal)
2. Where are you going? (formal)
3. I'm going to the supermarket.
4. I'm going to work.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Я пойду с тобой	Ya paydu s taboy	I will go with you.	sentence	
работу	rabotu	work	noun	feminine
куда	kuda	where	pronoun	
ты	ty	you	pronoun	
идешь	idyosh	go/going	verb	
вы	vy	you	pronoun	
идёте	idyote	go/going	verb	
я	ya	I	pronoun	
иду	idu	go/going	verb	
супермаркет	supermarket	supermarket	noun	masculine
на	na	on	preposition	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eta ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"	Ты откуда? <i>Ty atkuda?</i> "Where are you from?"
Вы приглашены. <i>Vy priglasheny.</i> "You are invited."	Вы из России? <i>Vy iz Rasii?</i> "Are you from Russia?"
Вы студент? <i>Vy student?</i> "Are you a student?"	Вы устали? <i>Vy ustali?</i> "Are you tired?"

Я из Японии.

Ya iz Yaponii.

"I'm from Japan."

Несмотря на то, что почти нет клиентов, супермаркет открыт 24 часа в сутки.

Nesmatrya na to, shto pachti net kliyentov, supermarket atkryt 24 chasa f sutki.

"Although there are hardly any customers, the supermarket is open 24 hours a day."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask where someone is going.

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Куда ты идешь?</i>	Where are you going?	
Word 1		<i>куда</i>	<i>where</i>	
Word 2		<i>ты</i>	<i>you</i>	
Word 3		<i>идешь</i>	<i>go/going</i>	<i>conjugated</i>
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Куда вы идёте?</i>	Where are you going?	
Word 1		<i>куда</i>	<i>where</i>	
Word 2		<i>вы</i>	<i>you</i>	
Word 3		<i>идёте</i>	<i>go/going</i>	<i>conjugated</i>
Phrase 3		<i>Я иду в супермаркет.</i>	I'm going to the supermarket.	

Word 1	Я	I	
Word 2	иду	go/going	conjugated
Word 3	в	in	
Word 4	супермаркет	supermarket	
Phrase 4	Я иду на работу.	I'm going to work.	
Word 1	Я	I	
Word 2	иду	go/going	conjugated
Word 3	на	on	
Word 4	работу	work	Accusative case

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you would like to accompany your friend to wherever he or she is going, you can say - [Я пойду с тобой (Ya paydu s taboy)], meaning - I will go with you.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #16

Asking directions

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

16

RUSSIAN

1. Скажите пожалуйста, где здесь станция?
2. Идите прямо.
3. Поверните направо.
4. Поверните налево.

ROMANIZATION

1. Skazhyte pazhalusta, gde zdes` stantsyya?
2. Idite pryama.
3. Pavernite naprava.
4. Pavernite naleva.

ENGLISH

1. Please tell me, where is the station?
2. Go straight.
3. Turn right.
4. Turn left.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
налево	naleva	left	adverb	
направо	naprava	right	adverb	
поворните	pavernite	turn	verb	
прямо	pryama	straight	adverb	
идите	idite	go	verb	
скажите	skazhyte	tell	verb	
пожалуйста	pazhalusta	please	interjection	
где	gde	where	adverb	
здесь	zdes'	here	adverb	
станция	stantsyya	station	noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Где ты изучал русский язык? <i>Gde ty izuchal russkiy yazyk?</i> "Where did you learn Russian?"	Где твои сумки? <i>Gde tvai sumki?</i> "Where are your bags?"
Не садитесь, здесь мокро. <i>Ne sadites', zdes' mokra.</i> "Don't sit down: it's wet here."	Здесь можно курить? <i>Zdes' mozhna kuriť?</i> "Is it okay (allowed) to smoke here?"
Какая это станция? <i>Kakaya eta stantsyya?</i> "What station is it?"	Я буду ждать тебя на станции. <i>Ya budu zhdat' tebya na stantsyi.</i> "I'll be waiting for you at the station."

Скажите, пожалуйста, где ближайшая станция метро?

Skazhyte, pazhalusta, gde blizhayshaya stantsyya metro?

"Could you tell me where the nearest metro station is?"

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and understand basic directions.

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1		Скажите пожалуйста, где здесь станция?	Please tell me, where is the station?	
Word 1		скажите	tell	
Word 2		пожалуйста	please	
Word 3		где	where	
Word 4		здесь	here	
Word 5		станция	station	
Phrase 2	formal	Идите прямо.	Go straight.	
Word 1		идите	go	conjugated
Word 2		прямо	straight	
Phrase 3	formal	Поверните направо.	Turn right.	
Word 1		поверните	turn	conjugated

Word 2		<i>направо</i>	right
Phrase 4	formal	<i>Поверните налево.</i>	Turn left.
Word 1		<i>поверните</i>	turn
Word 2		<i>налево</i>	left

CULTURAL INSIGHT

It is always useful to know how to ask for basic directions, but nowadays, you can easily use your smartphone or your GPS to find any place you are interested in.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #17

Why?

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

17

RUSSIAN

1. Почему ты молчишь?
2. Я думаю.
3. Почему ты уходишь так рано?
4. У меня дела.

ROMANIZATION

1. Pachemu ty malchish`?
2. Ya dymayu.
3. Pachemu ty ukhodish` tak rana?
4. U menya dela.

ENGLISH

1. Why are you silent?
2. I am thinking.
3. Why do you leave so early?
4. I have a lot of things to do.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Почему нет?	Pachemu net	why not?	expression	
почему	pochemu	why	adverb	
ты	ty	you	pronoun	
молчишь	malchish`	silent	verb	
я	ya	I	pronoun	
думаю	dumayu	am thinking	verb	
уходишь	ukhodish`	leave	verb	
так	tak	so	adverb	
рано	rano, rana	early	adverb	
у меня	u menya	I have	phrase,preposition plus pronoun	
дела	dela	things	noun	neuter

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Почему ты ещё не дома? <i>Pochyemu ty yeschyo nye doma?</i> "Why aren't you home yet?"	Почему у вас нет паспорта? <i>Pochyemu u vas nyet pasporta?</i> "Why don't you have a passport?"
Почему вы так думаете? <i>Pochyemu vy tak dumayetye?</i> "Why do you think so?"	Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eta ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"
Ты откуда? <i>Ty atkuda?</i> "Where are you from?"	Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."

У меня мало друзей.

U menya mala druzey.

"I have few friends."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask why.

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	Почему ты молчишь?	Why are you silent?	
Word 1		почему	why	
Word 2		ты	you	
Word 3		молчишь	silent	
Phrase 2		Я думаю.	I am thinking.	
Word 1		я	I	
Word 2		думаю	am thinking	
Phrase 3	informal	Почему ты уходишь так рано?	Why do you leave so early?	
Word 1		почему	why	
Word 2		ты	you	
Word 3		уходишь	leave	conjugated
Word 4		так	so	

Word 5	<i>рано</i>	early
Phrase 4	<i>У меня дела.</i>	I have a lot of things to do.
Word 1	<i>у меня</i>	I have
Word 2	<i>дела</i>	things plural

CULTURAL INSIGHT

You can use the phrase - why not?, in Russian [Почему нет? (Pachemu net)], in the same situations that you would use it in English.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #18

Possession

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

18

RUSSIAN

1. **У тебя есть ручка?**
2. **У вас есть ручка?**
3. **Да, есть.**
4. **Да, вот пожалуйста.**

ROMANIZATION

1. **U tebya est` ruchka?**
2. **U vas est` ruchka?**
3. **Da, yest`.**
4. **Da, vot pazhalusta.**

ENGLISH

1. **Do you have a pen? (informal)**
2. **Do you have a pen? (formal)**
3. **Yes, I have.**
4. **Yes, here you are.**

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
у тебя есть	u tebya est'	do you have	expression	
ручка	ruchka	pen	noun	feminine
у вас есть	u vas est'	do you have	expression	
да	da	yes	conjunction	
есть	yest'	I have	verb	
вот	vot	here	particle	
пожалуйста	pazhalusta	please	interjection	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

У вас есть синяя шариковая ручка? <i>U vas yest' sinyaya sharikovaya ruchka?</i> "Do you have a blue ballpoint pen?"	Да, это мой паспорт. <i>Da, eta moy paspart.</i> <i>Da eta moy pasport.</i> "Yes, it's my passport."
---	--

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to talk about possession.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1 informal	У тебя есть ручка?	Do you have a pen?	
Word 1	у тебя есть	do you have	
Word 2	ручка	pen	

Phrase 2	formal	У вас есть ручка?	Do you have a pen?
Word 1		у вас есть	do you have
Word 2		ручка	pen
Phrase 3		Да, есть.	Yes, I have.
Word 1		да	yes
Word 2		есть	I have
Phrase 4		Да, вот пожалуйста.	Yes, here you are.
Word 1		да	yes
Word 2		вот	here
Word 3		пожалуйста	please

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Friendship is really very important for Russians. There is even a famous proverb "where your friends are, there your riches are". Russians rely on friends to help solve a person's problems. Once a person has recognised another as a friend, he can borrow easily to him whatever he has.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #19

Going without

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

19

RUSSIAN

1. **У меня нет ручки.**
2. **У меня нет времени.**
3. **Я не знаю.**
4. **Я не понимаю.**

ROMANIZATION

1. **U menya net ruchki.**
2. **U menya net vremeni.**
3. **Ya ne znau.**
4. **Ya ne panimayu.**

ENGLISH

1. **I don't have a pen.**
2. **I don't have time.**
3. **I don't know.**
4. **I don't understand.**

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Да, нет.	da, net	well, no	expression	
у меня нет	u menya net	I don't have	phrase	
ручки	ruchki	pen	noun	feminine
времени	vremen'i	time	noun	neuter
я	ya	I	pronoun	
не	ne	not, don't	conjunction	
знаю	znau	know	verb	
понимаю	ponimayu	understand	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

У меня совсем нет денег. <i>U myenya sovsyem nyet dyenyeg.</i> "I'm totally broke." ("I don't have money at all.")	К сожалению, у меня нет телефона. <i>K sozhalyeniyu, u myenya nyet tyelyefona.</i> "Unfortunately, I don't have a phone."
Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."	В Москве сейчас не жарко? <i>V Maskve sechas ne zharka?</i> "Isn't it hot in Moscow now?"
Я сейчас не работаю. <i>Ya sechas ne rabotayu.</i> "I don't work at the moment."	Как Ваш чай, не холодный? <i>Kak Vash chay, ne khalodnyy?</i> "How's your tea, not cold?" ("warm enough?")
Вам не холодно? <i>Vam ne kholadno?</i> "Aren't you cold?"	Он не голодный. <i>On ne galodnyy.</i> "He's not hungry."

Я не русский.

Ya ne ruskiy.

"I'm not Russian."

Я ничего не понимаю.

Ya nischevo ne panimayu.

"I don't understand anything."

Я не понимаю по-русски.

Ya ne panimayu pa-ruski.

"I don't understand Russian."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to state essential negative statements.

			Important
	Register	Russian	English
Phrase 1		У меня нет ручки.	I don't have a pen.
Word 1		у меня нет	I don't have
Word 2		ручки	pen
Phrase 2		У меня нет времени.	I don't have time.
Word 1		у меня нет	I don't have
Word 2		времени	time
Phrase 3		Я не знаю.	I don't know.
Word 1		Я	I
Word 2		не	don't
Word 3		знаю	know
			conjugated

Phrase 4

Я не понимаю. I don't understand.

Word 1	Я	I	
Word 2	не	don't	
Word 3	понимаю	understand	conjugated

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Basically "yes" is [da] in Russian. And "no" is [net]. However, there are some expressions which are widely used in daily life, that make foreigners be confused. For example, the typical answer can be: [Да, нет. (da, net)]. Does it mean "yes" or "no"? It means "no". It is because Russian [da] has several meanings. It can be also translated as "well". So, [da, net] means "well, no".



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #20

Talking about what you like

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

20

RUSSIAN

1. Ты любишь шоколад?
2. Ты любишь сладости?
3. Да, я его люблю.
4. Да, я люблю их.

ROMANIZATION

1. Ty lyubish shekalat?
2. Ty lyubish sladasti?
3. Da, ya evo lyublyu.
4. Da, ya ikh lyublyu.

ENGLISH

1. Do you like chocolate?
2. Do you like sweets?
3. Yes I like it.
4. Yes I like them.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Нравится?	nrvavitsa?	Do you like it?	expression	
ты	ty	you	pronoun	
любишь	lyubish, lyublyu,lyublu	like	verb	
шоколад	shekalat	chocolate	noun	masculine
сладости	sladasti	sweets	noun	feminine
да	da	yes	conjunction	
я	ya	I	pronoun	
его	ego,evo	it	pronoun	masculine
их	ih, ikh	them	pronoun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Алла, это ты? <i>Alla, eta ty?</i> "Alla, is that you?"</p>	<p>Ты откуда? <i>Tu atkuda?</i> "Where are you from?"</p>
<p>Некоторые люди просто не могут жить без шоколада. <i>Nekatarye lyudi prosta ne mogut zhyt' bes shekalada.</i> "Some people just can't live without chocolate."</p>	<p>Фабрика "Красный Октябрь" производит самый вкусный горький шоколад. <i>Fabrika "Krasnyy Oktyabr" praizvodit samyy fkusnyy gor'kiy shekalat.</i> "The Krasniy Octyabr factory produces the most delicious bitter chocolate."</p>

<p>Тебе нельзя есть шоколад. <i>Tebe nel'zya est' shekalat.</i> "You mustn't eat chocolate." (informal)</p>	<p>Да, это мой паспорт. <i>Da, eta moy paspart.</i> <i>Da eta moy pasport.</i> "Yes, it's my passport."</p>
<p>Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."</p>	<p>Я изучал его дома. <i>Ya izuchal ego doma.</i> "I learned it at home."</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer affirmatively to the question.

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Ты любишь шоколад?</i>	Do you like chocolate?	
Word 1		<i>ты</i>	you	
Word 2		<i>любишь</i>	like	conjugated
Word 3		<i>шоколад</i>	chocolate	
Phrase 2	informal	<i>Ты любишь сладости?</i>	Do you like sweets?	
Word 1		<i>ты</i>	you	
Word 2		<i>любишь</i>	like	conjugated
Word 3		<i>сладости</i>	sweets	plural
Phrase 3		<i>Да, я его люблю.</i>	Yes I like it.	

Word 1	да	yes	
Word 2	я	I	
Word 3	его	it	Accusative case
Word 4	люблю	like	conjugated
Phrase 4	Да, я люблю их.	Yes I like them.	
Word 1	да	yes	
Word 2	я	I	Accusative case
Word 3	их	them	conjugated
Word 4	люблю	like	conjugated

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Russian language you can simple ask, pointing out on something, [Нравится? (nrvitsa?)], meaning "Do you like it?".



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #21

Talking about what you don't like

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

21

RUSSIAN

1. Мне это не нравится.
2. Я не люблю ждать.
3. Я ненавижу это.
4. Я ненавижу ждать.

ROMANIZATION

1. Mne eta ne nraovitsa.
2. Ya ne lyublu zhdat`.
3. Ya neneavizhu eta.
4. Ya neneavizhu zdat`.

ENGLISH

1. I don't like this.
2. I don't like waiting.
3. I hate this.
4. I hate waiting.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
ненавижу	nenavizhu	hate	verb
мне	mnye,mne	to me, for me	pronoun
это	eta	this	demonstrative pronoun
не	ne	not, don't	conjunction
нравится	nравится	like	verb
я	ya	I	pronoun
люблю	lyublu	like	verb
Ждать	Zhdat'	to wait	verb, imperfective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Мне тоже холодно. <i>Mnye tozhye holodno.</i> "I'm cold, too." ("I'm also cold.")	Мне тоже очень понравился этот фильм! <i>Mne tozhe ochen' ponravilsya etot fil'm!</i> "I liked this movie very much, too!" ("I also liked this movie!")
Моя бабушка дала мне это. <i>Maya babashka dala mne eta.</i> "My grandmother gave me this."	Что это? <i>Shто eta?</i> "What is it?"
В Москве сейчас не жарко? <i>V Maskve sechas ne zharka?</i> "Isn't it hot in Moscow now?"	Я сейчас не работаю. <i>Ya sechas ne rabotayu.</i> "I don't work at the moment."
Как Ваш чай, не холодный? <i>Kak Vash chay, ne kholodnyy?</i> "How's your tea, not cold?" ("warm enough?")	Вам не холодно? <i>Vam ne kholadna?</i> "Aren't you cold?"

Он не голодный. <i>On ne galodny.</i> "He's not hungry."	Я не русский. <i>Ya ne ruskiy.</i> "I'm not Russian."
Тебе нравится русская кухня? <i>Tebe nraavitsya russkaya kukhnya?</i> "Do you like Russian food?"	Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."
Я ненавижу ждать тебя часами! <i>Ya nenaavizhu zhdat' tebya chasami!</i> "I hate waiting for you for hours!"	Не жди меня сегодня. <i>Nye zhdi myenya syegodnya.</i> "Don't wait for me tonight."
Я тебя жду дома. <i>Ya tyebya zhdu doma.</i> "I'll wait for you at home."	Жду тебя у станции метро. <i>Zhdu tyebya u stantsii myetro.</i> "I'm waiting for you by the subway station."

Не жди меня, я задержусь на работе.

Nye zhdi myenya, ya zadyerzhus' na rabotye.

"Don't wait for me; I am going to be late to work."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to say that you don't like something.

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1		<i>Мне это не нравится.</i>	I don't like this.	
Word 1		<i>Мне</i>	to me	Dative case
Word 2		<i>это</i>	this	
Word 3		<i>не</i>	don't	

Word 4	нравится	like	conjugated
Phrase 2	Я не люблю ждать.	I don't like waiting.	
Word 1	Я	I	
Word 2	не	don't	
Word 3	люблю	like	conjugated
Word 4	ждать	to wait	
Phrase 3	Я ненавижу это.	I hate this.	
Word 1	Я	I	
Word 2	ненавижу	hate	conjugated
Word 3	это	this	
Phrase 4	Я ненавижу ждать.	I hate waiting.	
Word 1	Я	I	
Word 2	ненавижу	hate	conjugated
Word 3	ждать	to wait	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Russia, you can say straightforward that you don't like something. But please don't use it about presents.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #22

Ordering at a restaurant

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

22

RUSSIAN

1. Можно посмотреть меню?
2. Что вы рекомендуете?
3. Мне кофе, пожалуйста.
4. Я хочу кофе.

ROMANIZATION

1. Mozhna pasmatret` menu?
2. Shto vy rekamenduyete?
3. Mne kofe, pazhalusta.
4. Ya khachu kofe.

ENGLISH

1. Can I see the menu?
2. What do you recommend?
3. A coffee for me, please.
4. I want coffee.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
Это, пожалуйста	Eta, pazhalusta	This, please	phrase	
можно	mozhna	can	adverb; verb	
посмотреть	pasmatret'	see	verb	
меню	menu	menu	noun	neutral
что	shto	what	interrogative, pronoun	
вы	vy	you	pronoun	
рекомендуете	rekamenduyete	recommend	verb	
мне	mnye,mne	to me, for me	pronoun	
кофе	kofe	coffee	noun	masculine
пожалуйста	pazhalusta	please	interjection	
я	ya	I	pronoun	
хочу	hochu	want	verb (first person)	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>У Вас есть меню на английском? <i>U Vas yest' menu na anglyiskom?</i></p> <p>"Do you have a menu in English?" (an English menu)</p>	<p>Что это? <i>Shto eta?</i></p> <p>"What's this?"</p>
<p>Что случилось? <i>Shto sluchilas`?</i></p> <p>"What's wrong?"</p>	<p>Что они говорят? <i>Shto ani gavaryat?</i></p> <p>"What are they saying?"</p>

<p>Вы приглашены. <i>Vy priglasheny.</i> "You are invited."</p>	<p>Вы из России? <i>Vy iz Rossii?</i> "Are you from Russia?"</p>
<p>Вы студент? <i>Vy student?</i> "Are you a student?"</p>	<p>Вы устали? <i>Vy ustali?</i> "Are you tired?"</p>
<p>Мне тоже холодно. <i>Mnye tozhye holodno.</i> "I'm cold, too." ("I'm also cold.")</p>	<p>Мне тоже очень понравился этот фильм! <i>Mnye tozhe ochen' ponravilsya etot fil'm!</i> "I liked this movie very much, too!" ("I also liked this movie!")</p>
<p>Я не могу начать день без кофе. <i>Ya ne magu nachat' den' bes kofe.</i> "I can't start the day without coffee."</p>	<p>Кофе или чай? <i>Kofe ili chay?</i> "Coffee or tea?"</p>
<p>Вы хотите кофе? <i>Vy khatite kofe?</i> "Would you like some coffee?"</p>	<p>Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."</p>
<p>Я хочу поехать в Калифорнию. <i>Ya hochu poyehat' v Kaliforniyu.</i> "I want to go to California."</p>	<p>Вы хотите пить? <i>Vy hotitye pit'?</i> "Do you want a drink?"/"Are you thirsty?"</p>
<p>Мы хотим поехать в Европу. <i>My hotim poyehat' v Yevropu.</i> "We want to go to Europe."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to order at a restaurant or coffee shop.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	Можно посмотреть меню?	Can I see the menu?	
Word 1	МОЖНО	can	
Word 2	ПОСМОТРЕТЬ	see	
Word 3	МЕНЮ	menu	
Phrase 2	formal Что вы рекомендуете?	What do you recommend?	
Word 1	ЧТО	what	
Word 2	ВЫ	you	
Word 3	рекомендуете	recommend	conjugated
Phrase 3	formal Мне кофе, пожалуйста.	A coffee for me, please.	
Word 1	МНЕ	for me	Dative case
Word 2	кофе	coffee	
Word 3	пожалуйста	please	
Phrase 4	informal Я хочу кофе.	I want coffee.	
Word 1	Я	I	
Word 2	хочу	want	
Word 3	кофе	coffee	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The last phrase, will come handy if you have a menu with pictures. Just point at what you want and say it - [Это, пожалуйста (Eta, pazhalusta)], which means "This, please"



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #23

Asking for the check

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Cultural Insight

23

RUSSIAN

1. Принесите счёт, пожалуйста.
2. Где я могу заплатить?
3. Извините, сдача неправильная.
4. Сдачи не надо.

ROMANIZATION

1. Prinesite shchot, pazhalusta.
2. Gde ya magu zaplatit'?
3. Izvinite, sdacha nepravil`naya.
4. Sdachi ne nada.

ENGLISH

1. Can you bring the bill, please?
2. Where can I pay the bill?
3. Excuse me, the change is wrong.
4. Keep the change.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
не надо	ne nada	no need	expression	
сдачи	sdachi	change	noun	feminine
Сдача не надо. Sdachi ne nada.		Keep the change.		
неправильная	nepravil`naya	wrong	adjective	feminine
сдача	sdacha	change	noun	feminine
принесите	prinesite	bring	verb	
счёт	shchot	bill	noun	masculine
пожалуйста	pazhalusta	please	interjection	
где	gde	where	adverb	
я	ya	I	pronoun	
могу	magu	can	verb	
заплатить	zaplatit'	pay	verb	
Извините	izvinite	Excuse me	Interjection	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Где ты изучал русский язык? <i>Gde ty izuchal russkiy yazyk?</i> "Where did you learn Russian?"	Где твои сумки? <i>Gde tvai sumki?</i> "Where are your bags?"
Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."	Извините, который час? <i>Izvinite, katoryy chas?</i> "Excuse me, what time is it?"

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

In this lesson you will learn how to ask for the check and verify the change.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	Принесите счёт, пожалуйста.	Can you bring the bill, please?	
Word 1	принесите	bring	conjugated
Word 2	счёт	bill	
Word 3	пожалуйста	please	
Phrase 2	Где я могу заплатить?	Where can I pay the bill?	
Word 1	где	where	
Word 2	я	I	
Word 3	могу	can	conjugated
Word 4	заплатить	pay	
Phrase 3	формal	Извините, сдача ча неправильная.	Excuse me, the change is wrong.
Word 1	извините	excuse me	
Word 2	сдача	change	
Word 3	неправильная	wrong	
Phrase 4		Сдача не надо.	Keep the change.
Word 2	сдача	change	genitive case

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Russia, it is accustomed to give tips to the waiter or waitress, about 5-10% of the total consume. Russians don't go Dutch. So, if you ask a lady out, don't expect her to pay for herself, not at a restaurant or anywhere else. This is also true about friends, but of course depends on a situation and relationships.



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #24

Offering an invitation

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

24

RUSSIAN

1. У тебя есть планы на вечер пятницы?
2. У вас есть планы на вечер пятницы?
3. Я собираюсь в кино.
4. Присоединишься?

ROMANIZATION

1. U tebya est` plany na vecher pyatnitsu?
2. U vas est` plany na vecher pyatnitsu?
3. Ya sabirayus` v kino.
4. Prisayedinish'sya?

ENGLISH

1. Do you have plans on Friday night? (informal)
2. Do you have plans on Friday night? (formal)
3. I'm going to the movies.
4. Will you join?

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class	Gender
давай	davay	let's... (informal)	expression	
давайте	davayte	let's... (formal)	expression	
Присоединишься? Prisayedinish'sy a?		Will you join?		verb
у тебя есть	u tebya est`	do you have	expression	
планы	plany	plans	noun	
на	na	on	preposition	
вечер	vecher	evening	noun	masculine
у вас есть	u vas est`	do you have	expression	
я	ya	I	pronoun	
собираюсь	sabirayus`	am going	verb	
в	v	to	preposition	
кино	kino	movie, cinema	noun	neuter

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Теннисный корт открыт так же вечером. <i>Tennisnyy kort atkryt tak zhe i vecherom .</i> "The tennis court is open in the evening, too."</p>	<p>Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."</p>
---	--

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to invite someone out.

	Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	У тебя есть планы на вечер пятницы?	Do you have plans on Friday night?	
Word 1		у тебя есть	do you have	
Word 2		планы	plans	plural
Word 3		на	on	
Word 4		вечер	evening	
Word 5		пятницы	Friday	genitive case
Phrase 2	formal	У вас есть планы на вечер пятницы?	Do you have plans on Friday night?	
Word 1		у вас есть	do you have	
Word 2		планы	plans	plural
Word 3		на	on	
Word 4		вечер	evening	
Word 5		пятницы	Friday	genitive case
Phrase 3		Я собираюсь в кино.	I'm going to the movies.	
Word 1		я	I	
Word 2		собираюсь	am going	conjugated

Word 3	<i>B</i>	to
Word 4	<i>КИНО</i>	cimena
Phrase 4	Присоедини шься?	Will you join?
Word 1	<i>Присоединиш ься?</i>	Will you join? conjugated

CULTURAL INSIGHT

To invite someone or to suggest something to someone you can also use the word [давайте (davayte)] in formal situations and [давай (davay)] in informal situations. These words mean "let's..".



LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Russian S1 #25

On the phone

CONTENTS

- 2 Russian
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

25

RUSSIAN

1. Алло
2. Это Катя.
3. Могу я поговорить с Катей?
4. Я позвоню еще раз позже.

ROMANIZATION

1. Alo
2. Eta Katya.
3. Magu ya pagavarit` s Katey?
4. Ya pazvanu eshcho ras pozhe.

ENGLISH

1. Hello. (answering)
2. This is Katya.
3. May I talk to Katya?
4. I'll call again later.

VOCABULARY

Russian	Romanization	English	Class
позже	pozzhe	later	adverb
еще раз	eshcho ras	again	adverb
позвоню	pazvanu	will call	verb
Алло	Alo	Hello. (answering)	expression
это	eta	this	demonstrative pronoun
Катя	Katya	Katya	proper name
могу	magu	can	verb
я	ya	I	pronoun
поговорить	pagavarit'	talk	verb
с	s	with	preposition

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Моя бабушка дала мне это. <i>Maya babashka dala mne eta.</i> "My grandmother gave me this."	Что это? <i>Shто eta?</i> "What is it?"
Меня зовут Катя. <i>Menya zovut Katya.</i> "My name is Katya."	Я из Японии. <i>Ya iz Yaponii.</i> "I'm from Japan."

Ты пойдёшь со мной в кино?

Tu paydyosh' sa mnoy f kino?

"Will you go to the movies with me?"

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to understand the basic vocabulary on the phone.

Register	Russian	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	Алло	Hello. (answering)	
Word 1	Алло	hello	
Phrase 2	Это Катя.	This is Katya.	
Word 1	Это	this	
Word 2	Катя	Katya	
Phrase 3	Могу я поговорить с Катей?	May I talk to Katya?	
Word 1	могу	can	conjugated
Word 2	я	I	
Word 3	поговорить	talk	
Word 4	с	with	
Word 5	Катей	Katya	instrumental case
Phrase 4	Я позвоню еще раз позже.	I'll call again later.	
Word 1	я	I	
Word 2	позвоню	will call	future tense

Word 3	еще раз	again
Word 4	позже	later

CULTURAL INSIGHT

You can use the word [Алло (alo)], meaning "hello" when you start speaking on the phone.